# Advanced Quantum Mechanics

with partial content (chaps. 1,2,3) from the Bachelor course

Last updated October 7, 2026
)

Partially taken from the lecture notes of Prof. Wolfgang von der Linden.
Thanks to Katharina Rath, Lukas Bauer, and Lisanne Demelius for help with the translation

# Contents


**1 Rotations and the angular momentum operator** **9**

1.1 Main goals in this chapter . . . . . 9
1.2 Algebra of angular momentum operators . . . . . 9
1.2.1 Rotation matrices in $\mathbb{R}^3$ . . . . . 10
1.2.2 Commutation rules of angular momentum operators . . . 12
1.3 Scalar and Vector Operators . . . . . 12
1.4 Eigenvalue Problem for the Angular Momentum Operator . . . . 15
1.5 The Orbital Angular Momentum . . . . . 20
1.5.1 Ortsraumeigenfunktionen des Bahndrehimpulses . . . . . 22

**2 Schrödinger equation in a central potential** **29**

2.1 Main results in this chapter (until Sec. 2.5) . . . . . 29
2.2 Radial- und Drehimpulsanteil . . . . . 29
2.3 Produktansatz für die Schrödingergleichung . . . . . 31
2.4 Entartung bei unterschiedlichen $m$ . . . . . 32
2.5 Wasserstoff und H-ähnliche Probleme . . . . . 33
2.5.1 Summary . . . . . 33
2.5.2 Center of mass coordinates . . . . . 34
2.5.3 Eigenvalue equation . . . . . 34
2.5.4 Entartung . . . . . 39
2.5.5 Energieschema des H-Atoms (Z=1) . . . . . 40
2.5.6 Lichtemission . . . . . 41
2.5.7 Wasserstoff-Wellenfunktion . . . . . 43

**3 Time dependent perturbation theory** **47**

3.1 Zeitabhängige (Diracsche) Störungstheorie . . . . . 47
3.1.1 Das Wechselwirkungsbild . . . . . 48
3.1.2 Harmonische oder konstante Störung . . . . . 51
3.1.3 Adiabatisches Einschalten der Störung . . . . . 56

**4 Charged particle in an electromagnetic field** **59**
4.1 Main goals in this chapter . . . 59
4.2 Classical Hamilton function of charged particles in an electromagnetic field . . . 59
4.3 Gauge invariance . . . 61
4.4 Landau Levels . . . 63

**5 Extensions and Applications** **67**
5.1 Main goals of this chapter (until Sec. 5.4) . . . 67
5.2 Covalent bonding . . . 67
5.2.1 The $\mathbf{H_2^+}$ molecule . . . 68
5.3 Optimization of the (variational) wavefunction in a subspace . . . 71
5.4 Back to the variational treatment of $\mathbf{H_2^+}$ . . . 72
5.4.1 Muon-catalysed fusion . . . 77
5.5 Van der Waals Interaction . . . 77

**6 Several degrees of freedom and the product space** **83**
6.1 Main goals in this chapter . . . 83
6.2 The Tensor Product . . . 84
6.3 Complete basis in the product space . . . 85
6.4 Orthonormalization in product space . . . 85
6.5 Operators in tensor product space . . . 87
6.6 Systems with two spin $\frac{1}{2}$ particles . . . 89
6.7 Addition of angular momenta . . . 91
6.7.1 Scalar product . . . 92
6.7.2 Different notations and terming conventions . . . 92
6.7.3 Determining the allowed values of $j$ . . . 94
6.7.4 Construction of the eigenstates . . . 96
6.7.5 Application to the case of two spin $\frac{1}{2}$ . . . 96
6.7.6 How to use a table of Clebsch-Gordan coefficients . . . 97
6.8 Matrix elements of vector operators (Wigner-Eckart's theorem) . . . 99
6.8.1 Applications . . . 101

**7 Identical particles** **107**
7.1 Pauli exclusion principle . . . 110
7.2 Anyons (optional) . . . 111
7.3 Occupation number representation . . . 112
7.3.1 Fock Space . . . 113
7.4 Electron and spin . . . 113
7.5 The Helium atom . . . 115
7.6 Excited states of helium . . . 118

**8 Field quantisation** **123**
8.1 Continuum systems: classical treatment . . . . . 123
8.2 Quantisation . . . . . 124
8.2.1 Hamiltonian 8.11 in diagonal form . . . . . 125
8.2.2 Creation and destruction operators . . . . . 127

**9 Second quantisation** **129**
9.1 Quantisation of the Schrödinger field . . . . . 129
9.1.1 Lagrangian of the Schrödinger field . . . . . 130
9.1.2 Quantisation . . . . . 131
9.2 Second quantisation for fermions . . . . . 134
9.3 Operators in second quantisation . . . . . 135
9.3.1 Single particle operators . . . . . 135
9.3.2 Two-particle operators . . . . . 142
9.3.3 Two-particle operators for fermions . . . . . 143
9.4 Summary: creation and destruction operators and Fock space . . . 144
9.5 Unitary transformations . . . . . 146
9.5.1 Application: tight-binding Hamiltonian . . . . . 146
9.6 Momentum space . . . . . 148
9.6.1 Free fermions . . . . . 150
9.7 Field operators . . . . . 151
9.8 Heisenberg time dependence for operators . . . . . 152
9.8.1 Time dependence of field operators . . . . . 153
9.8.2 Time dependence of creation and annihilation operators . 154
9.8.3 Single-particle correlation function . . . . . 154
9.8.4 Pair distribution function . . . . . 156

**10 Quantisation of the free electromagnetic field** **159**
10.1 Lagrangian and Hamiltonian . . . . . 159
10.2 Normal modes . . . . . 161
10.3 Quantisation . . . . . 161

**11 Interaction of radiation field with matter** **165**
11.1 Free radiation field . . . . . 165
11.2 Electron and interaction term . . . . . 166
11.3 Transition rate . . . . . 167
11.3.1 Photon emission . . . . . 168
11.3.2 Photon absorption . . . . . 169
11.3.3 Electric dipole transition . . . . . 169
11.3.4 Lifetime of an excited state . . . . . 170
11.4 Nonrelativistic Bremsstrahlung . . . . . 171

11.5 Kinetic energy of the electron . . . 172
11.6 Interaction between charge and radiation field . . . 173
11.7 Diamagnetic contribution*(Addendum)* . . . 175
11.8 Potential term . . . 176
11.9 Transition amplitude . . . 178
11.9.1 First order . . . 178
11.9.2 Second order . . . 179
11.10Cross-section . . . 183

**12 Scattering theory** **187**
12.0.1 Laboratory vs. Center-of-Mass frames . . . 187
12.1 Formal theory of scattering . . . 188
12.1.1 One dimension: . . . 191
12.1.2 Scattering amplitude in 3D: . . . 191
12.1.3 First order Born approximation . . . 193
12.1.4 Higher order terms . . . 194
12.2 Inelastic scattering . . . 196
12.2.1 Coupled Lippmann-Schwinger equations . . . 197
12.2.2 Scattering amplitudes and cross section . . . 198
12.2.3 Born approximation . . . 198
12.3 Partial waves: a sketch . . . 199

**13 A short introduction to Feynman path integrals** **201**
13.1 Aharonov-Bohm-Effekt . . . 204
13.2 Quanten-Interferenz aufgrund von Gravitation . . . 205

**14 Bibliography** **207**
14.1 Introductory Books (with exercises) . . . 207
14.2 Additional books . . . 208
14.3 Advanced Chapters . . . 208
14.4 Mathematical Methods . . . 209
14.5 On the interpretation of Quantum Mechanics . . . 209

**A Details** **211**
A.1 Proof of eq. 1.7 . . . 211
A.2 Evaluation of 1.9 . . . 211
A.3 Discussion about the phase $\omega_z$ in 1.14 . . . 212
A.4 Transformation of the components of a vector . . . 212
A.5 Commutation rules of the orbital angular momentum . . . 212
A.6 Further Commutation rules of $\mathbf{J}$ . . . 213
A.7 Uncertainty relation for $j = 0$ . . . 214

A.8 $\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{J}$ . . . 214
A.9 Explicit derivation of angular momentum operators and their eigenfunctions . . . 214
A.10 Relation between $\mathbf{L}^2$ and $\mathbf{p}^2$ . . . 220
A.11 Proof that $\sigma \leq 0$ solutions in 2.17 must be discarded . . . 220
A.12 Details of the evaluation of the radial wave function for hydrogen . 221
A.13 Potential of an electron in the ground state of a $H$-like atom . . . 223
A.14 Heisenberg representation a bit more precise . . . 223
A.15 More about Löwdin orthonormalisation . . . 224
A.16 Some details for the total $S$ . . . 225
A.17 Proof of Wigner Eckart's theorem for vectors . . . 226
A.18 Proof of Wigner Eckart's theorem for scalars . . . 227
A.19 Some considerations about complex conjugation in Wigner-Eckart coefficients . . . 228
A.20 Proof of the projection theorem . . . 229
A.21 A representation of the delta distribution . . . 229
A.22 Expectation values of interaction term . . . 230
A.23 Integral evaluation of 7.12 . . . 231
A.24 Example of evaluation of matrix elements in product states . . . 232
A.25 Some proofs for Chap. 8 . . . 233
A.26 Proof of 9.3 . . . 234
A.27 Gauge transformation for the wave function . . . 234
A.28 Commutators and relation for the Schrödinger field quantisation . 235
A.29 Normalisation of two-particle state . . . 236
A.30 Commutation rules . . . 236
A.31 Lagrangian for electromagnetic field . . . 237
A.32 Integrals vs sums . . . 238
A.33 Commutators and transversality condition . . . 238
A.34 Commutators of fields . . . 239
A.35 Fourier transform of Coulomb potential . . . 239
A.36 (No) energy conservation for the first-order process 11.34 . . . 240
A.37 Green's function for scattering . . . 240
A.37.1 Heuristic proof: . . . 240
A.38 Green's function in 1D . . . 241

# Chapter 1

# Rotations and the angular momentum operator

## 1.1 Main goals in this chapter

- Motivation: in Chap. 2 we shall deal with **central potentials** for which **angular momentum is conserved**. We thus need to study the properties of **angular momentum in quantum mechanics**
- Determine algebra i.e. **commutation rules** of a generic **angular momentum operator $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$**.
  This is achieved by looking at the **algebra of rotation matrices**.
- From the commutation rules only find **eigenvalues** and properties of eigenvectors.
- Find expression for **orbital** angular momentum operator when acting on $\psi(\mathbf{r})$.
- Find its eigenvalues and properties of **eigenfunctions**, i.e. **spherical harmonics**.

## 1.2 Algebra of angular momentum operators

We have already seen that transformations, for example translations and time evolution, in quantum mechanics are represented by unitary transformations. These continuous transformations form a so-called **Lie groups** (see QM1) and have the general form

$$\hat{U}(\varphi) = e^{-i\varphi\hat{A}} \,. \tag{1.1}$$

with an hermitian operator $\hat{A}$ (**generator**) and a contiunuous real parameter $\varphi$. The transformation 1.1 can also be seen as a combination of infinitesimal transformations:

$$\hat{U}(\varphi) = \left(e^{-i\frac{\varphi}{N}\hat{A}}\right)^N \overset{N\to\infty}{=} (1 - i\frac{\varphi}{N}\hat{A})^N = (1 - i\varphi\hat{A} - \frac{1}{2}\varphi^2\hat{A}^2 + \cdots) \,. \tag{1.2}$$

A rotation in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be specified by a corresponding rotation matrix $R_{\mathbf{n}}(\varphi)$

**Definition:** $R_{\mathbf{n}}(\varphi)$: rotation matrix by an angle $\varphi$ around the axis $\mathbf{n}$.

The corresponding action on a quantum mechanical state is expressed by an unitary operator $\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{n}}(\varphi))$, which according to 1.1 , can be expressed as

ROTATION OPERATOR

$$\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{n}}(\varphi)) = e^{-i\varphi\hat{J}_{\mathbf{n}}/\hbar} \,. \tag{1.3}$$

where $\hat{J}_{\mathbf{n}}$ is the **generator** of rotations around the axis $\mathbf{n}$, i.e. the **Angular-Momentum** operator (Drehimpulsoperator). The form of these operators depend on the vector space one is considering. For example, in QM1 we have already met the corresponding operators $\hbar\hat{S}_x$, $\hbar\hat{S}_y$, $\hbar\hat{S}_z$ acting on Spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ states. For rotation in coordinate space, we will see that $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ corresponds to the orbital angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$
In the next sections we will study the properties of these operators.

### 1.2.1 Rotation matrices in $\mathbb{R}^3$

Let us start with what we know, namely ordinary rotation matrices in real space. These can also be expressed in a form similar to 1.3 , namely

$$R_{\mathbf{n}}(\varphi) = e^{-i\varphi A_{\mathbf{n}}} \,. \tag{1.4}$$

To illustrate this, we consider a rotation by an infinitesimal angle $\varphi$ about the z axis:

$$R_{\mathbf{z}}(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\varphi & 0 \\ \varphi & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + O(\varphi^2) \tag{1.5}$$

using 1.2 to order $O(\varphi)$ with 1.4 identifies in this case

$$A_{\mathbf{z}} = i \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.6}$$

It is straightforward to show (proof): Sec. A.1 that for a finite $\varphi$ one recovers the well known expression

$$R_{\mathbf{z}}(\varphi) = e^{-i\varphi A_{\mathbf{z}}} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi & 0 \\ \sin\varphi & \cos\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} . \tag{1.7}$$

Similarly, by cyclic permutation, [1] one obtains the two remaining generators:

$$A_{\mathbf{x}} = i \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \qquad A_{\mathbf{y}} = i \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8}$$

This tells us the action of the rotation operators and of its generators on a three-dimensional vector space. We also know, from QM1, its action on a two-dimensional Spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ system. The question to address is now, what is their action on the infinite-dimensional Hilbert space of wavefunctions, in other words, what are the properties of its generators $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$.

To learn more about this issue, we first consider the fact that the combination of two rotations around different axes does not commute. For example, the combination

$$R_{\mathbf{y}}(-\varphi)R_{\mathbf{x}}(-\varphi)R_{\mathbf{y}}(\varphi)R_{\mathbf{x}}(\varphi) \tag{1.9}$$

is not equal to the identity. We evaluate 1.9 up to order $\varphi^2$, obtaining for 1.9 (details): Sec. A.2

$$1 + [A_{\mathbf{x}}, A_{\mathbf{y}}]\varphi^2 + \cdots . \tag{1.10}$$

The commutator is readily evaluated from 1.8

$$[A_{\mathbf{x}}, A_{\mathbf{y}}] = iA_{\mathbf{z}} . \tag{1.11}$$

This gives for 1.9

$$R_{\mathbf{y}}(-\varphi)R_{\mathbf{x}}(-\varphi)R_{\mathbf{y}}(\varphi)R_{\mathbf{x}}(\varphi) \approx 1 + i\varphi^2 A_{\mathbf{z}} + \cdots \approx R_{\mathbf{z}}(-\varphi^2) + \cdots . \tag{1.12}$$

The meaning of this is the following: Assume that one first rotates around the x-axis and then around the y-axis by a (small) angle $\varphi$, respectively, and then repeats the sequence of rotations in the same order by the angle $-\varphi$. This does not correspond to an identity transformation but results into a rotation around the $z$-axis by an angle $-\varphi^2$.

In general, we can write

$$R_\beta(-\varphi)R_\alpha(-\varphi)R_\beta(\varphi)R_\alpha(\varphi) = \varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}R_\gamma(-\varphi^2) + O(\varphi^3) \tag{1.13}$$

[1] Here and below we will obtain results for a fixed cartesian component, and then generalize it to arbitrary components by means of a **cyclic permutation**, i.e. by exchanging everywhere $x \to y \to z \to x \to \cdots$

### 1.2.2 Commutation rules of angular momentum operators

If we now carry out these rotations on a quantum mechanical system, then both sides of Eq. 1.13 mut produce the same physical result. I. e.

$$\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{y}}(-\varphi))\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{x}}(-\varphi))\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{y}}(\varphi))\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{x}}(\varphi)) \stackrel{!}{=} e^{i\omega_z}\hat{U}(R_{\mathbf{z}}(-\varphi^2))+O(\varphi^3) \quad (1.14)$$

where $\omega_z$ is a yet unknown $\varphi$-dependent phase. We exploit this property in order to learn more about $\hat{J}$.
Again, we expand 1.14 up to second order in $\varphi$. Comparing 1.3 with 1.4 , it is clear that the result of the left hand side of 1.14 is given by 1.10 whith $A_\alpha \to \hat{J}_\alpha/\hbar$, i.e.

$$1+[\hat{J}_{\mathbf{x}},\hat{J}_{\mathbf{y}}]\frac{\varphi^2}{\hbar^2} \quad (1.15)$$

Similarly, the r.h.s. of 1.14 becomes up to the same order, and neglecting the phase $\omega_z$ (See for a discussion): Sec. A.3

$$1+i\frac{\varphi^2}{\hbar^2}\hbar\hat{J}_{\mathbf{z}} \quad (1.16)$$

comparing 1.15 with 1.16 gives $[\hat{J}_{\mathbf{x}},\hat{J}_{\mathbf{y}}] = i\hbar\hat{J}_{\mathbf{z}}$. In general one gets the

COMMUTATION RULES OF THE ANGULAR MOMENTUM OPERATORS

$$[\hat{J}_\alpha,\hat{J}_\beta] = i\hbar\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}\hat{J}_\gamma \quad . \quad (1.17)$$

## 1.3 Scalar and Vector Operators

Scalar and vector quantities (observables) have well defined transformation properties under rotation. Here we show that these imply well defined commutation rules of the corresponding operators with the angular momentum operators.
Let us consider a scalar or vector operator $\hat{A}$, as well as one of its eigenstates $|\psi\rangle$:

$$\hat{A}\ |\psi\rangle = a\,|\psi\rangle \quad .$$

Let us now consider a rotation $R$ of the coordinate system. The operator is transformed into $\hat{A}'$ and the state vector $|\psi\rangle$ into $|\psi'\rangle = \hat{U}(R)\,|\psi\rangle$. The eigenvalue equa-

tion in the rotated system now reads

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{A}' \, |\psi'\rangle &= a \, |\psi'\rangle \\ \hat{A}' \, \hat{U}(R) \, |\psi\rangle &= a \, \hat{U}(R) \, |\psi\rangle \\ \hat{U}^\dagger(R)\hat{A}'\hat{U}(R) \, |\psi\rangle &= a \, |\psi\rangle \qquad . \end{aligned}$$

This observation holds for all eigenvectors of $\hat{A}$. Since these constitute a complete basis set, one has the identity $\hat{U}^\dagger(R)\hat{A}'\hat{U}(R) = \hat{A}$, or

$$\hat{A}' = \hat{U}(R)\hat{A}\hat{U}^\dagger(R) \qquad .$$

We assume again an infinitesimal rotation angle $\varphi$ around the axis $\alpha$ and thus replace the unitary rotation operator

$$\hat{U}(R) = e^{-i\frac{\varphi}{\hbar}\hat{J}_\alpha}$$

with a series expansion up to linear order in $\varphi$

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{A}' &= (\mathbb{1} - \frac{i}{\hbar}\varphi\hat{J}_\alpha)\hat{A}(\mathbb{1} + \frac{i}{\hbar}\varphi\hat{J}_\alpha) + O(\varphi^2) \\ \hat{A}' &= \hat{A} - \frac{i}{\hbar}\varphi[\hat{J}_\alpha, \hat{A}] + O(\varphi^2) \end{aligned} \tag{1.18}$$

If $\hat{A}$ is a scalar operator, the it is invariant under rotations, i.e. $\hat{A}' = \hat{A}$. From 1.18 it follows

SCALAR OPERATORS $\hat{A}$

$$[\hat{J}_\alpha, \hat{A}] = 0 \, . \tag{1.19}$$

An operator $\hat{\mathbf{A}}$ with vector-character consists in a set of three operators (for example in cartesian coordinates $\hat{A}_x, \hat{A}_y, \hat{A}_z$) which transform appropriately under rotations. A rotation $R$ of the coordinate system corresponds to an inverse rotation of the components of $\hat{\mathbf{A}}$, i.e. by $R^{-1} = R^T$ (details): Sec. A.4 . We now consider specifically rotations around the $z$-axis by an angle $\varphi$. The corresponding rotation matrix is 1.5 . The rotation of the cartesian components $\hat{\mathbf{A}}' = R^T \, \hat{\mathbf{A}}$ is given explicitly by

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{A}'_x &= \hat{A}_x + \varphi \, \hat{A}_y \\ \hat{A}'_y &= \hat{A}_y - \varphi \, \hat{A}_x \\ \hat{A}'_z &= \hat{A}_z \qquad . \end{aligned}$$

We compare this with 1.18 and obtain

$$\begin{aligned}[\hat{J}_z,\hat{A}_x] &= i\hbar\hat{A}_y \\ [\hat{J}_z,\hat{A}_y] &= -i\hbar\hat{A}_x \\ [\hat{J}_z,\hat{A}_z] &= 0 \qquad .\end{aligned}$$

This can be summarized into

$$[\hat{J}_z,\hat{A}_\beta] = i\hbar\varepsilon_{z\beta\gamma}\hat{A}_\gamma \qquad .$$

A cyclical permutation of the above results leads to generalized transformation properties of

VECTOR-OPERATORS

$$[\hat{J}_\alpha,\hat{A}_\beta] = i\hbar\,\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}\,\hat{A}_\gamma \qquad . \tag{1.20}$$

Notice that 1.17 is a special case of 1.20 , since $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ is a vector.

## 1.4 Eigenvalue Problem for the Angular Momentum Operator

Systems with a central force are **invariant under rotation**. This means that their Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ is a scalar, i.e. it commutes with each component $\hat{J}_\alpha$ (see 1.19 ). As discussed in QM1, this means that it is possible to find a common set of eigenfunctions (eigenvectors) of $\hat{H}$ and one of the $\hat{J}_\alpha$. As we will see, this allows to simplify the problem considerably and provides the opportunity to classify the eigenstates of the Hamiltonian.

Of course, one should try to take the maximum number of mutually commuting operators. Unfortunately, since the different $\hat{J}_\alpha$ do not commute with each other, we can take only one of them. However, there is one additional operator, namely $\hat{J}^2$, that commutes with all $\hat{J}_\alpha$ (and with a rotation-invariant Hamiltonian):

$$[\hat{J}^2, \hat{J}_\alpha] = 0\,. \tag{1.21}$$

To prove this it is sufficient to observe that $\hat{J}^2$, the square length of a vector, is a **scalar**, and thus 1.19 holds. (For a mathematical proof ): Sec. A.6 .

As a consequence, $\hat{J}^2$ and, e.g., $\hat{J}_z$ (as well as the rotation invariant $\hat{H}$) admit a complete set of common eigenvectors. The remaining angular momentum operators cannot, however, be simultaneously diagonalized. Alternatively, one could also have chosen $\hat{J}^2$ and $\hat{J}_x$ or $\hat{J}^2$ and $\hat{J}_y$. One can, however, have just one of the three cartesian component. It has become established to use the $z$-component. The eigenvalue problem to be solved is, thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{J}^2|j,m\rangle &= \hbar^2 a_j |j,m\rangle \\ \hat{J}_z|j,m\rangle &= \hbar\, m|j,m\rangle\,. \end{aligned}$$

The eigenstates $|j,m\rangle$ are characterized by two quantum numbers $j$ and $m$, with corresponding eigenvalues $\hbar^2 a_j$ und $\hbar m$. We collected factors $\hbar$ from the eigenvalues, so that $a_j$ and $m$ are dimensionless ($\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ has the same dimensions as $\hbar$). Notice that we haven't yet specified what $j,m$ (or even $a_j$) are, for the moment they are just dimensionless (in principle real) numbers used to specify the states $|j,m\rangle$.

### Ladder operators

In many treatments of the angular momentum operator it is convenient to use a different representation of its components. We define

LADDER OPERATORS

$$\hat{J}_\pm = \hat{J}_x \pm i\hat{J}_y \quad . \tag{1.22}$$

Clearly

$$\hat{J}_\pm^\dagger = \hat{J}_\mp \, . \tag{1.23}$$

From this we can obtain back the cartesian components of the angular momentum operator

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{J}_x &= \frac{(\hat{J}_+ + \hat{J}_-)}{2} \\ \hat{J}_y &= \frac{(\hat{J}_+ - \hat{J}_-)}{2i} \end{aligned}$$

The commutation rules for the new operators read Proof: Sec. A.6.

$$\begin{aligned} [\hat{J}_z, \hat{J}_\pm] &= \pm\hbar\hat{J}_\pm \\ [\hat{J}_+, \hat{J}_-] &= 2\hbar\hat{J}_z \\ [\hat{J}^2, \hat{J}_\pm] &= 0 \end{aligned} \tag{1.24}$$

The solution of the eigenvalue problem of the angular momentum operator from the results 1.24 follows a similar procedure as for the harmonic oscillator. The $\hat{J}_\pm$ are termed **ladder operators**, since they modify the quantum number $m$ by $\pm 1$:

$$\hat{J}_z(\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle) = \hat{J}_\pm \underbrace{\hat{J}_z|j,m\rangle}_{m\,\hbar\cdot|j,m\rangle} + \underbrace{[\hat{J}_z,\hat{J}_\pm]}_{\pm\hbar\hat{J}_\pm}|j,m\rangle \tag{1.25}$$

$$= \hbar(m\pm 1)(\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle) \tag{1.26}$$

I.e. $\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle$ is an eigenstate of $\hat{J}_z$ with eigenvalue $\hbar(m\pm 1)$. This is the property of a ladder operator. $\hat{J}_\pm$ does not change $a_j$, the eigenvalue of $\hat{J}^2$, as $[\hat{J}^2,\hat{J}_\pm] = 0$,

i.e.

$$\hat{J}^2(\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle) = \hat{J}_\pm\hat{J}^2|j,m\rangle \tag{1.27}$$
$$= \hbar^2 a_j(\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle) \tag{1.28}$$

and therefore $\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle$ is eigenvector of $\hat{J}^2$ with eigenvalue $\hbar^2 a_j$. From this it follows

$$\hat{J}_\pm|j,m\rangle = C_{m\pm}|j,m\pm 1\rangle \tag{1.29}$$

The proportionality constants $C_{m\pm}$ will be determined later via normalisation. Can $\hat{J}_\pm$ be applied arbitrarily often, as in an harmonic oscillator? The answer is no, as can be shown by the following arguments. First of all, notice that

$$\hat{J}^2 - \hat{J}_z^2 = \hat{J}_x^2 + \hat{J}_y^2 \geq 0\,,$$

and therefore must be a nonnegative operator. Therefore,

$$\langle j,m|\hat{J}^2 - \hat{J}_z^2|j,m\rangle = \hbar^2(a_j - m^2) \geq 0 \Rightarrow a_j \geq m^2 \tag{1.30}$$

We therefor have following conditions:

1. $a_j \geq 0$, since the eigenvalues of $\hat{J}_z$ are real
2. $|m| \leq \sqrt{a_j}$

From the requirement that $\hat{J}_+|j,m\rangle$ must not lead to to large unallowed values of $m$, it follows that it exists a maximum ($j$-dependent) $m_{max}$ for which

$$\hat{J}_+|j,m_{max}\rangle = 0 \qquad . \tag{1.31}$$

In order to determine $m_{max}$, we first transform the Operator $\hat{J}_-\hat{J}_+$ as follows:

$$\hat{J}_-\hat{J}_+ = (\hat{J}_x - i\hat{J}_y)(\hat{J}_x + i\hat{J}_y) = \hat{J}_x^2 + \hat{J}_y^2 + i\underbrace{[\hat{J}_x,\hat{J}_y]}_{i\hbar\hat{J}_z} = \hat{J}^2 - \hat{J}_z^2 - \hbar\hat{J}_z \tag{1.32}$$

One then has

$$0 = \hat{J}_-\hat{J}_+|j,m_{max}\rangle = \hbar^2(a_j - m_{max}^2 - m_{max})|j,m_{max}\rangle$$

and

$$a_j = m_{max}(m_{max}+1) \tag{1.33}$$

Due to 1.33 $m_{max}$ determines uniquely the eigenvalue $a_j$. Therefore, we can identify the former with the quantum number $j$.

$$\mathbf{m_{max} = j} \tag{1.34}$$

Similarly, a $m_{min}$ must exist with

$$\hat{J}_- |j, m_{min}\rangle = 0 \,.$$

Similar arguments as above lead to

$$\hat{J}_+ \hat{J}_- = \hat{J}^2 - \hat{J}_z^2 + \hbar \hat{J}_z \tag{1.35}$$

and finally to

$$a_j = m_{min}(m_{min} - 1) \tag{1.36}$$

Combining 1.33 with 1.36 one gets. [2]

$$m_{min} = -j \tag{1.37}$$

Starting with $|j, m_{min}\rangle$ and repeatedly applying $\hat{J}_+$ one obtains (see 1.29 )

$$\overbrace{\hat{J}_+ \cdots \hat{J}_+}^{n \text{ Mal}} |j, m_{min}\rangle \propto |j, m_{min} + n\rangle \,. \tag{1.38}$$

This works until $|j, j\rangle$ is reached. The next $\hat{J}_+$ destroys the state, according to 1.31 . In order to exactly reach $|j, j\rangle$, $j - m_{min} := n \in \mathbb{N}_0$ must be integer. Together with 1.37 one obtains

$$j = \frac{n}{2} \qquad n \in \mathbb{N}_0 \tag{1.39}$$

$j$ is therefore half-integer or integer. 1.39 and 1.33 determine the possible eigenvalues of $\hat{J}^2$ und $\hat{J}_z$ as well as their relation. Accordingly, eigenstates are classified with following convention which represents the **Quantisation of Angular Momentum**.

### Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors of Angular Momentum Operators

$$\hat{J}^2 |j, m\rangle = \hbar^2 j(j+1) |j, m\rangle \tag{1.40a}$$
$$\hat{J}_z |j, m\rangle = \hbar m |j, m\rangle \tag{1.40b}$$

The notation and allowed values for these **Quantum numbers** are summarized in table 30. This result is completely general and follows simply from the com-

[2] A second solution would be $j = m_{min} - 1$, which is obviously inconsistent

| Symbol | Name | range of values |
|---|---|---|
| $j$ | Angular momentum quantum n. | $j = \frac{n}{2} \qquad n \in \mathbb{N}_0$ |
| $m$ | magnetic quantum number | $m \in \{-j, -j+1, \ldots, j-1, j\}$ |

Table 1.1: Quantum numbers of angular momentum operators

mutation rules 1.17 .
We make the following interesting observation:

$$J_z^{max} = \hbar \cdot j; \Rightarrow \qquad (J_z^{max})^2 = \qquad \hbar^2 j^2 \tag{1.41}$$
$$\hat{J}^2 = \hbar^2 \cdot j(j+1) \qquad = \qquad \hbar^2 j^2 + \hbar^2 j \tag{1.42}$$

I.e., structure$\hat{J}^2$ is strictly larger than $\hat{J}_z^2$: the angular momentum operator cannot be completely aligned. This should be like that, since suppose one had $\hat{J}^2 = \hat{J}_z^2$, then it would follow $\hat{J}_x = 0$ and $\hat{J}_y = 0$. This would contradict Heisenberg's uncertainty principle. An exception is provided for $j = 0$ See why: Sec. A.7 .

**Normalisation**

Next we determine the proportionality constants $C_{m\pm}$ in 1.29 from normalisation (we use 1.32 and 1.35 )

$$\langle j, m|\hat{J}_\pm^\dagger \hat{J}_\pm|j, m\rangle \stackrel{!}{=} |C_{m\pm}|^2 \underbrace{\langle j, m \pm 1|j, m \pm 1\rangle}_{=1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} |C_{m\pm}|^2 &= \langle jm|\hat{J}_\mp \hat{J}_\pm|jm\rangle \\ &= \langle jm|(\hat{J}^2 - \hat{J}_z^2 \mp \hbar \hat{J}_z)|jm\rangle \\ &= \hbar^2(j(j+1) - m^2 \mp m) \\ &= \hbar^2(j(j+1) - m(m \pm 1)) \end{aligned}$$

The fact that $C_{m\pm} = 0$ for $m = \pm j$ is consistent with 1.34 and 1.37 .
The phase of $C_{m\pm}$ is in principle arbitrary. In the usual convention this is chosen real and positive. We thus obtain the following result

$$|j,m\pm 1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{j(j+1)-m(m\pm 1)}}\ \frac{\hat{J}_{\pm}}{\hbar}|j,m\rangle \qquad . \tag{1.43}$$

With the help of 1.43 one can, starting from $|j,-j\rangle$ (or from an arbitrary $|j,m_0\rangle$) explicitly construct all other $|j,m\rangle$

We have derived all possible eigenvalues of $\hat{J}^2$ from the commutator algebra. This does not yet mean that all possible values of $j$ are realized in nature. In particular $j=\frac{1}{2}$ does not correspond to a orbital angular momentum. On the other hand, we have identified $j=\frac{1}{2}$ with the spin of an electron in a Stern-Gerlach Experiment (QM1). The general rule is that orbital angular momenta have integer values of $j$ (see Sec. 1.5). Half-integer values originate from the summation of spin with spin and/or with orbital angular momentum.

The vectorial angular momentum operator have a peculiar property which originates from the fact that its cartesian components do not commute. For normal vectors $\mathbf{v}$ the cross product $\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{v}$ vanishes. This **does not hold** in the case of the operator $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$. Instead one has Proof: Sec. A.8 :

$$\hat{\mathbf{J}}\times\hat{\mathbf{J}} = i\hbar\hat{\mathbf{J}}$$

## 1.5 The Orbital Angular Momentum

### Orbital angular momentum operator in real space

We have not jet specified the expression of the angular momentum operator $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$. Indeed, this depends on the space it acts on. When acting on wave functions without spin this indeed acquires the (quantized) form of the (orbital) angular momentum in classical physics.

To show this let us consider a wave function of the coordinates $\psi(\mathbf{r})$. This is a scalar, so that under a rotation its value on corresponding points in space remains unchanged:

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \psi'(\mathbf{r}') = \hat{U}(R)\psi(R\mathbf{r}) \Rightarrow \hat{U}(R)^{\dagger}\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \psi(R\mathbf{r})\ .$$

For an infinitesimal rotation $\varphi$, say around the $z$-axis (see 1.5 , 1.3 ) this gives ($\mathbf{r} \equiv (x,y,z)$)

$$\left(1 + i\frac{\varphi}{\hbar}\hat{J}_z\right)\psi(x,y,z) = \psi(x-\varphi y, y+\varphi x, z) + O(\varphi^2) = \\ = (1+\varphi(-y\partial_x + x\partial_y))\,\psi(\mathbf{r}) + O(\varphi^2)\,. \tag{1.44}$$

This identifies

$$\hat{J}_z = -i\hbar(-y\partial_x + x\partial_y) = \hat{x}\hat{p}_y - \hat{y}\hat{p}_x\,. \tag{1.45}$$

the latter is indeed the known expression for the $z$ component of the orbital angular momentum operator $\hat{L}_z$. Generalisation to the other components is obtained by cyclic permutations.
Thus, in the case of a scalar wave function, the **generator of rotations** $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ is the **orbital angular momentum**

$$\hat{\mathbf{J}} \Rightarrow \hat{\mathbf{L}} = \hat{\mathbf{r}} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}}\,. \tag{1.46}$$

Notice that the order of the operators does not matter here. When the wave function has components, like in the case of a spinor considered in QM1, $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ is the sum of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ plus other terms (e.g., the spin $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$).
It is straightforward to show (and should be expected from the discussion up to now) that $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$, being an operator generating rotations, has to obey the correct commutation relations 1.17 . In addition, the commutation relations 1.20 hold for the known vector operators $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ (proofs here): Sec. A.5 .

### Eigenwerte

Von den Vertauschungsrelationen alleine wissen wir bereits, daß die Eigenwerte von $\hat{L}_z$ ganzzahlige oder halbzahlige Vielfache von $\hbar$ sind. Wir werden noch zeigen, daß die halbzahligen Drehimpulse aufgrund der inneren Struktur des Bahndrehimpulses ausscheiden.
As discussed, the (orbital) angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ is useful for problems with rotation symmetry, i.e. when the potential $V(\mathbf{r})$ only depends on $r \equiv |\mathbf{r}|$. In this case, it is also useful to work in spherical coordinates $(r,\theta,\varphi)$. It is, therefore, useful to express the operators $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ in these coordinates. First, one can readily see that all components of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ only act on the angular part of the wave function, i.e. on $\Omega \equiv (\theta,\varphi)$. This can be deduced from the fact that (cf. 1.3 ) $e^{-i\varphi\hat{L}_\alpha/\hbar}$ produces a rotation of the coordinates, so it only acts on $\Omega$, and it cannot act on $r$. As a consequence, also the $\hat{L}_\alpha$ only act on $\Omega$. A second, more simple, argument comes from the fact that $\hat{L}_\alpha/\hbar$ is dimensionless and, therefore, can only act on dimensionless quantities.

The consequence is that if we write a wave function $\psi(r,\Omega)$ in the product form $r \equiv |\mathbf{r}|$

$$\psi(r,\Omega) = f(r)Y(\Omega)$$

then applying an arbitrary component of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ (or $\hat{L}^2$)

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}}\, f(r)Y(\Omega) = f(r)\, \hat{\mathbf{L}}\, Y(\Omega)\,. \tag{1.47}$$

As a consequence, the search for the common eigenfunctions of $\hat{L}^2, \hat{L}_z$ corresponding to the vectors $|l,m\rangle$, can be restricted to functions $Y(\Omega)$ of the angles $\Omega$ only. But 1.47 also means that given a common eigenfunction $Y(\Omega)$ of $\hat{L}^2, \hat{L}_z$, then one can multiply it by any function of $r$, and this will remain an eigenfunction of $\hat{L}^2, \hat{L}_z$ with the same eigenvalues. There is a large degeneracy. This also means that one chosen set of common eigenfunctions of $\hat{L}^2, \hat{L}_z$ do not represent a **complete** basis in the space of the $\psi(r,\Omega)$. It is, however, complete in the space of the $Y(\Omega)$, as we shall see below.
These eigenfunctions, classified according to their quantum numbers, are termed $Y_l^m(\Omega)$, and are the well-known **spherical harmonics** (Kugelflächenfunktionen). Here, $m$ has the same meaning as in 1.40b , while it is convention to use $l$ instead of $j$ ( 1.40a ) for the orbital angular momentum. In agreement with 1.40a and 1.40b one thus has

EIGENVALUE EQUATION FOR SPHERICAL HARMONICS

$$\hat{L}^2\, Y_l^m(\Omega) = \hbar^2\, l(l+1)\, Y_l^m(\Omega) \tag{1.48}$$
$$\hat{L}_z\, Y_l^m(\Omega) = \hbar m\, Y_l^m(\Omega)\,, \tag{1.49}$$

Below, we will show this result and derive the explicit expression of the operators $\hat{L}_z, \hat{L}_\pm$ as well as of their eigenfunctions $Y_l^m$ in spherical coordinates.

### 1.5.1 Ortsraumeigenfunktionen des Bahndrehimpulses

Goals of this section are (a) to express the angular momentum operators in spherical coordinates and (b) to obtain the expression for the $Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi)$. The derivation is rather lengthy and tedious, so we will here only point out the steps one has to carry out, following the logics of the previous sessions, and show only the simpler calculations. The more tedious details can be found in the appendix: Sec. A.9 , In

order to understand the procedure, we will explicitly derive the lowest spherical harmonics, i.e. the ones with $l = 0$ and $l = 1$.
The steps are the following

- From the expression of the orbital angular momentum operator in cartesian coordinates (cf. 1.45 ),

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}} = \hat{\mathbf{r}} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}} = -i\hbar\, \hat{\mathbf{r}} \times \boldsymbol{\nabla} \tag{1.50}$$

  write down the expression of the relevant operators $(\hat{L}_z, \hat{L}_\pm)$ in spherical coordinates. They will have the form of linear differential operators in $\theta, \varphi$.

- $\hat{L}_z$ produces rotations around the $z$ axis, and, thus, only acts on the angle $\varphi$. It has a very simple form,

$$\hat{L}_z = \frac{\hbar}{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi} \tag{1.51}$$

  so we start by solving for the $\varphi$-part of the $Y_l^m$ by using 1.49 . The eigenvalue equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi} Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi) = im\, Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi)$$

  has a simple solution

$$Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi) \propto e^{im\varphi} .$$

  Since the wave function must be single-valued, $m$ **must be integer**. As a consequence, $l$ must be integer as well. This fact excludes half-integer values for the orbital angular momentum quantum numbers $l$ and $m$. In contrast , as seen in QM1, the spin angular momentum can be half-integer.

- Once we have the $\varphi$ part, we write a differential equation (just in $\theta$) for the wavefunction with maximum $m$ (cf. 1.31 ):

$$\hat{L}_+ Y_l^l(\theta, \varphi) = 0$$

  We solve it, the solution is relatively simple, and normalize the $Y_l^l$.

- Once we have the $Y_l^l$, we obtain the $Y_l^{l-1}, Y_l^{l-2}, \cdots$ by applying $\hat{L}_-$ and by normalizing, i.e. with 1.43 where $\hat{\mathbf{J}} \to \hat{\mathbf{L}}$ and $j \to l$.

The final result, i.e. the general form for the **spherical harmonics**, is given in A.14 .
Being a **complete orthonormal basis** in the space of functions $f(\theta,\varphi)$, the $Y_l^m$ are
**Orthonormal:**

$$\int\int d\varphi\, d\cos\theta\; Y_l^{m*}(\theta,\varphi)Y_{l'}^{m'}(\theta,\varphi) = \delta_{l,l'}\delta_{m,m'}\,. \tag{1.52}$$

Notice that the integration measure $d\cos\theta = \sin\theta d\theta$ is the one appropriate for spherical coordinates: $d\Omega \equiv d\varphi\, sin\theta d\theta$.
**Complete**

$$\sum_{l=0}^{\infty}\sum_{m=-l}^{l} Y_l^{m*}(\theta,\varphi)Y_l^m(\theta',\varphi') = \delta(\cos\theta-\cos\theta')\delta(\varphi-\varphi') \tag{1.53}$$

Equivalently, this means that any function $f(\theta,\varphi)$ on the unit sphere can be expanded in terms of the $Y_l^m$:

$$f(\theta,\varphi) = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty}\sum_{m=-l}^{l} c_l^m\; Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) \tag{1.54}$$

The coefficient, as usual, are evaluated by scalar multiplication from left with $\langle l',m'|$:

$$c_{l'}^{m'} = \int\int d\varphi\, d\cos\theta\, Y_{l'}^{m'}(\theta,\varphi)^*\; f(\theta,\varphi) \tag{1.55}$$

**Explicit calculation for $l=0$ and $l=1$**

For simplicity, we do this without normalisation
$\boxed{l=0:}$
For $l=0$, we have $m=0$, therefore

$$\hat{L}_z Y_0^0 = 0 \quad \hat{L}_\pm Y_0^0 = 0 \Rightarrow \hat{L}_{x|y} Y_0^0 = 0\,.$$

Thus since all generators of rotation (cf. 1.3 ) give zero, this means that $Y_0^0(\theta,\varphi)$ is invariant under rotations, i.e. it is a **constant**.
$\boxed{l=1:}$
Wir suchen zunächst nach $Y_1^{m=+1}$, was die Gleichung

$$\frac{\hat{L}_z}{\hbar}Y_1^{m=1} = -i\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}Y_1^{m=1} \stackrel{!}{=} 1\cdot Y_1^{m=1}$$

erfüllt, also

$$Y_1^1 = e^{i\varphi} f(\theta)$$

Die Gleichung (mit A.12 )

$$\frac{\hat{L}_+}{\hbar} Y_1^{m=1} = e^{i\varphi} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(\theta) - 1 \cdot \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta} f(\theta) \right) \stackrel{!}{=} 0$$

hat die Lösung

$$f(\theta) \propto \sin\theta$$

Also

$$Y_1^1 \propto e^{i\varphi} \sin\theta$$

Anwenden des Leiteroperators A.12

$$Y_1^0 \propto \hat{L}_- Y_1^1 = e^{-i\varphi} e^{i\varphi} \left( -\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} - \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta} \right) \sin\theta \propto \cos\theta$$

ein zweites Mal

$$Y_1^{-1} \propto \hat{L}_- Y_1^0 = e^{-i\varphi} (-\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}) \cos\theta \propto e^{-i\varphi} \sin\theta$$

Die niedrigsten Kugelflächenfunktionen sind in Tab. 50 angegeben

| $l$ | $m$ | Kugelflächenfunktion |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | $Y_0^0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}}$ |
| 1 | 0 | $Y_1^0 = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}}\cos\theta$ |
| | $\pm 1$ | $Y_1^{\pm 1} = \mp\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}}\sin\theta e^{\pm i\varphi}$ |
| 2 | 0 | $Y_2^0 = \sqrt{\frac{5}{16\pi}}(3\cos^2\theta - 1)$ |
| | $\pm 1$ | $Y_2^{\pm 1} = \mp\sqrt{\frac{15}{8\pi}}\sin\theta\cos\theta e^{\pm i\varphi}$ |
| | $\pm 2$ | $Y_2^{\pm 2} = \sqrt{\frac{15}{32\pi}}\sin^2\theta e^{\pm 2i\varphi}$ |

Table 1.2: Die ersten Kugelflächenfunktionen.

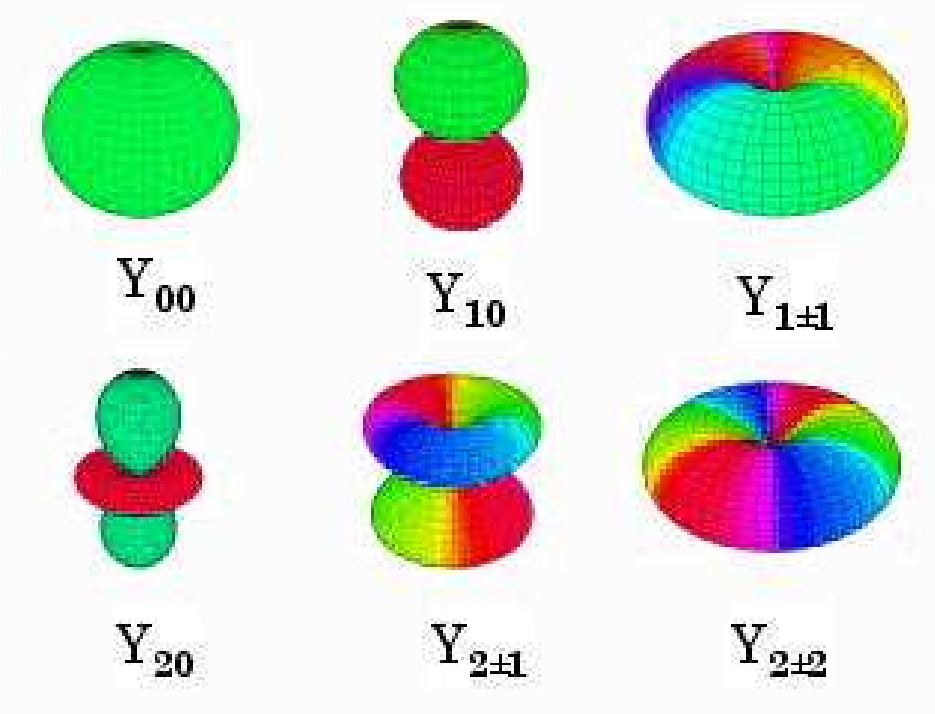



Figure 1.1: A plot of the first few spherical harmonics ( 50 ). The radius is proportional to $|Y_l^m|^2$, colors gives $\arg(Y_l^m)$, with green$= 0$, red$= \pi$.

# Chapter 2

# Schrödinger equation in a central potential

## 2.1 Main results in this chapter (until Sec. 2.5)

- The Schrödinger equation for a particle in a **central potential** (i.e. rotation invariant) is written in **polar coordinates** $r, \theta, \varphi$.
- Hereby one notices that the kinetic part can be splitted in a part acting only on $r$ and one acting only on $\theta, \varphi$.
- The part acting only on $\theta, \varphi$ is proportional to $\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2$.
- Therefore, one can look for solutions of the form $R(r)Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi)$, since the $Y_l^m$ are eigenfunctions of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2$.
- After doing that one ends up with a **one-dimensional** eigenvalue equation for $R(r)$.
- Since the eigenvalue of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2$ does not depend on $m$, one has the general result that for a central potential **eigenfunctions with a given $l$ have a $2l+1$ degeneracy**.

## 2.2 Radial- und Drehimpulsanteil

Der Hamiltonian für ein quantenmechanisches Teilchen im kugelsymmetrischen Potential (Zentralfeld) lautet

$$H = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m} + V(r) \qquad . \tag{2.1}$$

Hierbei ist $r = |\mathbf{r}|$ die Norm des Ortsvektors. In der klassischen Mechanik ist der Drehimpuls $l$ eine Erhaltungsgröße. Er ist durch die Anfangsbedingungen gegeben.
Der Term $\frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m}$ wird in einem zentrifugal-Beitrag $\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{2mr^2}$ und einem radial-Teil $\frac{\hat{p}_r^2}{2m}$, aufgespaltet. Die Bewegungsgleichung des Teilchens reduziert sich somit auf die Radialgleichung in einem effektiven Potential

$$V_{eff}(r) = V(r) + \frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{2mr^2} \quad . \tag{2.2}$$

Wir werden versuchen, auch die Schrödingergleichung auf ein Radialproblem zu reduzieren. Dazu brauchen wir den Zusammenhang zwischen $\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2$ und $\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2$. Durch explizite Berechnung (details): Sec. A.10 erhalten wir

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 = \hat{\mathbf{r}}^{\,2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}^{\,2} + i\hbar\,\hat{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{p}} - (\hat{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{p}})^2$$

also

$$\hat{\mathbf{p}}^{\,2} = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 + (\hat{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{p}})^2 - i\hbar\,(\hat{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{p}})}{\hat{r}^{\,2}} \tag{2.3}$$

Man erkennt den Zusammenhang aus der klassischen Mechanik für $\hbar \to 0$. Der Hamiltonoperator nimmt hiermit die folgende Gestalt an

$$\hat{H} = \underbrace{\frac{(\hat{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{p}})^2 - i\hbar\,(\hat{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{p}})}{2m\,\hat{r}^2}}_{\hat{\hat{T}}} + V(r) + \frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{2m\,\hat{r}^2} \tag{2.4}$$

Man erkennt bereits, dass $\hat{\hat{T}}$ nur die Komponente von $\mathbf{p}$ entlang $\mathbf{r}$ enthält.
Der Übergang in die Ortsdarstellung, mit der Zuordnung $\hat{\mathbf{r}} \to \mathbf{r}$ und $\hat{\mathbf{p}} \to -i\hbar\boldsymbol{\nabla}$, liefert aus 2.4

$$-\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\hat{\hat{T}} \to \frac{\Big((\mathbf{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla})^2 + (\mathbf{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla})\Big)}{r^2}$$

In Kugelkoordinaten $\mathbf{r} = r\,\mathbf{e}_r$ und daher benötigen wir von $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ nur die Komponente entlang $\mathbf{r}$:

$$\mathbf{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla} = r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}$$

also

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\hat{\hat{T}} \quad &\to \quad \frac{1}{r^2}(r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}) + \frac{1}{r^2}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r} = \frac{1}{r}(\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{\partial}{\partial r}) \\ &= \quad \frac{1}{r}(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\, r^2}r) \end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

As expected, 2.5 is the radial part of the Laplace operator,[1] while $-\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{r^2\,\hbar^2}$ (cf. 2.4 ) its angular part.
Der Hamiltonoperator ist somit

$$\hat{H} = \underbrace{-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}r + V(r)}_{\hat{A}(r)} + \frac{1}{2m}\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{r^2} \quad .$$

Man kann auch hier den letzten Term als Zentrifugalbeitrag erkennen (cf. 2.2 ).

## 2.3 Produktansatz für die Schrödingergleichung

Die Schrödingergleichung

$$\left(\hat{A}(r) + \frac{1}{2m}\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{r^2}\right)\psi(r,\theta,\varphi) = E\,\psi(r,\theta,\varphi)$$

kann durch einen Produktansatz $\psi(r,\theta,\varphi) = R(r)\cdot Y(\theta,\varphi)$ weiter vereinfacht werden. Nach Multiplikation mit $r^2$ wird diese zu

$$R(r)\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{2m}Y(\theta,\varphi) = Y(\theta,\varphi)r^2(E-\hat{A}(r))R(r)$$

da $L^2$ nur auf $\theta,\varphi$ und $\hat{A}(r)$ nur auf $r$ wirkt. Nach Multiplikation mit $(R(r)\cdot Y(\theta,\varphi))^{-1}$ von links erhält man

$$\frac{1}{Y(\theta,\varphi)}\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{2m}Y(\theta,\varphi) \quad = \quad \frac{1}{R(r)}\left(r^2(E-\hat{A}(r))R(r)\right) = \kappa \quad .$$

Da die linke Seite nur $\theta$ und $\varphi$, die rechte Seite hingegen nur $r$ enthält, muß $\kappa$ eine Konstante sein und wir erhalten zwei in Winkel- und Radialanteil getrennte Differentialgleichungen

$$\frac{\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2}{2m}Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) = \kappa Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) \tag{2.6}$$

$$(\hat{A}(r) + \frac{\kappa}{r^2})R(r) = ER(r) \tag{2.7}$$

2.6 ist die bereits gelöste Eigenwertgleichung des Drehimpulsoperators, deren Eigenwerte den Parameter $\kappa = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}l(l+1)$ mit der Drehimpulsquantenzahl in Verbindung bringen.

[1] This result is only valid provided the wave function is non singular for $r \to 0$. Consider for example, the case $\psi \propto 1/r$. In that case $\hat{T}^2\psi \propto \nabla^2\psi \propto \delta(\mathbf{r})$.

Einsetzen in die Radialgleichung 2.7 ergibt

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{1}{r}\frac{d^2}{dr^2}(r\,R(r)) + \left(V(r) + \frac{\hbar^2\, l(l+1)}{2m\, r^2}\right)R(r) = E R(r)$$

Multiplikation von links mit $r$ und Verwendung der Abkürzung $\chi(r) := r\,R(r)$ liefert schließlich die

SCHRÖDINGERGLEICHUNG FÜR DEN RADIALANTEIL DER WELLENFUNKTION

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{d^2}{dr^2}\chi(r) + \underbrace{\left(V(r) + \frac{\hbar^2\, l(l+1)}{2m\, r^2}\right)}_{V_{eff}(r)}\chi(r) = E\,\chi(r) \quad . \tag{2.8}$$

Die Lösung dieser Differentialgleichung hängt vom jeweiligen Potential $V(r)$ ab und muß je nach Problem neu gelöst werden. Die gesamte Wellenfunktion $\psi$ ist dann

$$\psi_{lm}(r,\theta,\varphi) = \frac{1}{r}\chi(r)\cdot Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) \quad , \tag{2.9}$$

wobei nur die Quantenzahlen des Drehimpulses explizit angegeben wurden. Die Quantenzahlen, die sich aus dem Radialanteil ergeben, werden später eingeführt. Allgemein können wir bereits erkennen, daß die Energien, wegen der Rotationsinvarianz in $m$, $(2l+1)$-fach entartet sind .

## 2.4 Entartung bei unterschiedlichen $m$

Die Entartung der Zuständen mit unterschiedlichen $m$ bei festem $l$ ist eine direkte Folgerung der Rotationsinvarianz. Diese gilt also allgemein für Systeme, in der der Hamiltonian $H$ mit allen Komponenten des Drehimpulsoperators $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ (Erinnerung, hier $\hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{\mathbf{L}}$) vertauscht. Das kann folgendermaßen gezeigt werden:
Wir haben bereits gezeigt, dass $\hat{\mathbf{J}}^2$ und $\hat{J}_z$ zusammen mit dem Hamiltonian diagonalisiert werden können. Die gemeinsame Eigenzustände von $H, \hat{\mathbf{J}}^2, \hat{J}_z$ können

also dargestellt werden als

$$|n, j, m\rangle$$

wo $n$ eine zusätzliche Quantenzahl ist. Die Eigenwertgleichung lautet

$$\hat{H}\,|n, j, m\rangle = E_{n,j,m}\,|n, j, m\rangle \ . \tag{2.10}$$

wendet man auf beiden Seiten den Leiteroperator $\hat{J}_-$ an, und betrachtet man die Tatsache, dass $[\hat{H}, \hat{J}_-] = 0$, erhält man

$$\hat{H}\hat{J}_-\,|n, j, m\rangle = E_{n,j,m}\hat{J}_-\,|n, j, m\rangle \ .$$

mit 1.43

$$\hat{J}_-\,|n, j, m\rangle = \text{const.}\ |n, j, m-1\rangle$$

erhält man

$$\hat{H}\,|n, j, m-1\rangle = E_{n,j,m}\,|n, j, m-1\rangle \ .$$

also, verglichen mit 2.10 haben wir

$$E_{n,j,m-1} = E_{n,j,m} \equiv E_{n,j}$$

**unabhängig von** $m$, wie gesagt.

## 2.5 Wasserstoff und H-ähnliche Probleme

### 2.5.1 Summary

- For the **Hydrogen Atom**, one has a Coulomb potential $V \propto -1/r$.
- We look for **bound states**, i.e. states with $E < 0$. The solution of the corresponding equation for $R(r)$ is obtained in two steps.
- First one looks for the asymptotic solution at $r \to \infty$. Here the requirement is that $R(r)$ vanishes exponentially.
- For the short-$r$ part one makes a polynomial Ansatz. Inserting into the Schrödinger equation, one obtains a recursive equation for the coefficient of the polynomial.
- The requirement that the recursive equation stops at some point (i.e. the polynomial has finite order), leads to the **eigenvalue condition** for the energy.
- For the case that the recursive equation does not stop the sequence leads to an **exponential behavior** of the wave function, which is not allowed.

Das Wasserstoffatom **H** und seine Isotopen $^2\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{D}$ und $^3\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{T}$, sowie die Ionen $\mathbf{He}^+$,$\mathbf{Li}^{2+}$,$\mathbf{Be}^{3+}$ sind die einfachsten atomaren Systeme.

Ihre Kernladung ist ein ganzzahliges Vielfaches der Elementarladung und die Elektronenhülle besteht ausschließlich aus einem Elektron.

Ohne äußere Kräfte wirkt nur die Coulombwechselwirkung zwischen Kern und Elektron.

### 2.5.2 Center of mass coordinates

This is a two-body-problem. However, as in classical mechanics one can introduce center of mass coordinates $\mathbf{R} \equiv m_1\mathbf{r}_1 + m_2\mathbf{r}_2$ , $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2$ (1,2 indicate the two particles), and relative coordinates $\mathbf{r} \equiv \mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2$, $\mathbf{p} = m_{red}(\frac{\mathbf{p}_1}{m_1} - \frac{\mathbf{p}_2}{m_2})$ , where $m_{red} \equiv (\frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2})^{-1}$ is the reduced mass. This is a canonical transformation, so it is easy to show that the correct commutation rules for the new variables hold. The advantage is that now the Hamiltonian separates

$$H = \frac{\mathbf{P}^2}{2(m_1+m_2)} + \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m_{red}} + V(r)$$

and one can solve separately for the center of mas motion, which is free, and the relative motion, which describes a **single body** with mass $m_{red}$ in the potential $V(r)$.
In the case of Hydrogen, since the nucleus is much heavier than the electron, $m_{red}$ is essentially given by the electron mass. In the following , for simplicity, we will use the electron mass $m$ instead of $m_{red}$. We will also leave out the center of mass part of the Hamiltonian, which is trivial. Results for two particles with similar masses, such as for example positronium, are easily recovered by replacing $m$ with $m_{red}$.

### 2.5.3 Eigenvalue equation

Wir verwenden folgende Abkürzungen

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| m | = | Masse des Elektrons |
| +Ze | = | Ladung des Kerns |
| -e | = | Ladung des Elektrons |

Die potentielle Energie (Coulombenergie) des Systems ist in Gaußschen Einheiten[2] gegeben durch

$$V(r) = -\frac{Ze^2}{r}$$

Die Schrödingergleichung wird dann zu

$$\hat{H}\psi(\mathbf{r}) = (-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + V(r))\psi(\mathbf{r}) = E\psi(\mathbf{r})$$

Aus 2.9 wissen wir bereits, daß

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \psi(r,\theta,\varphi) = \frac{\chi(r)}{r}\cdot Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) \quad ,$$

wobei $\chi(r)$ der Radialanteil der Schrödingergleichung ist, dessen Quantenzahlen noch nicht spezifiziert sind.

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{d^2}{dr^2}\chi(r) + (-\frac{Ze^2}{r} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{l(l+1)}{r^2})\chi(r) = E\chi(r)$$

$$\chi''(r) + (\underbrace{\frac{Ze^2 2m}{\hbar^2}}_{=:\frac{2Z}{a_0}}\frac{1}{r} - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2mE}{\hbar^2})\chi(r) = 0 \quad . \qquad (2.11)$$

In dieser Gleichung tritt eine charakteristische Länge atomarer Systeme auf, der sogenannte Bohrsche Radius.

$$a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{me^2} = 0.529\mathring{A} \quad . \qquad (2.12)$$

Für $r \to \infty$ vereinfacht sich 2.11 zu

$$\chi''(r) = -\frac{2mE}{\hbar^2}\chi(r) \quad .$$

Wir untersuchen hier gebundene Zustände, das sind solche mit negativer Energie. Wenn die Energie negativ ist, wird $E - V(r)$ für $r \to \infty$ negativ und die Schrödingergleichung führt zu einem exponentiellen Abfall der Wellenfunktion.

[2] Für mikroskopische Phänomene sind Gaußsche Einheiten bequemer als die SI-Einheiten, da viele Vorfaktoren einfacher werden.

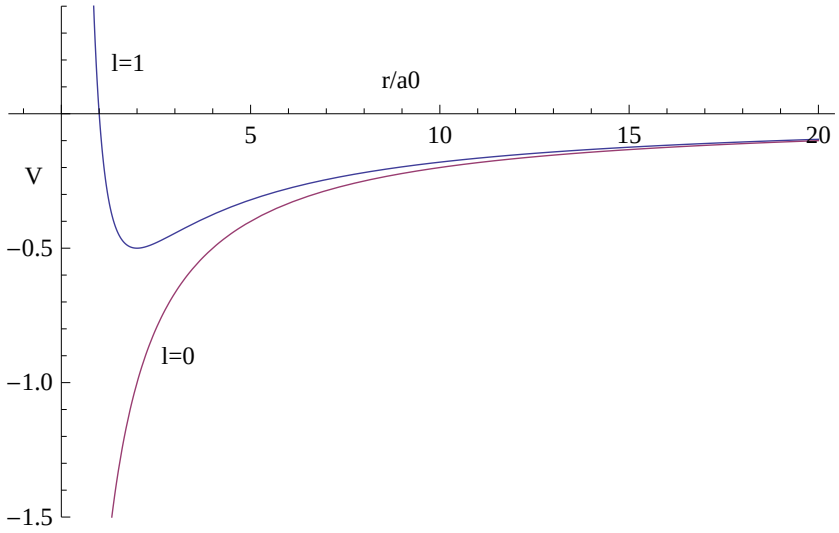



Figure 2.1: Effective Coulomb-Potential $V_{eff}(r)$ in atomic units for $l = 0$ and $l = 1$

Neben den gebundenen Zuständen gibt es noch Streuzustände mit positiver Energie. Für $r \to \infty$ lautet die Differentialgleichung 2.11 somit

$$\chi''(r) = -\frac{2mE}{\hbar^2}\chi(r) = \gamma^2\,\chi(r) \quad .$$

Die Lösung dieser Differentialgleichung ist bekanntlich

$$\chi(r) = ae^{-\gamma r} + be^{+\gamma r} \quad .$$

Der zweite Summand ist nicht normierbar. Er beschreibt also keinen gebundenen Zustand und wir setzen deshalb aus physikalischen Gründen $b = 0$.

Für beliebige $r$ machen wir den Ansatz

$$\chi(r) = F(r)e^{-\gamma r} \tag{2.13}$$

und setzen ihn in 2.11 ein. Zusammen mit

$$\frac{d^2}{dr^2}\chi(r) = e^{-\gamma r}(F''(r) - 2\gamma F'(r) + \gamma^2 F(r))$$

erhalten wir

$$e^{-\gamma r}\left(F''(r) - 2\gamma F'(r) + \gamma^2 F(r) + (\frac{2Z}{a_0}\frac{1}{r} - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} - \gamma^2)F(r)\right) = 0$$

$$F''(r) - 2\gamma F'(r) + (\frac{2Z}{a_0}r - l(l+1))\frac{1}{r^2}F(r) = 0 \tag{2.14}$$

Die Lösung der Differentialgleichung läßt sich als eine Potenzreihe ansetzen

$$\begin{aligned} F(r) &= r^{\sigma} \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} c_{\mu} r^{\mu} \\ &= \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} c_{\mu} r^{\mu+\sigma} \end{aligned} \tag{2.15}$$

Einsetzen von 2.15 in die Differentialgleichung 2.14 ergibt

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} c_{\mu}(\mu+\sigma)(\mu+\sigma-1) r^{\mu+\sigma-2} - 2\gamma \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} c_{\mu}(\mu+\sigma) r^{\mu+\sigma-1} \\ + \frac{2Z}{a_0} \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} c_{\mu} r^{\mu+\sigma-1} - l(l+1) \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} c_{\mu} r^{\mu+\sigma-2} = 0 \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Wir fassen Terme gleicher Potenz in $r$ zusammen

$$\begin{aligned} & c_0(\sigma(\sigma-1) - l(l+1)) r^{\sigma-2} + \\ & + \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} \Big\{ c_{\mu+1}(\mu+1+\sigma)(\mu+\sigma) - 2\gamma c_{\mu}(\mu+\sigma) + \\ & + \frac{2Z}{a_0} c_{\mu} - l(l+1) c_{\mu+1} \Big\} r^{\mu+\sigma-1} = 0 \end{aligned} \tag{2.16}$$

Die Koeffizienten der Potenzen $r^l$ müssen individuell verschwinden, da die Gleichung für beliebige Werte von $r$ gelten muß und die $\{r^l\}$ ein vollständiges, linear unabhängiges Basissystem bilden. Zunächst folgt aus der Bedingung $c_0 \neq 0$ für $\sigma$ die Bedingung

$$\sigma(\sigma-1) = l(l+1) \quad . \tag{2.17}$$

Das ergibt (the second solution must be discarded, see: Sec. A.11 )

$$\sigma = l+1 \, . \tag{2.18}$$

Einsetzen in 2.16 liefert die Bestimmungsgleichungen der Koeffizienten $c_{\mu}$. Für alle $\mu \geq 0$ gilt

$$\frac{c_{\mu+1}}{c_{\mu}} = \frac{2\gamma(\mu+l+1) - 2\frac{Z}{a_0}}{(\mu+l+2)(\mu+l+1) - l(l+1)} \quad . \tag{2.19}$$

Das Verhalten für $\mu \gg 1$ ist

$$\frac{c_{\mu+1}}{c_{\mu}} \underset{\mu \gg 1}{\longrightarrow} \frac{2\gamma}{\mu+1} \quad .$$

Das heisst, der Beitrag aus großen $\mu$ liefert

$$\sum_{\mu}^{\infty} \frac{(2\gamma)^{\mu}}{\mu!} r^{\mu} \sim e^{2\gamma r} \tag{2.20}$$

Da die hohen Potenzen $\mu \gg 1$ das Verhalten der Funktion für große $r$ bestimmen, verhält sich $\chi$ für große $r$ wie

$$\chi(r) = F(r)\, e^{-\gamma r} = r^{l+1}\, e^{2\gamma r} \cdot e^{-\gamma r} \quad = \quad r^{l+1}\, e^{\gamma \cdot r} \qquad .$$

Wenn die Potenzreihe nicht abbricht, divergiert $\chi(r)$ für $r \to \infty$ und beschreibt wieder keinen normierbaren, gebundenen Zustand. Wir müssen also erreichen, daß die Reihe abbricht. Es kann in der Tat erreicht werden, daß ein Koeffizient $c_{\mu^*+1}$ in 2.19 , und somit alle nachfolgenden, verschwinden. Das ist genau dann der Fall, wenn

$$\gamma = \frac{\frac{2Z}{a_0}}{2(\mu^* + l + 1)} = \frac{Z}{a_0\,(\mu^* + l + 1)} \quad ; \quad \mu^* \in \mathbb{N}_0 \qquad . \tag{2.21}$$

Für die Energie bedeutet das

$$E \quad = \quad -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\gamma^2 \quad = \quad -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{\frac{Z^2}{a_0^2}}{(\mu^* + l + 1)^2} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left(\frac{m^2 e^4}{\hbar^4}\right)\frac{Z^2}{(\mu^* + \mathbf{l} + \mathbf{1})^2} \qquad .$$

Die Energie ist also quantisiert. Es ist üblich eine modifizierte Quantenzahl

$$n = \mu^* + l + 1 \tag{2.22}$$

anstelle von $\mu^*$ einzuführen. Aus $\mu^* \geq 0$ und $l \geq 0$ folgt $n \geq 1$ und die erlaubten Energien der gebundenen Zustände sind

$$\begin{aligned} E_n \quad &= \quad -\frac{me^4}{2\hbar^2}\frac{Z^2}{n^2} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \\ E_n \quad &= \quad -\mathrm{Ry}\frac{Z^2}{n^2} \qquad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.23}$$

Die natürliche Einheit der Energie ist das

RYDBERG

$$1Ry = \frac{me^4}{2\hbar^2} \quad . \tag{2.24}$$

Wegen $\mu^* + l + 1 = n$ sind bei gegebener Hauptquantenzahl $n$ nur Drehimpulsquantenzahlen $l < n$ erlaubt.

| Symbol | Name | erlaubte Werte |
|---|---|---|
| $n$ | Hauptquantenzahl | $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ |
| $l$ | Drehimpulsquantenzahl | $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$ |
| $m$ | magnetische Quantenzahl | $m = \{-l, -l+1, \ldots, +l-1, l\}$<br>$2l+1$ mögliche Werte |

Table 2.1: *Quantenzahlen des H-Atoms mit Wertebereichen.*

### 2.5.4 Entartung

Wir haben schon gesehen (Sec. 2.4), dass für ein rotationsinvariantes Hamiltonian, die Energie nicht von der Quantenzahl $m$ abhängig ist.
Im Fall vom Wasserstoffatom hängt aber die Energie $E_n$ nur von der Hauptquantenzahl $n$, also auch nicht von $l$ ab. Zu festem $n$, also für eine gegebene Energie, kann die Drehimpulsquantenzahl die Werte $l = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1$ annehmen. Zu jedem $l$ wiederum sind $2l+1$ Werte für die magnetische Quantenzahl möglich. Die Anzahl der entarteten Zustände ist somit

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Entartung} &= \sum_{l=0}^{n-1} (2l+1) \\ &= 2\sum_{l=0}^{n-1} l + n \\ &= 2\frac{n(n-1)}{2} + n = n^2 \end{aligned}$$

Die Entartung ist also $n^2$.

- Die Drehimpulserhaltung erklärt nur die $(2l+1)$-fache Entartung der magnetischen Q.Z.

- Die höhere Entartung bedeutet, daß es hier eine weitere Erhaltungsgröße, nämlich den Runge-Lenz Vektor gibt. Er ist klassisch definiert als

$$\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{p} \times \mathbf{L} - e^2 Zm\, \mathbf{e_r}$$

  Quantenmechanisch

$$\hat{\mathbf{N}} = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{p}} \times \hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}}) - e^2 Zm \mathbf{e_r}$$

  Dieser Vektor ist nur im $\frac{1}{r}$-Potential eine Erhaltungsgröße. Man spricht daher auch von zufälliger Entartung.

### 2.5.5 Energieschema des H-Atoms (Z=1)

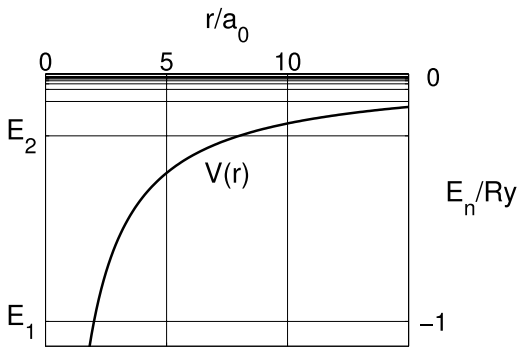



Figure 2.2: *Energieniveaus des H-Atoms in Ry und Coulombpotential (durchgezogene Kurve).*

Das H-Atom definiert charakteristische Werte für Energie und Länge

$$1\ \mathrm{Ry} = \frac{me^4}{2\hbar^2} = 13.6\ \mathrm{eV}$$

$$a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{me^2} = 0.529\mathring{A} \quad .$$

### 2.5.6 Lichtemission

Nach den Gesetzen der klassischen Elektrodynamik strahlt beschleunigte Ladung Energie ab. Das hieße, daß das Elektron, das klassisch auf einer Ellipsenbahn um den Kern kreist, permanent Energie abstrahlen würde. Es müßte dadurch spiralförmig in den Kern stürzen. Das steht natürlich im Widerspruch zur Beobachtung stabiler Atome.

Zudem erwartet man klassisch ein kontinuierliches Emissionsspektrum. Man findet aber experimentell isolierte Spektrallinien. Quantenmechanisch sind im Atom nur die Energien $E_n$ erlaubt. Wenn ein Elektron einen Übergang $E_{n_i} \to E_{n_f}$ (initial $\to$ final) macht, wird die freiwerdende Energie $E_{n_i} - E_{n_f}$ in Form eines Photons mit der Energie

$$\hbar\omega = -\mathrm{Ry}\left(\frac{1}{n_i^2} - \frac{1}{n_f^2}\right) = \left(\frac{n_i^2 - n_f^2}{n_i^2 n_f^2}\right)\mathrm{Ry}$$

emittiert. Experimentell wurden anfänglich drei Typen von Übergängen beobachtet, die Lyman, Balmer und Paschen Serien

Zur Erinnerung

$$\begin{aligned} E &= h\cdot\nu = \frac{h\cdot c}{\lambda} \\ \Rightarrow\quad \lambda &= \frac{h\cdot c}{E} \\ \mathbf{h\cdot c} &= \mathbf{1.2\cdot 10^{-6}\quad eV\cdot m} \end{aligned}$$

**Lyman Serie** ($n_f = 1$) :

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{h\cdot c}{\mathrm{Ry}}\left(\frac{n^2}{n^2-1}\right) \qquad n = 2,3,\ldots \\ \lambda &= (9\ldots 12)\cdot 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m} \\ \mathrm{UV} &: \quad (1\ldots 40)\cdot 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m} \end{aligned}$$

**Balmer Serie** ($n_f = 2$) :

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{h\cdot c}{\mathrm{Ry}}\left(\frac{n^2\cdot 4}{n^2-4}\right) \qquad n = 3,4,\ldots \\ \lambda &= (3.6\ldots 6.6)\cdot 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m} \\ \mathrm{Sichtbar} &: \quad (4\ldots 8)\cdot 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m} \end{aligned}$$

**Paschen Serie** ($n_f = 3$) :

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{h\cdot c}{\mathrm{Ry}}\left(\frac{n^2\cdot 9}{n^2-9}\right) \qquad n = 4,5,\ldots \\ \lambda &= (0.8\ldots 1.9)\cdot 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m} \\ \text{Infrarot} &= (1\ldots 100)\cdot 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m} \end{aligned}$$

**Isotopeneffekt**

Für Wasserstoff bzw Deuterium gilt

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \mathrm{H} & : & M{=}M_p \\ \mathrm{D} & : & M \approx 2M_p \end{array} \quad ,$$

wo $M$ die Masses des Kernes ist. Da das Massenverhältnis

$$\frac{m_e}{M_p} = \frac{1}{1836}$$

sehr klein ist, kann man die effektive Masse $m_{red}$ schreiben als

$$m_{red} \approx m\left(1-\frac{m}{M}\right)$$

Die Berücksichtigung der Kernbewegung führt also nur zu geringen Modifikationen der Energie 2.23

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \frac{m_e\cdot e^2}{2\hbar\cdot n^2}\left(1-\frac{m_e}{M}\right) \\ &= \frac{\mathrm{Ry}}{n^2}\left(1-\frac{m_e}{M}\right) \\ \Rightarrow & \\ \Delta E_n &\equiv E_n^D - E_n^H = \frac{\mathrm{Ry}}{n^2}\left(\frac{m_e}{M_p}-\frac{m_e}{2M_p}\right) \\ &= \frac{\mathrm{Ry}}{n^2}\cdot \underbrace{\frac{m_e}{2M_p}}_{2{,}7\cdot 10^{-4}} \\ \Rightarrow \left|\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda}\right| &= 2{,}7\cdot 10^{-4} \Rightarrow |\Delta\lambda| = O(1\ \mathring{A}) \qquad . \end{aligned}$$

Weitere Korrekturen zum Wasserstoffspektrum rühren von relativistischen Effekten her. Diese Korrekturen sind von der Ordnung O(0.1 $\mathring{A}$). Weitere Details sind Inhalt der Atom- und Molekülphysik.

### 2.5.7 Wasserstoff-Wellenfunktion

Aus 2.22 hat der letzte nicht verschwindende Term in der Reihe ( 2.15 ) den Index $\mu^* = n-l-1$. Die Reihe lautet somit

$$F(r) = r^{l+1} \sum_{\mu=0}^{n-l-1} c_\mu \, r^\mu \quad . \tag{2.25}$$

Die Funktion $F(r)$ ist somit ein Polynom $n$-ten Grades.
Die Wasserstoff-Wellenfunktion lautet

$$\Psi_{nlm}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\chi_{nl}(r)}{r} \, Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) \quad .$$

Wir fassen nun die Ergebnisse für den Radialteil der Wellenfunktion zusammen, wobei wir nun alle Quantenzahlen explizit berücksichtigen (cf. 2.15 , 2.18 )

$$R_{nl}(r) = \frac{\chi_{nl}(r)}{r} = e^{-\gamma r} \, r^l \sum_{\mu=0}^{n-l-1} c_\mu \, r^\mu \tag{2.26}$$

$$\gamma = \frac{Z}{n a_0} \quad . \tag{2.27}$$

Eine detailliertere Rechnung (details in: Sec. A.12 ) führt zum

Ortsanteil der Wasserstoff-Wellenfunktionen

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\chi_{nl}(r)}{r} &= (2\gamma)^{3/2} \left( \frac{(n-l-1)!}{2n(n+l)!} \right)^{1/2} (2\gamma r)^l \, e^{-\gamma r} \, L_{n-l-1}^{2l+1}(2\gamma r) \\ \frac{\chi_{nl}(r)}{r} &= (2\gamma)^{3/2} \left( \frac{(n+l)!}{2n(n-l-1)!} \right)^{1/2} \frac{1}{(2l+1)!} \, (2\gamma r)^l \, e^{-\gamma r} \\ &* \quad {}_1\mathrm{F}_1(l+1-n, 2l+2; 2\gamma r) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.28}$$

#### Normierung

Die Normierung der Wellenfunktion ist so gewählt, daß

$$\int_0^\infty R_{nl}(r)^2 r^2 dr = \int_0^\infty \left( \frac{\chi_{nl}(r)}{r} \right)^2 r^2 dr = 1 \quad . \tag{2.29}$$

Der Faktor $r^2$ stammt vom Volumenelement $d^3r = r^2 dr d\Omega$ und stellt sicher, daß die Wellenfunktionen zusammen mit dem Winkelanteil (cf. 1.52 ) orthonormal sind:

$$\int |\Psi_{nlm}(r,\theta,\varphi)|^2 \, r^2 dr \, d\cos\theta \, d\varphi = 1$$

**Spezialfälle**

Interessant im Vergleich mit der Bohr-Sommerfeld-Theorie ist der **Fall mit maximalem Drehimpuls** $l = n-1$ (siehe 2.26 ). In diesem Fall ist ${}_1\mathrm{F}_1(0,2n;r) = 1$ und der Radialanteil der Wellenfunktion vereinfacht sich zu

$$\frac{\chi_{n,n-1}(r)}{r} = (2\gamma)^{3/2}\left(\frac{1}{2n(2n-1)!}\right)^{1/2}(2\gamma r)^{n-1}\,e^{-\gamma r} \quad .$$

Die radiale Wahrscheinlichkeitsdichte ist

$$p(r) = |\chi_{n,n-1}(r)|^2 \propto (2\gamma r)^{2n}e^{-2\gamma r} = e^{-2\gamma r+(2n)\ln(2\gamma r)} \quad .$$

Sie hat das Maximum bei $r = \frac{n}{\gamma} = n^2 a_0$. Diese Werte stimmen mit denen der Bohr-Sommerfeld-Theorie überein. Diese Übereinstimmung sollte aber nicht überbewertet werden, da die Elektronen nicht auf klassischen stationären Bahnen umlaufen.

Mit der Wellenfunktion $\Psi_{nlm}$ können folgende, oft benötigten Erwartungswerte berechnet werden

$$\langle r\rangle = \frac{a_0}{2Z}\Big(3n^2 - l(l+1)\Big) \tag{2.30a}$$

$$\langle r^2\rangle = \frac{a_0^2 n^2}{2Z^2}\Big(5n^2 + 1 - 3l(l+1)\Big) \tag{2.30b}$$

$$\langle\frac{1}{r}\rangle = \frac{Z}{n^2 a_0} \quad . \tag{2.30c}$$

Für spätere Rechnungen benötigen wir die Grundzustandswellenfunktion, i.e. $n = 1, l = m = 0$.

GRUNDZUSTANDSWELLENFUNKTION DES H-ÄHNLICHEN ATOMS

$$\psi_{100}(r,\theta,\varphi) = \left(\frac{Z^3}{a_0^3\,\pi}\right)^{1/2} e^{-Zr/a_0} \quad . \tag{2.31}$$

The first few radial wave functions $R_{nl}$ (normalized according to 2.29 ) are

$$\begin{aligned} R_{10}(r) &= 2\left(\frac{Z}{a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} e^{-Zr/a_0} \\ R_{20}(r) &= 2\left(\frac{Z}{2a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\left(1-\frac{Zr}{2a_0}\right)e^{-Zr/(2a_0)} \\ R_{21}(r) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\left(\frac{Z}{2a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\frac{Zr}{a_0}e^{-Zr/(2a_0)} \end{aligned} \tag{2.32}$$

# Chapter 3

# Time dependent perturbation theory

## 3.1 Zeitabhängige (Diracsche) Störungstheorie

Häufig interessiert man sich für zeitabhängige Hamilton-Operatoren. Z.B. könnte man daran interessiert sein, was mit einem Atom passiert, wenn man elektromagnetische Wellen einstrahlt. Man kann versuchen, die zeitabhängige Schrödingergleichung analytisch exakt zu lösen. Das gelingt allerdings nur in den seltensten Fällen. Der Ausweg sind entweder numerische Verfahren, die in den letzten Jahren rasant an Leistungsfähigkeit und Bedeutung zugenommen haben. Alternativ hat man die Möglichkeit, das Problem perturbativ zu lösen. Wir gehen davon aus, daß der Hamilton-Operator $H = H_0 + H_1(t)$ aus einem zeitunabhängigen Teil $H_0$ und einer zeitabhängigen Störung $H_1(t)$ besteht. Für das Folgende gehen wir davon aus, daß das Eigenwertproblem von $H_0$

$$H_0|\Phi_n\rangle = \varepsilon_n|\Phi_n\rangle$$

gelöst ist. In der Praxis benutzt man die Lösung des zeitabhängigen Problems, um experimentell Rückschlüsse auf das Eigenwertspektrum von $H_0$ zu gewinnen.

Z.B. kann man einen klassischen Oszillator von außen mit einer periodischen Kraft mit einer Frequenz $\omega$ anregen. Wenn wir $\omega$ kontinuierlich variieren, wird die Amplitude der erzwungenen Schwingung bei der Eigenfrequenz des ungestörten Oszillators maximal sein. Wir können also auf diese Weise auf die Eigenfrequenz (bzw. Federkraft) und die Reibungskräfte rückschließen. In Quantensystemen ist diese Vorgehensweise die einzig mögliche, das mikroskopische System zu untersuchen. In diesem Zusammenhang hat man allerdings die Stärke des Störterms $H_1$ unter Kontrolle und kann erreichen, daß „$H_1 \ll H_0$" Die Aufteilung der Dynamik in Anteile, die von $H_0$ und solche, die von $H_1$ herrühren, führt zur Einführung des Wechselwirkungsbildes.

### 3.1.1 Das Wechselwirkungsbild

Die Zeitentwicklung eines Zustandes nach dem Gesamthamiltonian $H = H_0 + H_1(t)$ wird durch die zeitabhängige Schrödingergleichung bestimmt:

$$i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}|\Psi^S(t)\rangle = \Big(H_0 + H_1(t)\Big)|\Psi^S(t)\rangle \; . \tag{3.1}$$

der superscript "S" steht für "Schrödinger Bild".
Die Zeitentwicklung eines beliebigen Anfangszustands $|\Phi\rangle$ im zeitunabhängigen ungestörten System lautet bekanntlich

$$|\Phi(t)\rangle = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}\,|\Phi(t=0)\rangle \qquad .$$

Es ist sinnvoll, den "einfachen" Teil der Dynamik, beschrieben durch $H_0$, explizit im wechselwirkenden Zustandsvektor $|\Psi\rangle$ zu eliminieren durch Einführung des **Wechselwirkungsbildes (Interaction representation)**. Der Zustand im Wechselwirkungsbild wird mit dem index "$I$" (interaction) bezeichnet.

$$|\Psi^I(t)\rangle =: e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}|\Psi^S(t)\rangle \; . \tag{3.2}$$

Die Zeitableitung von 3.2 liefert

$$i\hbar\,\frac{d}{dt}|\Psi^I(t)\rangle = -H_0\,e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}\,\Big|\Psi^S(t)\Big\rangle + e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}\,i\hbar\,\frac{d}{dt}\Big|\Psi^S(t)\Big\rangle \tag{3.3}$$

wir benutzen 3.1 und erhalten

$$\begin{aligned} i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}|\Psi^I(t)\rangle &= -H_0 e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}\Big|\Psi^S(t)\Big\rangle + e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}H_0\Big|\Psi^S(t)\Big\rangle \\ &+ \underbrace{e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}H_1(t)e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}}_{:=\mathbf{H_1^I(t)}}\;\underbrace{e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}\Big|\Psi^S(t)\Big\rangle}_{|\Psi^I(t)\rangle} \\ &= H_1^I(t)\,\Big|\Psi^I(t)\Big\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{3.4}$$

WECHSELWIRKUNGSBILD

$$\begin{aligned} H_1^I(t) &= e^{+\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t}H_1(t)e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}H_0 t} \\ i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}|\Psi^I(t)\rangle &= H_1^I(t)|\Psi^I(t)\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{3.5}$$

Let us now derive an expansion of $|\Psi^I(t)\rangle$ in powers of $H_1^I$. This means that we formally replace $H_1^I \to \varepsilon H_1^I$ in 3.5 .[1] Since $|\Psi^I(t)\rangle$ now depends on $\varepsilon$, we can carry out a Taylor expansion.

$$|\Psi^I(t)\rangle = \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^\ell |\Psi^{I(\ell)}(t)\rangle \,. \tag{3.6}$$

Inserting this into 3.5 , and collecting same powers of $\varepsilon^\ell$ on both sides yields

$$\varepsilon^{(\ell+1)}\; i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}|\Psi^{I(\ell+1)}(t)\rangle = \varepsilon\; H_1^I(t)\; \varepsilon^\ell\; |\Psi^{I(\ell)}(t)\rangle \qquad \ell \geq 0\,. \tag{3.7}$$

Assuming that $H_1^I(t)$ vanishes before a certain time $t_0$ (when the perturbation is switched on), then $\Psi^I(t_0)$ does not depend on $H_1(t)$, and thus on $\varepsilon$, i.e. only the $\ell = 0$ is nonzero. We therefore have the initial conditions

$$|\Psi^{I(\ell)}(t_0)\rangle = \delta_{\ell,0}\,|\Phi\rangle\,, \tag{3.8}$$

where $|\Phi\rangle = |\Phi(t=0)\rangle = |\Psi^{I(\ell=0)}(t)\rangle$ is the unperturbed state evaluated in the interaction representation, which is, by definition, time independent. 3.7 can thus be solved by iteration:

$$\begin{aligned} |\Psi^{I(\ell+1)}(t)\rangle &= -\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t} H_1^I(\tau)|\Psi^{I(\ell)}(\tau)\rangle\, d\tau \\ |\Psi^{I(0)}(t)\rangle &= |\Phi\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.9}$$

For example, the first-order term reads

$$|\Psi^{I(1)}(t)\rangle = -\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t} H_1^I(\tau) d\tau\, |\Phi\rangle \tag{3.10}$$

and the second-order term

$$\begin{aligned} |\Psi^{I(2)}(t)\rangle &= -\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t} dt_1\, H_1^I(t_1)|\Psi^{I(1)}(t_1)\rangle = \\ &\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_{t_0}^{t} dt_1\, H_1^I(t_1) \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2\, H_1^I(t_2)|\Phi\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.11}$$

[1] This is just a formal way to introduce an expansion for "small" $H_1^I$. In the end, we will be interested in the case $\varepsilon = 1$

Wir entwickeln nun die $|\Psi^{I(\ell)}(t)\rangle$ nach den Eigenzuständen $|\Phi_n\rangle$ von $H_0$:

$$|\Psi^{I(\ell)}(t)\rangle = \sum_n c_n^{(\ell)}(t)|\Phi_n\rangle$$

Entsprechend 3.6 sind

$$c_n(t) \equiv \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} c_n^{(\ell)}(t) \tag{3.12}$$

die Entwicklungskoeffizienten von $|\Psi^I(t)\rangle$.
Einsetzen in 3.9 und multiplikation von links mit $\langle\Phi_m|$: liefert:

$$c_m^{(\ell+1)}(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar}\sum_n \int_{t_0}^{t} \underbrace{\langle\Phi_m|H_1^I(\tau)|\Phi_n\rangle}_{e^{+\frac{i}{\hbar}\varepsilon_m\tau}\langle\Phi_m|H_1^S(\tau)|\Phi_n\rangle e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\varepsilon_n\tau}} c_n^{(\ell)}(\tau)\, d\tau \tag{3.13}$$

Mit der Definition

$$\omega_{mn} := \frac{\varepsilon_m - \varepsilon_n}{\hbar}$$

lautet die recursive Gleichung 3.13 für die Entwicklungskoeffizienten:

$$\begin{aligned} c_m^{(\ell+1)}(t) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar}\sum_n \int_{t_0}^{t} d\tau\, e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} H_{mn}(\tau)\, c_n^{(\ell)}(\tau) \\ H_{mn}(\tau) &= \langle\Phi_m|H_1^S(\tau)|\Phi_n\rangle \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.14}$$

Die $\ell = 0$ Koeffiziente sind die Zeitunabhängige Entwicklungkoeffiziente der Zustandes (in der Wechselwirkungsdarstellung) vor einschalten der Störung

$$c_m^{(\ell=0)}(t_0) = c_m(t_0) \equiv c_m$$

Wir nehmen von nun an zur Vereinfachung $t_0 = 0$. Aus 3.14 lauten die Koeffizienten erster Ordnung

$$c_m^{(1)}(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar}\sum_n c_n \int_0^t H_{mn}(\tau) e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} d\tau$$

Der nächste Iterationsschritt liefert:

$$\begin{aligned} c_m^{(2)}(t) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar}\sum_n \int_0^t d\tau\, H_{mn}(\tau) e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} c_n^{(1)}(\tau) \\ &= \left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\right)^2 \sum_n \int_0^t d\tau\, H_{mn}(\tau) e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} \sum_{n'} c_{n'} \int_0^\tau d\tau'\, H_{nn'}(\tau') e^{i\omega_{nn'}\tau'} \end{aligned} \tag{3.15}$$

**Übergangswahrscheinlichkeit**

Es interessiert uns folgende Frage: Wenn das System zur Zeit $t = 0$ im Zustand $|\Phi_i\rangle$ ist, wie groß ist die Wahrscheinlichkeit, daß es dann zur Zeit $t > 0$ in dem Zustand $|\Phi_f\rangle$ ist? ($|\Phi_i\rangle, |\Phi_f\rangle$ sind Eigenzustände von $H_0$)

$$\begin{aligned} P_{i\to f} &= \left|\langle\Phi_f|\Psi(t)\rangle\right|^2 = \left|\langle\Phi_f|\sum_n c_n(t)\Phi_n\rangle\right|^2 = \left|\sum_n c_n(t)\underbrace{\langle\Phi_f|\Phi_n\rangle}_{\delta_{fn}}\right|^2 \\ &= \left|c_f(t)\right|^2 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.16}$$

Die Anfangsbedingung lautet $c_n(0) = \delta_{n,i}$. Daraus folgt in zweiter Ordnung in $H_1$ (siehe 3.15 )

$$\begin{aligned} c_f(t) = \delta_{f,i} &- \frac{i}{\hbar}\int_0^t H_{fi}(\tau)e^{i\omega_{fi}\tau}d\tau \\ &- \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\sum_n\int_0^t d\tau H_{fn}(\tau)e^{i\omega_{fn}\tau}\int_0^\tau d\tau' H_{ni}(\tau')e^{i\omega_{ni}\tau'} \\ &+ O(H_1^3) \end{aligned} \tag{3.17}$$

### 3.1.2 Harmonische oder konstante Störung

Eine sehr wichtige Anwendung der zeitabhängigen Störungstheorie sind Probleme, bei denen zur Zeit $t = 0$ eine konstante oder harmonische Störung eingeschaltet wird

$$H_1 = \Theta(t)2V\cos(\omega t)$$

- $\Theta(t)$ schaltet die Störung zur Zeit t=0 ein
- für $\omega = 0$ beschreibt diese Gleichung eine konstante Störung

Es gilt [2]

$$H_1(t) = \Theta(t)\left(Ve^{i\omega t} + V^\dagger e^{-i\omega t}\right)$$

$$H_{mn}(t) = \left(V_{mn}e^{i\omega t} + V_{mn}^* e^{-i\omega t}\right) \qquad = \sum_{s=\pm 1} V_{mn}^s e^{is\omega t}$$

$$\text{mit} \qquad V_{mn}^s = \begin{cases} V_{mn} & \text{für} \quad s = +1 \\ V_{mn}^* & \text{für} \quad s = -1 \end{cases} .$$

[2] Für nicht-selbstadjungiertes $V$ ist diese Form allgemeiner und enthält eine Phasenverschiebung

$\Theta(t)$ wird in diesem Zusammenhang nicht mehr benötigt, da die Integrale in 3.17 ohnehin erst bei $t = 0$ beginnen!

### Nullte Ordnung

In Nullter Ordnung ist nicht viel zu rechnen. Der Beitrag lautet

$$c_f^{(0)} = \delta_{if}$$

und er kommt nur zum Tragen, wenn Anfangs- und Endzustand gleich sind.

### Erste Ordnung

Das erste Integral in 3.17 lautet

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^t d\tau H_{mn}(\tau) e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} &= \sum_s V_{mn}^s \int_0^t d\tau e^{i(\omega_{mn}+s\omega)\tau} \\ &= \sum_s V_{mn}^s \frac{e^{i(\omega_{mn}+s\omega)t} - 1}{i(\omega_{mn}+s\omega)} \end{aligned} \tag{3.18}$$

D.h. der Term erster Ordnung liefert:

$$c_f^{(1)}(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \sum_s V_{fi}^s \, e^{i\frac{\omega_{fi}+s\omega}{2}t} \, \frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega_{fi}+s\omega}{2}t\right)}{\frac{\omega_{fi}+s\omega}{2}} \tag{3.19}$$

### Zweite Ordnung

Wir wollen uns zunächst mit der ersten Ordnung begnügen. Den Beitrag zweiter Ordnung werden wir später mit einer leicht modifizierten Methode berechnen, mit der das Ergebnis leichter hergeleitet werden kann.

### Konstante Störung

Wir betrachten zunächst eine konstante Störung ($\omega = 0$). Damit vereinfachen sich die Ausdrücke 3.19 bzw. 3.17

$$c_f^{(1)}(t) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \underbrace{\sum_{s=\pm 1} V_{fi}^s}_{H_{fi}} \, e^{i\frac{\omega_{fi}}{2}t} \, \frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega_{fi}}{2}t\right)}{\frac{\omega_{fi}}{2}} \tag{3.20}$$

$$c_f^{(2)}(t) = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \sum_{s,s'=\pm 1} \sum_n \frac{V_{fn}^s V_{ni}^{s'}}{\omega_{ni}} \left[ \frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}t} - 1}{\omega_{fi}} - \frac{e^{i\omega_{fn}t} - 1}{\omega_{fn}} \right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \sum_n \frac{H_{fn} H_{ni}}{\omega_{ni}} \left[ \frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}t} - 1}{\omega_{fi}} - \frac{e^{i\omega_{fn}t} - 1}{\omega_{fn}} \right] \tag{3.21}$$

Die Wahrscheinlichkeit, dass das System in der Zeit $t$ in den Zustand $f$ übergegangen ist, lautet auf niedrigster Ordnung aus 3.20

$$P_{i\to f} = \left|c_f(t)\right|^2 = \frac{t^2}{\hbar^2} \left|H_{fi}\right|^2 \frac{\sin^2\left(\frac{\omega_{fi}}{2}t\right)}{\left(\frac{\omega_{fi}}{2}t\right)^2} \quad . \tag{3.22}$$

Falls das Spektrum diskret und $\varepsilon_i$ nicht entartet ist, gibt es zwischen der Energie $\varepsilon_i$ und der Energie der Endzustände $\varepsilon_f$ eine Energielücke $\Delta\varepsilon_f$. Die Übergangswahrscheinlichkeit lautet

$$P_{i\to f} = \frac{4\left|H_{fi}\right|^2}{(\Delta\varepsilon_f)^2} \sin^2\left(\frac{\Delta\varepsilon_f t}{2\hbar}\right) \quad .$$

Diese Wahrscheinlichkeit oszilliert also mit der Frequenz $\omega = \frac{\Delta\varepsilon}{\hbar}$. Das ist ein charakteristisches Phänomen diskreter Systeme. [3] Die Periode der Oszillationen ist $T = \frac{2\pi\hbar}{\Delta\varepsilon}$ und die Amplitude nimmt proportional zu $\frac{|H_{fi}|^2}{(\Delta\varepsilon_f)^2}$ ab.
Wenn das diskrete Spektrum in $\varepsilon_i$ entartet ist, d.h. $\exists f \neq i : \varepsilon_f = \varepsilon_i$, dann liefert 3.22 stattdessen

$$P_{i\to f} = \frac{t^2 \left|H_{fi}\right|^2}{\hbar^2}.$$

Die Wahrscheinlichkeit wächst proportional zu $t^2$ an. Ab einer bestimmten Zeit wird die Wahrscheinlichkeit größer Eins. Das ist natürlich unsinnig und zeigt an, daß in Fall von Entartung

$$t \ll \frac{\hbar}{\left|H_{fi}\right|} \tag{3.23}$$

erfüllt sein muß, damit die Störungstheorie erster Ordnung anwendbar ist.

[3] Erst im Fall kontinuierlicher Spektren verschwindet die Periodizität, wie wir gleich sehen werden.

**Kontinuierliches Spektrum**

Wir wenden uns nun dem Fall zu, daß das Spektrum bei $\varepsilon_i$ kontinuierlich ist. Es ist hierbei zweckmäßig, die Übergangsrate (Übergangswahrscheinlichkeit pro Zeiteinheit)

$$W := \frac{P}{t} \tag{3.24}$$

einzuführen, die aus 3.22 folgt

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar^2}\left|H_{fi}\right|^2 \frac{t}{2\pi}\left(\frac{\sin(\omega_{fi}t/2)}{\omega_{fi}t/2}\right)^2 .$$

In diesem Ausdruck erscheint die Funktion

$$\Delta_t(\omega) := \frac{t}{2\pi}\left(\frac{\sin(\frac{\omega t}{2})}{\frac{\omega t}{2}}\right)^2 , \tag{3.25}$$

die sich im Limes $t \to \infty$ wie die Delta-Funktion verhält Diskussion hier: Sec. A.21 (siehe Fig. A.1 ):

$$\lim_{t\to\infty} \Delta_t(\omega) = \delta(\omega) . \tag{3.26}$$

Hiermit wird die Übergangsrate 3.25 für große $t$ zu

FERMI'S GOLDENE REGEL

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\left|H_{fi}\right|^2 \delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i) . \tag{3.27}$$

Diese Darstellung mit der $\delta$-Funktion ist nur dann sinnvoll, wenn in der Nachbarschaft von $\varepsilon_i$ ein Kontinuum von Endzuständen vorhanden ist. Das ist in physikalischen Anwendungen oft der Fall. Im Limes $t \to \infty$ beschreibt 3.27 die Energieerhaltung. Für kurze Zeiten ist die Energieerhaltung aufgeweicht, d.h. es hat eine Unschärfe (siehe Fig. A.1 ) $\Delta E/\hbar \propto 2\pi/t$ also die Heisenberg Unschärfe zwischen Zeit und Energie

$$t\,\Delta E \propto h$$

Wir finden im Fall der Entartung eine zeitlich konstante Übergangsrate, d.h. die Übergangswahrscheinlichkeit wächst linear mit der Zeit und führt zu unphysikalischen Ergebnissen, wenn die Störungstheorie nicht mehr anwendbar ist, d.h. wenn die Ungleichung 3.23 verletzt wird.

Bei einem **kontinuierlichen Spektrum** kann man nicht mehr die Übergangswahrscheinlichkeit in individuelle Zustände angeben. $P = \left|\langle\Phi_f|\Psi(t)\rangle\right|^2$ in 3.16 hat dann vielmehr die Bedeutung einer Wahrscheinlichkeitsdichte. In diesem Fall interessieren wir uns für die Übergangsrate in einem Intervall von Endzustandsenergien ($\varepsilon_n \in \Delta I_f := [\varepsilon_f, \varepsilon_f + \Delta E]$).
Wir führen nun die Zustandsdichte $\rho(E)$ ein . Für ein infinitesimales Energieintervall $\Delta E$ ist $\rho(E)$ die Anzahl der Zustände dividiert durch $\Delta E$. Für ein endliches Intervall

$$\int_{\Delta E} \rho(E) dE = \sum_{\substack{n \\ \varepsilon_n \in \Delta E}} 1 \tag{3.28}$$

Man kann auch schreiben

$$\rho(E) = \sum_n \delta(\varepsilon_n - E) \tag{3.29}$$

3.27 wird dann zu:

$$W_{i\to\Delta I_f} = \sum_{\substack{n \\ \varepsilon_n \in \Delta I_f}} \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} |H_{ni}|^2 \delta(\varepsilon_n - \varepsilon_i)$$

In der Annahme, dass $|H_{ni}|^2$ $I_f$ nicht wesentlich variiert, kann man diesen durch einem Mittelwert $\overline{|H_{fi}|^2}$ ersetzen. Wir erhalten

$$W_{i\to\Delta I_f} = \Theta(\varepsilon_i \in \Delta I_f)\, \overline{|H_{fi}|^2}\, \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\, \rho(\varepsilon_i) \tag{3.30}$$

### Harmonische Störung mit kontinuierlichem Spektrum

Der Fall einer harmonischen Störung läßt sich nun leicht diskutieren. Hier ist $\omega \neq 0$ und es gibt in 3.19 zwei Beiträge: $af(\omega_{fi} + \omega) + bf(\omega_{fi} - \omega)$. Für große $t$ oszillieren diese Terme stark und verschwinden im Durschnitt, es sei denn, der Argument $\omega_{fi} \pm \omega$ ist klein, was nur bei einer der beiden geschehen kann. Die Übergangswahrscheinlichkeit enthält den Term

$$\begin{aligned} \left|af(\omega_{fi}+\omega) + bf(\omega_{fi}-\omega)\right|^2 &= |a|^2 \left|f(\omega_{fi}+\omega)\right|^2 + |b|^2 \left|f(\omega_{fi}-\omega)\right|^2 \\ &\quad + (a^* b + a b^*) f(\omega_{fi}+\omega) \cdot f(\omega_{fi}-\omega) \end{aligned}$$

Der Interferenzterm hat (für $\omega \neq 0$) immer eine stark oszillierende Komponente und kann daher vernachlässigt werden. Die anderen Beiden Termen ergeben eine Übergangsrate in der Form 3.25 mit $\omega_{fi} \to \omega_{fi} \pm \omega$, was letzendlich zur $\delta$-Form 3.27 führen.

Für endliche Frequenzen kann immer einer der beiden Peaks vernachlässigt werden. Voraussetzung hierfür, und auch für die Vernachlässigung des Interferenzterms ist, daß der Abstand $2\omega$ der beiden $\delta$-artigen Peaks groß ist gegen die Peakbreite $2\pi/t$ (siehe Abbildung A.1 ). Das heißt,

$$t \gg \frac{\pi}{\omega} \approx \frac{\hbar}{|\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i|} \quad .$$

Gleichzeitig muß immer noch 3.23 erfüllt sein, damit die erste Ordnung Störungstheorie gültig ist. Für die Zeit $t$ erhalten wir also die Bedingung

$$\frac{\hbar}{|\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i|} \ll t \ll \frac{\hbar}{|H_{fi}|} \quad .$$

Voraussetzung dafür, daß diese Bedingung für $t$ überhaupt erfüllt werden kann, ist

$$\frac{|H_{fi}|}{|\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i|} \ll 1 \quad .$$

Das ist genau die gleiche Voraussetzung, die für die Gültigkeit der zeitunabhängigen Störungstheorie notwendig ist.
Analog zu 3.27 erhalten wir

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\left( |W_{fi}|^2 \underbrace{\delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i + \hbar\omega)}_{\varepsilon_f = \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega \Rightarrow \text{Emission}} + |W_{fi}^*|^2 \underbrace{\delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega)}_{\varepsilon_f = \varepsilon_i + \hbar\omega \Rightarrow \text{Absorption}} \right)$$

Diese Formel ist der Ausgangspunkt zur Beschreibung vieler physikalischer Effekte, wie z.B.: (inverse) Photoemission, Augerspektroskopie, Coulomb-Streuung und Compton-Streuung.

### 3.1.3 Adiabatisches Einschalten der Störung

Wir multiplizieren den Störterm $H_1$ mit einem adiabatischen Einschaltfaktor $e^{O^+ t}$. Die Störung wird nun bereits für $t \to -\infty$ eingeschaltet. Jedoch sehr langsam, da $O^+$ eine infinitesimal kleine positive Größe ist. Die Änderung im Vergleich zum abrupten Einschalten bei $t = 0$ ist, dass die Integrale sich alle bis $t \to -\infty$ erstrecken. Der Einschaltfaktor stellt sicher, dass die Integrale konvergieren. Der einzige Unterschied ist folgender

$$\int_0^t e^{i\omega\tau} d\tau \to \int_{-\infty}^t e^{i(\omega - iO^+)\tau} d\tau$$
$$\frac{e^{i\omega t} - 1}{i\omega} \to \frac{e^{i(\omega - iO^+)t}}{i(\omega - iO^+)} .$$

Ganz am Schluss, lassen wir dann $O^+ \to 0$ gehen. Zur Vereinfachung der Schreibarbeit verwenden wir die Abkürzung $\omega^+ := \omega - iO^+$
Für den Term erster Ordnung erhalten wir dann anstelle von 3.18

$$\int_{-\infty}^{t} d\tau H_{mn}(\tau) e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} = \sum_s V_{mn}^s \frac{e^{i(\omega_{mn}^+ + s\omega)t}}{i(\omega_{mn}^+ + s\omega)} \tag{3.31}$$

Der erste Ordnungsterm in 3.17 liefert somit bei konstanter Störung ($\omega = 0$)

$$\begin{aligned} c_f^{(1)} &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \sum_s V_{fi}^s \frac{e^{i(\omega_{fi}^+)t}}{i\omega_{fi}^+} \\ &= -\frac{1}{\hbar} H_{fi} \frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}^+ t}}{\omega_{fi}^+} \,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.32}$$

Damit gilt für die Wahrscheinlichkeit

$$P_{i\to f} = \left|c_f\right|^2 = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \left|H_{ni}\right|^2 \frac{e^{2O^+ t}}{\omega_{fi}^2 + O^{+2}}$$

Daraus folgt

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{dP_{i\to f}}{dt} = \frac{2}{\hbar^2} \left|H_{ni}\right|^2 \frac{O^+ e^{2O^+ t}}{\omega_{fi}^2 + O^{+2}} \,.$$

Nun können wir den Grenzübergang $O^+ \to 0$ durchführen und erhalten für die Übergangsrate

$$\text{mit } \lim_{O^+\to 0} \frac{O^+}{\omega^2 + O^{+2}} = \pi\delta(\omega)$$

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \left|H_{ni}\right|^2 \delta(E_f - E_i) \,.$$

Das ist wieder das bekannte Ergebnis 3.27 . Bestätigt durch dieses Ergebnis berechnen wir nun hiermit die Korrektur zweiter Ordnung für eine $\omega = 0$ Störung.

$$\begin{aligned} c_f^{(2)}(t) &= -\frac{1}{\hbar^2} \sum_n \int_{-\infty}^{t} d\tau H_{fn} e^{i\omega_{fn}^+ \tau} \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau' H_{ni} e^{i\omega_{ni}^+ \tau'} \\ &= -\frac{1}{\hbar^2} \sum_n H_{fn} H_{ni} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{t} d\tau e^{i\omega_{fn}^+ \tau} \frac{e^{i\omega_{ni}^+ \tau}}{i\omega_{ni}^+} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \sum_n \frac{H_{fn} H_{ni}}{\omega_{ni}^+} \frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}^+ t}}{\omega_{fi}^+} \,. \end{aligned}$$

Wir addieren nun die Beiträge erster 3.32 und zweiter Ordnung

$$\begin{aligned} c_f &= -H_{fi}\frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}^+ t}}{\hbar\omega_{fi}^+} + \sum_n \frac{H_{fn}H_{ni}}{\hbar\omega_{ni}^+}\frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}^+ t}}{\hbar\omega_{fi}^+} \\ &= -\left(H_{fi} + \sum_n \frac{H_{fn}H_{ni}}{-\hbar\omega_{ni}^+}\right)\frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}^+ t}}{\hbar\omega_{fi}^+} \,. \end{aligned}$$

Der erste Nenner lässt sich auch schreiben als $-\hbar\omega_{ni}^+ = E_i - E_n + iO^+$. Der Unterschied zum Ausdruck erster Ordnung 3.32 besteht darin, dass $H_{fi}$ durch

$$H_{fi} \to M_{fi} = H_{fi} + \sum_n \frac{H_{fn}H_{ni}}{E_i - E_n + iO^+} \tag{3.33}$$

zu ersetzen ist. Die Übergangsrate ist demnach

$$w_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\left|M_{fi}\right|^2 \,\delta(E_f - E_i)$$

# Chapter 4

# Charged particle in an electromagnetic field

## 4.1 Main goals in this chapter

- Find the correct **classical Hamilton function** for a charged particle in an electromagnetic field, by requiring that Hamilton's equations reproduce the **Lorentz force**.

- Promote it to the **quantum-mechanical Hamiltonian** via the correspondence principle (minimal coupling), and understand the difference between the **canonical momentum p** and the **kinetic momentum** $m\mathbf{v}$.

- Understand **gauge invariance**: the potentials $\mathbf{A}, \phi$ are not themselves observable; only gauge-invariant quantities (such as $\mathbf{v}$ or the probability density) are.

- Apply this machinery to a charged particle in a constant magnetic field (**Landau levels**): find the energy spectrum and understand the physical origin and size of its huge degeneracy.

## 4.2 Classical Hamilton function of charged particles in an electromagnetic field

The interaction of charged particles with electromagnetic fields is at the basis of many phenomena treated later in this script: Landau levels, absorption and emission of radiation, Bremsstrahlung. The first question we have to answer is what

the quantum-mechanical Hamiltonian is. Since quantisation starts from the classical Hamilton function, we first have to identify the latter, i.e. the function whose Hamilton equations reproduce the Lorentz force. Remember from classical mechanics [1]

HAMILTONIAN FOR A CHARGED PARTICLE IN A EM FIELD

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t)\right)^2 + q\phi(\mathbf{r},t) \tag{4.1}$$

We check that it gives the correct equation of motion. First consider that the velocity

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{r} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{p}}H = \frac{1}{m}\left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}\right) \tag{4.2}$$

is not the usual $\mathbf{p}/m$: the canonical momentum $\mathbf{p}$ and the kinetic momentum $m\mathbf{v}$ are different objects in the presence of a field. Therefore, the force acting on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{d}{dt}m\mathbf{v} = \frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{A} \tag{4.3}$$

From the Hamilton equations we have (cf. 4.1 )

$$\frac{d}{dt}p_i = -\nabla_i H = \underbrace{\frac{1}{m}(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A})}_{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \frac{q}{c}\,\nabla_i \mathbf{A} - q\nabla_i\phi \tag{4.4}$$

Consider that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}(t),t) = v_j\nabla_j\mathbf{A} + \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{A} \tag{4.5}$$

Putting everything ( 4.3 , 4.4 , 4.5 ) together, we obtain

$$F_i = \tfrac{q}{c}\left(\nabla_i A_j v_j - v_j\nabla_j A_i\right) - q\left(\tfrac{1}{c}\tfrac{\partial}{\partial t}A_i + \nabla_i\phi\right) \tag{4.6}$$

$$= \tfrac{q}{c}\left(\mathbf{v} \times \underbrace{(\boldsymbol{\nabla} \times \mathbf{A})}_{\mathbf{B}}\right)_i + qE_i \tag{4.7}$$

This is the correct expression for the Lorentz force, so 4.1 is indeed the correct Hamilton function.

[1] We use here the *cgs* unit system, so that some factors of $c$ appear which are absent in the *SI* system.

As usual, the correspondence principle of quantum mechanics tells us that 4.1 is also the quantum mechanical Hamilton operator for a particle in an electromagnetic field. [2]
The Schrödinger equation, thus, becomes

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Psi = \left(\frac{1}{2m}\left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t)\right)^2 + q\phi(\mathbf{r},t)\right)\Psi \tag{4.8}$$

We now evaluate the **velocity operator** as the time derivative of the position operator. These operators are understood in the Heisenberg picture [3], although, for simplicity of notation, we omit the $^H$.

$$\boxed{\mathbf{v} = \frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{r} = \frac{i}{\hbar}[H,\mathbf{r}] = \frac{1}{m}(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A})} \tag{4.9}$$

has the same expression as the classical one 4.2
For a particle with spin $\mathbf{S}$ there is an additional interaction between spin and magnetic field

$$\Delta H = -\mu\mathbf{B}\cdot\mathbf{S} \qquad \mu = g\frac{q}{2mc} \tag{4.10}$$

Together with the orbital coupling in 4.1 , this term is responsible for the (anomalous) **Zeeman splitting** of atomic levels in a magnetic field, and, for a free particle, for the spin-splitting of the Landau levels discussed below.

## 4.3 Gauge invariance

Due to the gauge invariance in classical electrodynamics, physical properties should not change under the gauge transformations

$$\boxed{\mathbf{A}' = \mathbf{A} + \nabla\chi \qquad \phi' = \phi - \frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\chi} \tag{4.11}$$

The point here is that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\phi$ are **not observable**. Eq. 4.8 seems to contradict this, since $\mathbf{A}$ and $\phi$ enter explicitly in the equation for the wave function, in contrast to classical mechanics, in which only the fields enter the expression for the Lorentz force.

[2] We will henceforth be less consistent in indicating operators with the hat-symbol ˆ. We shall only use it in cases where its absence might lead to confusion.

[3] If you are not happy with this "sloppy" treatment of the operators in the Heisenberg picture, see here: Sec. A.14

The answer to this issue is that in fact also the wave function is not observable, and it will turn out that any observable quantity does not change under a gauge transformation 4.11 .
To show this let us consider a modified wave function $\Psi'$

$$\boxed{\Psi'(\mathbf{r},t) = e^{i\frac{q}{\hbar c}\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\Psi(\mathbf{r},t)} \tag{4.12}$$

Now we show that, if $\Psi$ is a solution of 4.8 , then $\Psi'$ ( 4.12 ) is a solution of the Schrödinger equation for the modified potentials 4.11 :

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Psi' = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}'\right)^2\Psi' + q\phi'\Psi' \tag{4.13}$$

We prove it here : Sec. A.27 . There and below, we use for simplicity units for which $\hbar = c = 1$ In other words, the wave function itself is a gauge-dependent object: a gauge transformation multiplies it by a position- and time-dependent phase. Only quantities that are invariant under 4.11 together with 4.12 – such as the probability density $\rho = \Psi^*\Psi = \Psi'^*\Psi'$ or the expectation values of gauge-invariant operators – have a physical meaning. [4]
For example, consider the velocity 4.2 (we use units in which $\hbar = c = 1$ for simplicity), cf. 4.11 :

$$\begin{aligned} m\,\mathbf{v}'\,\Psi' &= (\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A}')\Psi' = (-i\boldsymbol{\nabla} - q\mathbf{A} - q(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\chi))\,e^{i\,q\,\chi}\Psi \\ &= e^{i\,q\,\chi}\,(-i\boldsymbol{\nabla} - q\mathbf{A})\,\Psi = e^{i\,q\,\chi}\,m\mathbf{v}\Psi \end{aligned} \tag{4.14}$$

where we have used the product rule

$$-i\boldsymbol{\nabla}e^{i\,q\,\chi}\Psi = -ie^{i\,q\,\chi}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\Psi + qe^{i\,q\,\chi}(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\chi)\Psi$$

so that the two red terms cancel out. [5]
This means that matrix elements of $\mathbf{v}$ are **gauge invariant**:

$$\langle\Psi_1'|\,\mathbf{v}'\,|\Psi_2'\rangle = \langle\Psi_1|\,\mathbf{v}\,|\Psi_2\rangle$$

(find out why?) On the other hand, in contrast to $\mathbf{v}$, the canonical momentum $\mathbf{p}$ is not a gauge invariant operator. It is, therefore, not an observable (find out why?). In contrast, the position operator $\mathbf{r}$ is a gauge invariant quantities. Find out why.

[4] Remarkably, this does not mean that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\phi$ are physically irrelevant even where $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{E} = 0$. This is the essence of the **Aharonov–Bohm effect**

[5] Even more compact is to use the relations A.47 from the appendix, then $m\mathbf{v}'\Psi' = (\bar{\mathbf{p}} - q\mathbf{A})\Psi' = e^{iq\chi}(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})\Psi = e^{iq\chi}m\mathbf{v}\Psi$.

## 4.4 Landau Levels

The situation of a constant, homogeneous magnetic field is relevant for the quantum Hall effect. Reminder: In classical physics, charged particles in a homogeneous magnetic field move along circular (or spiral) orbits.
Let us consider the case of a constant field in the $z$ direction:

$$\mathbf{B} = B\mathbf{e}_z$$

We have several choices for the vector potential, which are connected by gauge transformations. One possibility is

$$\mathbf{A} = -B\, y\, \mathbf{e}_x \qquad \textbf{check}: \nabla \times \mathbf{A} = -\mathbf{e}_z\, \partial_y\, A_x = B\mathbf{e}_z \tag{4.15}$$

(Other possibilities are $\mathbf{A} = B\, x\, \mathbf{e}_y$, or the symmetric case $\mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{r} = \frac{B}{2}(x\mathbf{e}_y - y\mathbf{e}_x)$).
The Hamiltonian 4.1 thus becomes

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}\left((p_x + \frac{q}{c}By)^2 + p_y^2 + p_z^2\right)$$

The operators $p_x$ and $p_z$ (but not $p_y$) commute with the Hamiltonian. Therefore we can find common eigenfunctions of $H, p_x, p_z$ . The corresponding eigenfunctions will, therefore, have the form:

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i(k_x x + k_z z)} f(y)$$

Therefore, the time independent Schrödinger equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned} H e^{i(k_x x + k_z z)} f(y) &= e^{i(k_x x + k_z z)} \frac{1}{2m}\left((\hbar k_x + \frac{qB}{c}y)^2 + p_y^2 + \hbar^2 k_z^2\right) f(y) \\ &= e^{i(k_x x + k_z z)} E f(y) \end{aligned}$$

and $y$ and $p_y$ are the only operators left. This is the Schrödinger equation for a shifted harmonic oscillator.
To solve it, we introduce the shifted $y$ coordinate:

$$\frac{qB}{c}\bar{y} = \frac{qB}{c}y + \hbar k_x \tag{4.16}$$

This is allowed because $\bar{y}$ has the correct (canonical) commutation rules with $p_y$:

$$[\bar{y}, p_y] = i\hbar$$

The Schrödinger equation becomes

$$\left(\frac{p_y^2}{2m}+\frac{q^2B^2}{2mc^2}\,\bar{y}^2\right)\,f(y)=(E-\frac{\hbar^2k_z^2}{2m})\,f(y) \tag{4.17}$$

This describes an harmonic oscillator with frequency

$$\frac{m}{2}\omega_c^2=\frac{q^2B^2}{2mc^2}\qquad \omega_c=\frac{|qB|}{mc} \tag{4.18}$$

which is the well-known cyclotron frequency (in c.g.s. units). The energy eigenvalues are thus given by

$$E_{n,k_z}=\hbar\omega_c(n+\frac{1}{2})+\frac{\hbar^2k_z^2}{2m} \tag{4.19}$$

There is no dependence of the energies on $k_x$, so there is a **large degeneracy.**
The degeneracy has a simple physical interpretation. According to 4.16 , $\bar{y}=0$ corresponds to the position

$$y_0(k_x)=-\frac{\hbar c}{qB}k_x\,, \tag{4.20}$$

the **guiding center** of the classical cyclotron orbit. Different values of $k_x$ thus simply label the very same orbit – same shape, same energy – sitting at a different position $y_0$ inside the sample (Fig. 4.1): sliding a circular orbit around in a uniform field obviously does not change its energy. This is the geometric origin of the huge degeneracy of each Landau level.
Typically, the quantum Hall effect is interesting in two-dimensional systems, where the $z$ coordinate is confined. [6] In that case, there are discrete, highly degenerate energy levels separated by the energy $\hbar\omega_c$, the Landau levels.
The energy separation between the Landau levels depends on the magnetic field and can be estimated as

$$\hbar\omega_c\approx 10^{-4}\ eV\times(B/Tesla)$$

Notice that $10^{-4}\ eV$ corresponds to approximately 1 Kelvin temperature.
The wave function of the ground state of the harmonic oscillator in 4.17 has the behavior

$$f(\bar{y})\sim\exp\left(-\frac{\bar{y}^2}{2a^2}\right)$$

where

$$a=\sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{m\omega_c}}=\sqrt{\frac{\hbar c}{qB}}\approx 250\mathring{A}\ (B/Tesla)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

[6] One could, for example, consider a "box" potential in the $z$ direction.

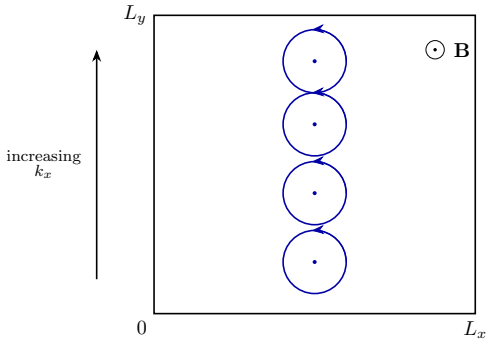



Figure 4.1: Semiclassical cyclotron orbits of equal energy but different $k_x$ (increasing from bottom to top): each $k_x$ selects a guiding center $y_0(k_x)$, 4.20 . Sliding the orbit across the sample leaves the energy unchanged, which is why all these states are degenerate.

# Chapter 5

# Extensions and Applications

## 5.1 Main goals of this chapter (until Sec. 5.4)

- We will consider two simple models for bonding of atoms which often occur in chemistry: the covalent and the van-der-Waals bonding.
- Although the systems are simple, they are complex enough so that they cannot be treated analytically. Therefore, we will have to resort to approximations.
- In the case of covalent bonding we will consider a system of two protons sharing one electron. The first approximation ( Born-Oppenheimer approximation) consists in initially neglecting the dynamics (i.e. the momentum) of the two much heavier protons so that one is left with a single-particle problem.
- The remaining problem is still complex, since it is not centrally symmetric. Again one carries out a variational ansatz by choosing a physically motivated form of the wavefunction (see 5.2 with 5.3 ).
- The distance between the protons is obtained by minimizing the energy.
- The final result is a very good approximation (in comparison to experiment) for the binding energy of the molecule and for the equilibrium distance between the protons.

## 5.2 Covalent bonding

In molecules and solids we encounter different types of bonding mechanisms. One of them is the covalent bonding, where neighbouring atoms share one or

more electrons. This exchange of particles leads to an attractive force between the atoms. This is in contrast to another bonding type, the ionic bonding, where two initially neutral atoms interact in a way that makes it energetically favorable for one atom to give up an electron to the second atom. Thus, oppositely charged ions are created that electrostatically attract each other. In a covalent bond no electron is transferred, but it is shared by the two atoms involved in the bonding. In order to understand this process quantum mechanically, we will consider the simplest model of an ionized $\mathbf{H}_2^+$ molecule.

### 5.2.1 The $\mathbf{H}_2^+$ molecule

The $\mathbf{H}_2^+$ molecule consists of two singly-positively-charged nuclei with mass $M$ and one electron with mass $m$. Even this two-atom molecule represents a fairly complex system and solving it exactly requires considerable effort. For this reason, we will address the problem using approximation procedures, namely the variational method.

Due to the huge mass differences, $\frac{m_e}{m_p} < 10^{-3}$, electrons are moving a lot faster than the nuclei and we can separate the two motions. This means that for the time being we fix the positions $\mathbf{R}_1$ and $\mathbf{R}_2$ of the nuclei and solve the Schrödinger equation for the electron in the potential resulting from the nuclei. We obtain the possible energies of the electronic system $E_n(\mathbf{R})$ as a function of the distance $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}_1 - \mathbf{R}_2$ between the two nuclei. For the dynamics of the nuclei these energies represent the electronical contribution to the potential they move in.

$$V^{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{R}) = V^{\text{Nucl}-\text{Nucl}}(|\mathbf{R}_2 - \mathbf{R}_1|) + E_n(\mathbf{R}) \qquad .$$

This approximation is called Born-Oppenheimer approximation and is widely applied in solid state physics, as it is extremely reliable. Since the mass of the nuclei is much larger than the mass of the electrons, we can in good approximation treat their motion classically.

$$M\ddot{\mathbf{R}} = -\nabla_R V^{\text{eff}}(\mathbf{R}) \qquad .$$

This approximation is used in quantum chemistry and in solid state physics in order to determine equilibrium configurations of molecules and their vibrations, as well as surface geometries and phonon modes. The approach was originally developed by R. Car and M. Parrinello.

In the following we will calculate the ground state and the electronical contribution to the effective nuclear potential for $\mathbf{H}_2^+$. The Hamilton operator takes the

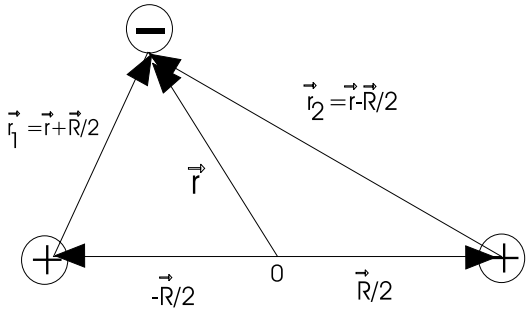



Figure 5.1: *Positioning of the atoms and the electron in the $H_2^+$ molecule.*

form

$$H = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left(\frac{d^2}{dx^2}+\frac{d^2}{dy^2}+\frac{d^2}{dz^2}\right)-\frac{e^2}{r_1}-\frac{e^2}{r_2}+\frac{e^2}{R} \quad ,$$

with $r_\alpha$ and $R$ representing the lengths of the vectors $\mathbf{r}_\alpha$ and $\mathbf{R}$. We will write all lengths in units of $a_0$, that is $r_\alpha = \tilde{r}_\alpha \cdot a_0$ and $R = \tilde{R} \cdot a_0$. In dimensionless quantities $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$, $\tilde{\mathbf{R}}$ the Hamilton operator reads

$$\begin{aligned} & H && = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m\,a_0^2}\tilde{\boldsymbol{\nabla}}^2 + \frac{e^2}{a_0}\left(-\frac{1}{\tilde{r}_1}-\frac{1}{\tilde{r}_2}+\frac{1}{\tilde{R}}\right) \\ & a_0 && = \frac{\hbar^2}{me^2} \Rightarrow \\ 1) \quad & \frac{e^2}{a_0} && = 2\mathrm{Ry} \qquad \ldots \text{Rydberg} \\ 2) \quad & \frac{\hbar^2}{2m\,a_0^2} && = \frac{\hbar^2\, m^2 e^4}{2m\hbar^4} = \frac{me^4}{2\hbar^2} = 1\mathrm{Ry} \end{aligned}$$

This leads to

$$H = 2\mathrm{Ry}\left(-\frac{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\nabla}}^2}{2}-\frac{1}{\tilde{r}_1}-\frac{1}{\tilde{r}_2}+\frac{1}{\tilde{R}}\right)$$

In the further course of the calculation we will write the energies in units of 2Ry (Rydberg), $H = \tilde{H}\ 2\mathrm{Ry}$ , which results in further simplification of the Hamilton operator. These units are called atomic units.

HAMILTON OPERATOR IN ATOMIC UNITS

$$\tilde{H} = -\frac{\tilde{\nabla}^2}{2} - \frac{1}{\tilde{r}_1} - \frac{1}{\tilde{r}_2} + \frac{1}{\tilde{R}} \quad . \tag{5.1}$$

In atomic units the numeric values of $e$, $\hbar$ and $m_e$ are 1, that is the fundamental constants can be left out everywhere. We will in the further course omit the tildes $\tilde{}$ and assume that all quantities are given in atomic units. This is a very practical approach that is widely used in theoretical physics, since that way all quantities are of order 1.

In order to get an idea of what the variational function could look like, we consider the case where $R \gg a_0$. There are two possibilities: Either the electron is near the first nucleus or it is near the second one. The corresponding wavefunctions are simply the ground state functions of the hydrogen atom, 2.31 with $Z = 1$. Since both configurations are possible, we choose the following ansatz:

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = c_1 \psi_1(\mathbf{r}) + c_2 \psi_2(\mathbf{r}) \quad . \tag{5.2}$$

This ansatz, with slight modifications, is also reasonable for smaller distances between the nuclei. Since for $R \to 0$ the exact ground state wavefunction is the one of the H-like atom with $Z = 2$, we use the ansatz 5.2 with [1]

$$\psi_\alpha(r) = \left(\frac{Z^3}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{-Z r_\alpha} \tag{5.3}$$

In total, we take

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = c_1 \cdot \underbrace{(\frac{Z^3}{\pi})^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{-Z r_1}}_{\psi_1(\mathbf{r})} + c_2 \cdot \underbrace{(\frac{Z^3}{\pi})^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{-Z r_2}}_{\psi_2(\mathbf{r})}$$

and the variational parameters $c_1, c_2$ and $Z$, whose values result from the minimization of energy. To start with we consider

$$\min_{c_1,c_2} E(c_1,c_2,Z) = \min_{c_1,c_2} \frac{\langle\psi|\hat{H}|\psi\rangle}{\langle\psi|\psi\rangle}$$

for fixed $Z$. The resulting eigenvalue problem is frequently encountered in quantum mechanics and shall therefore be treated in a more general manner.

[1] Remember that in atomic units $a_0 = 1$.

## 5.3 Optimization of the (variational) wavefunction in a subspace

We expand the desired wave function $\psi$ in an arbitrary "basis". In contrast to the bases used so far, the basis in this case has to be neither complete, nor normalized, nor orthogonal. [2]. However, linearly dependent vectors have to be eliminated beforehand.

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^{N} c_i |\psi_i\rangle$$

The best possible linear combination for the ground state is obtained by minimizing the energy with respect to the expansion coefficients.

$$E(c) = \frac{\langle\psi|\hat{H}|\psi\rangle}{\langle\psi|\psi\rangle} = \frac{\sum_{i,j} c_i^* \overbrace{\langle\psi_i|\hat{H}|\psi_j\rangle}^{H_{ij}} c_j}{\sum_{i,j} c_i^* \underbrace{\langle\psi_i|\psi_j\rangle}_{S_{ij}} c_j}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial c_i^*} E = \frac{\sum_j H_{ij} c_j}{\langle\psi|\psi\rangle} - \frac{\langle\psi|\hat{H}|\psi\rangle}{\langle\psi|\psi\rangle^2} \cdot \sum_j S_{ij} c_j \stackrel{!}{=} 0$$

Multiplication with $\langle\psi|\psi\rangle$ leads to

$$\sum_j H_{ij} c_j - \underbrace{\frac{\langle\psi|\hat{H}|\psi\rangle}{\langle\psi|\psi\rangle}}_{=E} \cdot \sum_j S_{ij} c_j \stackrel{!}{=} 0$$

This is a

GENERALIZED EIGENVALUE PROBLEM

$$H\,\mathbf{c} = E\,S\,\mathbf{c} \tag{5.4}$$

[2] Up to now, when talking about a basis we've always meant a complete basis. That is indeed a common definition. However, in literature, especially in quantum mechanics, the term "basis" is also used for sets of functions on which series expansions are based that do not necessarily represent a complete basis.

The stationary points of the function $E(c)$ can be obtained from the generalized eigenvalue problem 5.4 . A possible solution is based on the Löwdin-Orthogonalization. Introduce

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &:= S^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathbf{c} \\ HS^{-\frac{1}{2}}\mathbf{x} &= ES^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathbf{x} \\ \underbrace{S^{-\frac{1}{2}}HS^{-\frac{1}{2}}}_{\tilde{H}}\mathbf{x} &= E\mathbf{x} \end{aligned} \tag{5.5}$$

See here: Sec. A.15 for more. The matrix $\tilde{H}$ is hermitian as well, which leaves us with an ordinary eigenvalue problem. The result 5.4 states that the lowest energy in a subspace of the complete Hilbert space can be obtained by solving the eigenvalue problem in this subspace. Since the minimisation is restricted to a subspace, the resulting energy is always an upper bound to the exact ground-state energy. Enlarging the basis can only improve (i.e. lower) the estimate: this is what makes the variational method systematic.

## 5.4 Back to the variational treatment of $\mathbf{H}_2^+$

For the $\mathbf{H}_2^+$ problem the considerations made above indicate that we need to calculate the matrix elements

$$\begin{aligned} \langle\psi_1|H|\psi_1\rangle &= \langle\psi_2|H|\psi_2\rangle &&=: H_1 \\ \langle\psi_1|H|\psi_2\rangle &= \langle\psi_2|H|\psi_1\rangle &&=: H_2 \\ S_{11} &= S_{22} = \langle\psi_2|\psi_2\rangle &&= 1 \\ S_{12} &= S_{21} = \langle\psi_1|\psi_2\rangle &&=: S \end{aligned}$$

with the symmetry of the problem being exploited. We still have to solve (cf. 5.4 ):

$$\begin{pmatrix} H_1 & H_2 \\ H_2 & H_1 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \end{pmatrix} = E \begin{pmatrix} 1 & S \\ S & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.6}$$

Clearly the Hamilton operator commutes with the parity operator

$$P|\psi_1\rangle = |\psi_2\rangle \qquad P|\psi_2\rangle = |\psi_1\rangle$$

As a consequence, eigenvectors of $H$ 5.6 are also eigenvectors of $P$, that is they are either even (gerade):

$$\psi_b(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\psi_1(\mathbf{r}) + \psi_2(\mathbf{r})}{\sqrt{2(1+S)}} \quad E_b = \frac{H_1 + H_2}{1+S} \tag{5.7}$$

or odd (ungerade).

$$\psi_a(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\psi_1(\mathbf{r}) - \psi_2(\mathbf{r})}{\sqrt{2(1-S)}} \quad E_a = \frac{H_1 - H_2}{1-S} \tag{5.8}$$

We can easily check that these states are orthonormal. For reasons that will become clear in a moment, the even state 5.7 is called bonding state and the odd state 5.8 is called antibonding state. The states are depicted in figure 5.2 . The corresponding wavefunctions are also called molecular orbitals.

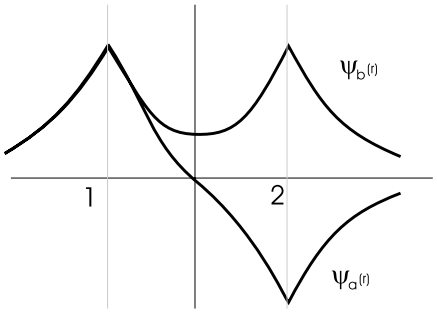



Figure 5.2: *Wavefunctions with even and odd parity.*

**Matrix elements of the Hamilton operator 5.1**

We know that the exact ground state energy (cf. 2.23 ) of an H-like atom with the atomic number Z is $-\frac{Z^2}{2}$ (in atomic units). I.e., the stationary Schrödinger equation takes the following form (cf. 5.1 ):

$$\left(-\frac{\nabla^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_1}\right)\psi_1(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{Z^2}{2}\psi_1(\mathbf{r}) \quad .$$

This fact can be used to simplify the calculation of the matrix elements for the Hamiltonian 5.1 of the ionised $\mathbf{H}_2^+$-molecule by rewriting the Hamiltonian in the following way:

$$H = -\frac{\nabla^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_1} + \frac{Z-1}{r_1} - \frac{1}{r_2} + \frac{1}{R}$$

$$H\psi_1(\mathbf{r}) = \left(-\frac{Z^2}{2} + \frac{Z-1}{r_1} - \frac{1}{r_2} + \frac{1}{R}\right)\psi_1(\mathbf{r}) \tag{5.9}$$

$$H_1 = \langle\psi_1|H|\psi_1\rangle \tag{5.10}$$

$$= (-\frac{Z^2}{2} + \frac{1}{R})\underbrace{\langle\psi_1|\psi_1\rangle}_{=1} + \underbrace{(Z-1)\langle\psi_1|\frac{1}{r_1}|\psi_1\rangle - \langle\psi_1|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle}_{:=K} \quad . \tag{5.11}$$

The expectation value

$$\langle\psi_1|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle = \int |\psi_1(\mathbf{r})|^2 \frac{1}{r_2}\, d^3r$$

with 5.3 corresponds to (minus) the classical Coulomb interaction energy of the electron in the Coulomb field of the **second** nucleus. The result can be obtained using Gauss's law (here: Sec. A.13 ):

$$\langle\psi_1|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle = \frac{1}{R}\left(1-(1+ZR)e^{-2ZR}\right)$$

This term decreases with $\frac{1}{R}$.

The second expectation value $\langle\psi_1|\frac{1}{r_1}|\psi_1\rangle$ represents the Coulomb interaction energy of the electron in the Coulomb field of the **first** nucleus. This is formally the previous result with $R \to 0$:

$$\langle\psi_1|\frac{1}{r_1}|\psi_1\rangle = Z\,. \tag{5.12}$$

The two terms can be combined into one quantity K (cf. 5.10 )

$$K = Z(Z-1) - \frac{1}{R}(1-(1+ZR)e^{-2ZR})$$

which then leads to the final result for $H_1$:

$$H_1 = -\frac{Z^2}{2} + \frac{1}{R} + K \tag{5.13}$$

We will next turn to the calculation of $H_2$ (cf. 5.9 )

$$H_2 = \langle\psi_2|H|\psi_1\rangle = (-\frac{Z^2}{2} + \frac{1}{R})\cdot S + \underbrace{(Z-1)\langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_1}|\psi_1\rangle - \langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle}_{:=A} \tag{5.14}$$

$$\langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_1}|\psi_1\rangle = \langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle = \int \frac{\psi_1(\mathbf{r})\psi_2(\mathbf{r})}{r_1}\, d^3r = \int \frac{\sqrt{\rho_1(\mathbf{r})\rho_2(\mathbf{r})}}{r_1}\, d^3r \quad .$$

$\langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle$ represents the so-called exchange interaction, an interference effect that does not have a classical equivalent. The exchange interaction is proportional to the overlap of the wavefunctions and therefore falls off with $e^{-ZR}$. Physically, this term originates from the possibility for the electron to be shared between the two nuclei. As the plots below show, it is precisely this term that lowers the energy of the bonding state below the dissociated one, i.e. it is responsible for the covalent bond. The contributions of the exchange interaction are

$$A = (Z-1)\langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_1}|\psi_1\rangle - \langle\psi_2|\frac{1}{r_2}|\psi_1\rangle = (Z-2)\cdot Z(1+RZ)e^{-RZ} \quad .$$

As a last step we need to calculate the overlap integral S.

$$S = \int \psi_1(\mathbf{r})\psi_2(\mathbf{r})\, d^3r = (1+ZR+\frac{1}{3}(ZR)^2)e^{-ZR}$$

We can now insert the expressions for $H_1$ 5.13 and $H_2$ 5.14 into 5.7 and 5.8 and thus obtain the energies for the bonding and the antibonding state for a fixed variational parameter $Z$ and a fixed distance $R$ between the nuclei:

$$E_{b/a}(R,Z) = \frac{H_1 \pm H_2}{1 \pm S} = (-\frac{Z^2}{2} + \frac{1}{R}) + \frac{K \pm A}{1 \pm S}$$

In the upper part of Figure 5.3 $Z^{\text{opt}}(R)$ is depicted for the bonding (continuous line) and the anti-bonding (dashed line) state as a function of $R$. The lower part shows $E^{\text{opt}}(R, Z^{\text{opt}}(R))$ as a function of $R$ for the bonding (continuous line) and the antibonding (dashed line) state, as well as the exchange interaction term $A(r)$ (thin dashed line).

- For a fixed $R$ one can determine the optimum $Z^{\text{opt}}(R)$ separately for the two solutions $a/b$ by calculating $\min_Z E_{b/a}$. $Z^{\text{opt}}_{b/a}(R)$ is plotted in figure 5.3 . The plot shows that only for the bonding state the energy approaches the correct value for $R \to 0$.

- In the lower part of figure 5.3 the corresponding energies $E_\alpha(R, Z^{\text{opt}}_\alpha(R))$ are plotted for $\alpha = a$ and $\alpha = b$. Only the bonding state $\psi_b = \frac{\psi_1+\psi_2}{\sqrt{2(1+S)}}$ gives a total energy ($E_{min} = -0.586\ a.u.$) that is smaller than the energy of the dissociated molecule $E_{\text{dis}} = E(\mathbf{H}+\mathbf{H}^+) = -1\ Ry = -\frac{1}{2}\ a.u.$. The difference between the two energies corresponds to the binding energy

  $$\Delta E = E(\mathbf{H}_2^+) - E(\mathbf{H}+\mathbf{H}^+) = 0.086\text{a.u.} = 0.086 \cdot 27.2\ eV = 2.35\ eV$$

  Experimentally one finds a binding energy of 2.8 $eV$. Since the total energy is $E_{\text{tot}} = -15.9\ eV$, the deviation only amounts to a relative error of $\approx 3\%$, which is a fairly good result for such a rough approximation of the wavefunction.

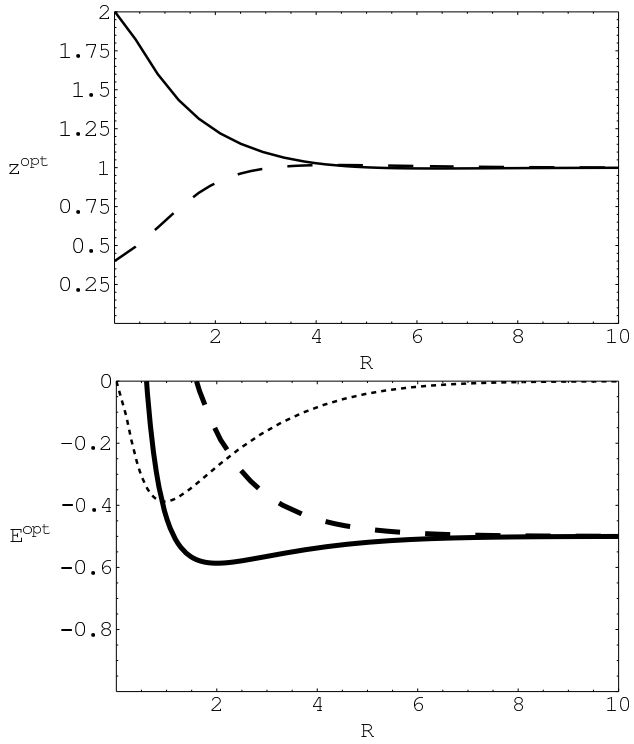



Figure 5.3:

- The equilibrium distance $R^{\text{opt}} = 2.00\ a.u. = 2.00 \cdot 0.529\ \mathring{A} = 1.06\ \mathring{A}$ is in agreement with the experimentally measured value.
- If one keeps the atomic number fixed at $Z = 1$, one obtains
  - $E_{\text{bind}} = 1.8\ eV$
  - $R^{\text{opt}} = 1.3\ \mathring{A}$ .

  Clearly, taking the atomic number Z as a variational parameter leads to a significantly better result.
- In the case of $\psi_b$ the bonding is caused by an accumulation of electron density in between the nuclei (cf. 5.2 ). In this position the attractive energy between electron charge and nuclei gives the largest contribution.
- The method that we used in order to construct molecular wavefunctions from atomic wavefunctions is called Linear Combination of Atomic Orbitals (LCAO) and is widely used in quantum chemistry and solid state physics.

### 5.4.1 Muon-catalysed fusion

The equilibrium distance between the protons in $\mathbf{H}_2^+$ was determined to be

$$R^* \quad = \quad 2.0 a.u. = 2.0 \frac{\hbar}{me^2}$$

If, instead of electrons, we had used muons, which are about 207 times heavier than electrons and, like electrons, have Spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and charge -e, we would have found the equilibrium distance to be

$$R^{\text{opt/Muon}} = \frac{R^{\text{opt/Electron}}}{207}$$

.

This could be exploited to bring nuclei closer to each other. One could think of the following reaction

$$\text{Deuterium}^+ + \text{Deuterium}^+ + \mu \overset{\text{Fusion!}}{\longrightarrow} \text{Tritium} + p + 4.0 MeV$$

Such reactions have indeed been observed experimentally. Deuterium is available in abundance in the oceans.

In contrast to conventional nuclear fusion, where the Deuterium atoms overcome the Coulomb barrier due to their high kinetic energy (heat), muon-catalysed fusion constitutes a cold fusion.
However, muons are not very stable[3] and do not occur naturally (except in cosmic radiation). Therefore, in order to achieve cold fusion the muons first have to be generated in accelerators. So far this type of fusion is not feasible.

## 5.5 Van der Waals Interaction

- We consider a simple (yet unrealistic) model to understand the van der Waals interaction that consists of two Hydrogen atoms at large distances.
- We use time-independent perturbation theory in order to calculate the Van der Waals interaction.
- For our model the first order energy correction is zero due to the fact that the ground state of the two atoms is spherically symmetric and does not have an electric dipole.

[3] Lifetime = 2.2 $\mu$sec

- To find a nonzero result we need to go to second order, which consists in a first order change of the wavefunction leading to the formation of a dipole.

Another interesting application of time-independent perturbation theory is the long range Van der Waals interaction between neutral atoms. This interaction is a consequence of quantum mechanics and results from the fact that the atomic states of the two separate atoms begin to correlate upon approaching, which leads to mutual polarization. Though Van der Waals interaction is also present between charged particles, it is in that case dominated by the Coulomb interaction.

We now consider the case of two Hydrogen atoms in their ground state. As with the $\mathbf{H}_2^+$ molecule and based on the same reasoning, we use the Born Oppenheimer approximation. The atomic nuclei are positioned at a fixed large distance $r$ along the $z$-axis (cf. Fig. 5.4 ). $\mathbf{r}_1$ represents the vector pointing from the first pro-

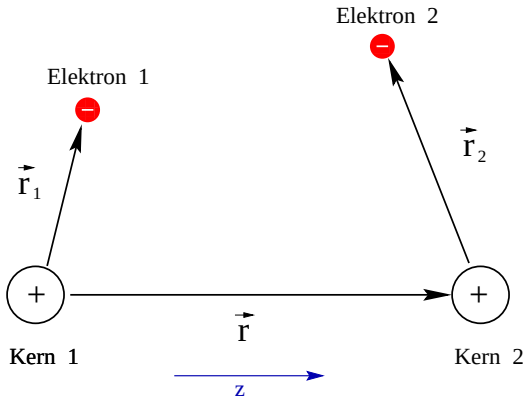



Figure 5.4: *Geometrical arrangement for the calculation of the Van der Waals interaction between two Hydrogen atoms.*

ton to "its" electron, $\mathbf{r}_2$ likewise represents the vector that points from the second proton to "its" electron. The Hamilton operator in spatial representation for the two nuclei with electrons (in atomic units) takes the form

$$\begin{aligned} H = &(-\frac{\nabla_1^2}{2} - \frac{1}{r_1}) + (-\frac{\nabla_2^2}{2} - \frac{1}{r_2}) && =:H_0 \\ &+ \underbrace{\frac{1}{r}}_{\mathscr{K}_1-\mathscr{K}_2} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}+\mathbf{r}_2-\mathbf{r}_1|}}_{\mathscr{E}_1-\mathscr{E}_2} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}+\mathbf{r}_2|}}_{\mathscr{K}_1-\mathscr{E}_2} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}_1|}}_{\mathscr{K}_2-\mathscr{E}_1} && =:H_1(\mathbf{r},\mathbf{r}_1,\mathbf{r}_2) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{5.15}$$

where $\mathscr{K}_\alpha$ signifies the nucleus $\alpha$ and $\mathscr{E}_\alpha$ signifies the electron $\alpha$. Since we are only interested in large nuclear distances, $H_1$ is small and can be treated with perturbation theory . The Schrödinger equation for $H_0$ can be easily solved, since

$H_0 = H_0^1 + H_0^2$ consists of two identical Hamilton operators for the two separated Hydrogen atoms. We obtain the ground state wavefunction of the system described by $H_0$:

$$\psi_0 = \psi^1(\mathbf{r}_1)\psi^2(\mathbf{r}_2)$$

$$H_0^\alpha \psi^\alpha(\mathbf{r}_\alpha) = E\psi^\alpha(\mathbf{r}_\alpha)$$

$$\psi_0 = (\tfrac{1}{\pi})^{\frac{1}{2}}\, e^{-r_1}\, (\tfrac{1}{\pi})^{\frac{1}{2}}\, e^{-r_2}$$

The superscript indices of the wavefunctions indicate the nucleus around which the function is localized. The first order energy correction $E^1(r) \equiv \langle\psi_0|H_1|\psi_0\rangle$ gives

$$E^1(r) = \int \rho(\mathbf{r}_2)\rho(\mathbf{r}_1)H_1(\mathbf{r},\mathbf{r}_1,\mathbf{r}_2)d^3\mathbf{r}_1\, d^3\mathbf{r}_2$$

In order to calculate $E^1(r)$ we will make use of the integral below 5.16 . This is nothing other than the Coulomb potential of the electron in the ground state of the Hydrogen atom. The solution to this integral, using Gauss's law, has already been derived in : Sec. A.13.

$$\tilde{V}(r) = \int \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r_1}|}\, \rho(r_1)\, d^3r_1 = \frac{1}{r} - e^{-2r}\big(1+\frac{1}{r}\big)\,. \tag{5.16}$$

For large distances 5.16 approaches the Coulomb potential of a point charge. As discussed at the beginning of this section, when dealing with Van der Waals interactions we are only interested in large distances, i.e. distances that are large compared to the dimension of the atoms ($r \gg 1$).[4] We can therefore, up to corrections that are exponentially small in $r$, approximate the Coulomb potential for the given charge distribution by

$$\tilde{V}(r) \approx \frac{1}{r}$$

The contributions to the first order energy correction that arise from the nucleus-nucleus and the nucleus-electron interaction 5.15 all boil down to integrals of

[4]Since we do not take into account the fermionic nature of the electrons in this model, our considerations only make sense as long as the distance between the atoms is large enough so that the overlap of the electron wavefunctions is negligible.

the type $\tilde{V}$ and give, except for an additional sign, the contribution $1/r$.

$$\begin{aligned} E^{(1)}_{K_1,K_2} &= \frac{1}{r} \\ E^{(1)}_{K_1,E_2} &= -\frac{1}{r} \\ E^{(1)}_{K_2,E_1} &= -\frac{1}{r} \end{aligned}$$

The electron-electron interaction in 5.15 consists of a two-center integral that can be calculated in two steps by again making use of $\tilde{V}$:

$$\begin{aligned} E^{(1)}_{\mathscr{E}_1\mathscr{E}_2} &:= \int d^3r_2 \underbrace{\left( \int d^3r_1 \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}+\mathbf{r}_2-\mathbf{r}_1|}\,\rho(r_1) \right)}_{\tilde{V}(|\mathbf{r}+\mathbf{r}_2|)} \rho(r_2) \\ &\approx \int d^3r_2 \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}+\mathbf{r}_2|}\,\rho(r_2) = \tilde{V}(r_2) \approx \frac{1}{r} \end{aligned}$$

The calculated contributions to $E^{(1)}(r)$ add up to zero, except for terms that decrease exponentially $(e^{-2r})$ with the distance $r$. This is due to the spherical symmetry of the ground state wavefunction. In order to obtain nonvanishing contributions, or more specifically contributions that do not fall off exponentially, we need to calculate the leading terms of second order perturbation theory . For this purpose we expand $H_1(\mathbf{r},\mathbf{r}_1,\mathbf{r}_2)$ 5.15 in powers of $r_i/r$ . Notice that $H_1$ describes the interaction of the electron and nucleus "$N2$" in the electric potential $\varphi_1$ of the "$N1$" (or vice-versa). To leading order $r_1/r$ (see Electromagnetic Fields, Chap. 1) this is the corresponding **dipole field**, with the dipole $\mathbf{d}_1 = -\mathbf{r}_1$. On the other hand, the potential energy of the system $N2$ in the potential $\varphi_1$ to leading order in $r_2/r$ is given by (see Electromagnetic Fields, Chap. 2)

$$H_1 = -\mathbf{E}_1 \cdot \mathbf{d}_2$$

where $\mathbf{E}_1$ is the electric field produced by the charges $N1$, and $\mathbf{d}_2 = -\mathbf{r}_2$ is the dipole of $N2$. Using the well known expression for the electric field of a dipole, one gets (in cgs)

$$H_1 = -\frac{1}{r^3}\left(3(\mathbf{r}_1\cdot\mathbf{r})(\mathbf{r}_2\cdot\mathbf{r})/r^2 - \mathbf{r}_1\cdot\mathbf{r}_2\right) + O(\frac{1}{r^4}) \quad = \frac{x_1x_2+y_1y_2-2z_1z_2}{r^3} + O(\frac{1}{r^4})\,,$$

where in the last term we have taken for definiteness $\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_z$, i.e. along the $z$-axis.

Second order perturbation theory gives:

$$\Delta E = -\sum_{n_1,n_2}{}' \frac{|\left\langle \psi^1_{n_1}\psi^2_{n_2}\right| H_1 \left|\psi^1_0\psi^2_0\right\rangle|^2}{E_{n_1}+E_{n_2}-2E_1} =$$
$$= -\frac{1}{r^6}\sum_{n_1,n_2}{}' \frac{|\left\langle \psi^1_{n_1}\psi^2_{n_2}\right| x_1x_2+y_1y_2-2z_1z_2 \left|\psi^1_0\psi^2_0\right\rangle|^2}{E_{n_1}+E_{n_2}-2E_1}$$

The term $n_1 = n_2 = 1$ is excluded from the sum. The second order energy correction is, as was previously shown in general, negative.

VAN DER WAALS INTERACTION

$$E_{\text{vdW}} = -c\frac{1}{r^6} \quad .$$

The essential properties of Van der Waals interactions are:

- The interaction is attractive $\left(\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -\nabla E = -6c\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^8}\right)$
- The potential falls off with $1/r^6$.
  - It arises from two dipole potentials that each fall off with $1/r^3$.
  - Since the ground state $\psi_0$ is spherically symmetric, the dipoles are induced by virtual excitations to the excited states.
- The Van der Waals interaction can be observed for neutral atoms.
  It also exists for charged atoms, but is in this case dominated by the monopole term of the Coulomb interaction.

# Chapter 6

# Several degrees of freedom and the product space

## 6.1 Main goals in this chapter

- Construct the Hilbert space of a composite system (several particles, or several degrees of freedom of the same particle, such as position and spin) as the **tensor product** of the Hilbert spaces of its parts, and understand the difference between **product states** and **entangled states**.

- Learn how operators that act on only one subsystem (or on a product of operators on different subsystems) are represented, and how their matrix elements factorize, in the product space.

- Learn how to combine **two angular momenta** (e.g. orbital and spin) into eigenstates of the **total angular momentum**, via **Clebsch-Gordan coefficients**.

- Learn **Wigner-Eckart's theorem**: all matrix elements of a vector (or tensor) operator between angular-momentum eigenstates follow, up to a single reduced matrix element, from Clebsch-Gordan coefficients alone – and derive **selection rules** from it.

- Apply this machinery to two standard examples: the linear **Stark effect** in hydrogen and the **Landé $g$-factor** of the (anomalous) Zeeman effect.

Many physical problems deal with subsystems or multiple degrees of freedom, e.g. atoms are composed of a nucleus and electrons. The electrons in turn are described by spatial coordinates, plus one degree of freedom for spin.

We start with the Hilbert spaces $\mathscr{H}_1, \mathscr{H}_2, \cdots$ of the individual subsystems/degrees of freedom and construct the Hilbert space of the whole system from them.
**example 1:**

Electron: $\mathscr{H}_{\mathscr{R}}$ for position (bound state):
set of all functions $f(\mathbf{x})$ with $\int |f(\mathbf{x})|^2 d^3x < \infty$
$\mathscr{H}_{\mathscr{S}}$ for spin:
Vector space, spanned by the eigenstates of $S^z$
of the spin operators.

## 6.2 The Tensor Product

We take two vectors $|\Phi\rangle_1$ and $|\Psi\rangle_2$ from two different Hilbert spaces $\mathscr{H}_1$, $\mathscr{H}_2$ and formally construct a product out of them. (no scalar product and no outer product). The product is written as (different notations may be used):

$$|\Phi,\Psi\rangle := |\Phi\rangle_1 \otimes |\Psi\rangle_2 := |\Phi\rangle \otimes |\Psi\rangle := |\Phi\rangle|\Psi\rangle \quad . \tag{6.1}$$

Meaning that subsystem 1 is in state $|\Phi\rangle$ and subsystem 2 is in state $|\Psi\rangle$. For the sake of simplicity the indices are eventually left out and remain represented solely by the order of the state vectors. The corresponding "bra" vector is written as

$$\langle\Phi,\Psi| := \langle\Phi| \otimes \langle\Psi| \quad . \tag{6.2}$$

This product, called tensor product , is supposed to represent a vector from a linear vector space that describes the physics of the combined system. Evidently the vector neither lies in $\mathscr{H}_1$ nor in $\mathscr{H}_2$, but in a so-called product space

$$\mathscr{H} = \mathscr{H}_1 \otimes \mathscr{H}_2 \quad .$$

$\mathscr{H}$ is spanned by all vectors of the form 6.1 and their linear combinations.
From the **distributivity** of $|\Phi\rangle$ it follows that:

$$\begin{aligned} |\Phi\rangle &= a|\Phi_1\rangle + b|\Phi_2\rangle \quad \Rightarrow \\ |\Phi\rangle \otimes |\Psi\rangle &= a|\Phi_1\rangle \otimes |\Psi\rangle + b|\Phi_2\rangle \otimes |\Psi\rangle \end{aligned}$$

The same applies to $|\Psi\rangle$.

**Def. 6.1** (Scalar product in product space)**.** *The scalar product of two product vectors is defined as the product of the scalar products in the two subspaces:*

$$\langle\Phi_A,\Psi_A|\Phi_B,\Psi_B\rangle = \langle\Phi_A|\Phi_B\rangle \, \langle\Psi_A|\Psi_B\rangle \tag{6.3}$$

The **linearity** of Quantum Mechanics also allows for linear combinations of product states 6.1 .

$$a\ |\Phi_A\Psi_A\rangle + b\ |\Phi_B\Psi_B\rangle \tag{6.4}$$

They usually describe **entangled states** that cannot be written as a tensor product of the form $|\Phi\rangle \otimes |\Psi\rangle$. In an entangled state neither subsystem is in a definite state of its own: a measurement on one subsystem affects the probabilities for the outcomes of measurements on the other. This is the characteristic quantum correlation exploited, e.g., in quantum information.

## 6.3 Complete basis in the product space

If $\{|\Phi_k\rangle, k = 1,2,\cdots\}$ is a complete basis of $\{\mathscr{H}_1\}$ and $\{|\Psi_l\rangle, l = 1,2,\cdots\}$ is a complete basis of $\mathscr{H}_2$, then $\{|\Phi_k\rangle \otimes |\Psi_l\rangle, l = 1,2,\cdots, k = 1,2,\cdots\}$ is a complete basis of the product space $\mathscr{H}_1 \otimes \mathscr{H}_2$.
In the product space the index tuples $(k,l)$ consecutively number the basis vectors. If the dimension of $\mathscr{H}_\alpha$ is given by $N_\alpha$, the dimension of the product space $\mathscr{H}_1 \otimes \mathscr{H}_2$ is equal to $N_1 \cdot N_2$. This concept is also applicable to $\infty$-dimensional subspaces and it is a straightforward matter to generalize it to any continuous spaces.

## 6.4 Orthonormalization in product space

Using 6.3 it immediately follows from the orthonormal vectors of the subspaces that

$$\langle\Phi_k,\Psi_l|\Phi_{k'},\Psi_{l'}\rangle = \langle\Phi_k|\Phi_{k'}\rangle\langle\Psi_l|\Psi_{l'}\rangle = \delta_{k,k'}\delta_{l,l'}$$

If $|\Phi_k\rangle$, $|\Psi_l\rangle$ are two complete orthonormal bases in $\mathscr{H}_1, \mathscr{H}_2$, then

$$\sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_k \sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_l |\Phi_k,\Psi_l\rangle\langle\Phi_k,\Psi_l|\ dk\ dl = \mathbb{1}$$

$\sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_k$ represents either a sum or an integral over the variable $k$, depending on whether $k$ is a discrete or a continuous quantity.
Any vector $|\Omega\rangle$ in the product space can be expanded as

$$|\Omega\rangle = \sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_k \sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_l \langle\Phi_k,\Psi_l|\Omega\rangle\ \ |\Phi_k,\Psi_l\rangle\ dk\ dl$$

**Examples:**

- **Electron with Spin:**
  $|\Psi\rangle$ represents the spatial wave function, i.e. $\langle \mathbf{x}|\Psi\rangle = \Psi(\mathbf{x})$
  $|\chi\rangle$ describes the spin (Basis: $S^z$-eigenstates $|\sigma\rangle$) [1]
  $|\Psi,\chi\rangle = |\Psi\rangle \otimes |\chi\rangle$ then describes the total state of an electron with a spatial wave function $\Psi(\mathbf{x})$ and spin $\chi$.
  In this **product state** the total wave function is

$$\psi(\mathbf{x},\sigma) := \langle \mathbf{x},\sigma|\Psi,\chi\rangle = \langle \mathbf{x}|\Psi\rangle \, \langle \sigma|\chi\rangle = \Psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \chi(\sigma)$$

  One possible wave function of the system is an entangled state consisting of a linear combination of product states:

$$\psi(\mathbf{x},\sigma) = \Psi_A(\mathbf{x})\chi_A(\sigma) + \Psi_B(\mathbf{x})\chi_B(\sigma) \qquad .$$

- **Two different particles without spin:**
  $|\Psi_1\rangle$ describes the wave function of the first particle.
  $|\Psi_2\rangle$ describes the wave function of the second particle.
  then $|\Psi_1,\Psi_2\rangle$ describes the combined state. (e.g. basis: $|\mathbf{x}_1,\mathbf{x}_2\rangle$)
  The wave function then is

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}_1,\mathbf{x}_2) = \langle \mathbf{x}_1,\mathbf{x}_2|\Psi_1,\Psi_2\rangle = \Psi_1(\mathbf{x}_1) \cdot \Psi_2(\mathbf{x}_2)$$

  Also in this case we can construct an entangled wave function

$$\psi_{ENT}(\mathbf{x}_1,\mathbf{x}_2) = \left(\Psi_1(\mathbf{x}_1)\Psi_2(\mathbf{x}_2) + \tilde{\Psi}_1(\mathbf{x}_1)\tilde{\Psi}_2(\mathbf{x}_2)\right)$$

Product states of the type $|\Psi\rangle \otimes |\Phi\rangle$ describe uncorrelated particles. These vectors are also called fundamental tensors. States that cannot be represented in that way are called "entangled" states. They arise from interactions between the particles. For example consider a system of two spins in the state

$$|\Psi\rangle = \Big(|+z\rangle \otimes |-z\rangle\Big) + \Big(|-z\rangle \otimes |+z\rangle\Big)$$

[1] For the representation of spin states several equivalent notations exist: $|\pm 1\rangle$, or $\left|\pm\tfrac{1}{2}\right\rangle$, or $|\pm z\rangle$, or $|\uparrow\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle$. They all describe the eigenstates of $S^z$ with eigenvalues $\pm\hbar/2$.

None of the two spins is in an eigenstate of the corresponding operators [2] $S_1^z, S_2^z$:

$$\begin{aligned} S_1^z|\Psi\rangle &= S_1^z\Big(|+z\rangle\otimes|-z\rangle + |-z\rangle\otimes|+z\rangle\Big) \\ &= \frac{\hbar}{2}|+z\rangle\otimes|-z\rangle + \frac{-\hbar}{2}|-z\rangle\otimes|+z\rangle \\ &= \frac{\hbar}{2}\Big(|+z\rangle\otimes|-z\rangle - |-z\rangle\otimes|+z\rangle\Big) \neq \frac{\hbar}{2}|\Psi\rangle \end{aligned}$$

The concept of the tensor product can be immediately extended to an arbitrary number of subspaces.

$$|\Psi_1,\Psi_2,\cdots,\Psi_n\rangle = |\Psi_1\rangle\otimes|\Psi_2\rangle\otimes\cdots\otimes|\Psi_n\rangle = \bigotimes_{i=1}^{n}|\Psi_i\rangle$$
$$\mathscr{H} = \mathscr{H}_1\otimes\mathscr{H}_2\otimes\cdots\otimes\mathscr{H}_n$$

## 6.5 Operators in tensor product space

All assumptions previously made about linear operators are also valid for operators in product spaces. Let us consider an operator $\mathscr{L}$ in the basis states

$$\begin{aligned} |\Phi_k,\Psi_l\rangle &:= |\Phi_k\rangle\otimes|\Psi_l\rangle \\ L(kl;k'l') &:= \langle\Phi_k,\Psi_l|\mathscr{L}|\Phi_{k'},\Psi_{l'}\rangle \end{aligned}$$

If $\mathscr{L}$ only acts on $\mathscr{H}_1$, it is represented in $\mathscr{H}_1\otimes\mathscr{H}_2$ as:

$$\mathscr{L}_1 := \big(\mathscr{L}\otimes\mathbb{1}\big) \;\Rightarrow\; \big(\mathscr{L}\otimes\mathbb{1}\big)|\Phi_k,\Psi_l\rangle = \Big(\mathscr{L}|\Phi_k\rangle\Big)\otimes|\Psi_l\rangle \qquad .$$

In analogy, if the operator $\mathscr{M}$ only acts on vectors in $\mathscr{H}_2$, it is represented in the product space as follows:

$$\mathscr{M}_2 := \big(\mathbb{1}\otimes\mathscr{M}\big) \;\Rightarrow\; \big(\mathbb{1}\otimes\mathscr{M}\big)|\Phi_k,\Psi_l\rangle = |\Phi_k\rangle\otimes\Big(\mathscr{M}|\Psi_l\rangle\Big) \qquad .$$

In the basis of the product space the matrix elements of $\mathscr{L}_1$ and $\mathscr{M}_2$ are

$$\begin{aligned} L_1(kl;k'l') &\equiv \langle\Phi_k,\Psi_l|\mathscr{L}_1|\Phi_{k'},\Psi_{l'}\rangle = \langle\Phi_k|\mathscr{L}|\Phi_{k'}\rangle\cdot\delta_{ll'} \\ M_2(kl;k'l') &\equiv \langle\Phi_k,\Psi_l|\mathscr{M}_2|\Phi_{k'},\Psi_{l'}\rangle = \delta_{kk'}\cdot\langle\Psi_l|\mathscr{M}|\Psi_{l'}\rangle \end{aligned}$$

[2] In order to avoid confusion with the indices of the subspaces we will henceforth specify the components of spin and angular momentum as "superscripts", e.g. $S^z$, $J^x$, $L^+$, $J^-$, etc. The lower index $(1,2)$ indicates to which state the operator applies.

Operators on different subsystems always commute with each other:

$$[\mathscr{L}_1, \mathscr{M}_2] = 0 \tag{6.5}$$

The product of the two operators $\mathscr{L}_1\mathscr{M}_2$ is represented as a tensor product: $\mathscr{L} \otimes \mathscr{M}$. It means that $\mathscr{L}$ applies to the first state and $\mathscr{M}$ to the second one:

$$\mathscr{L}_1\mathscr{M}_2 \left|\Phi_k, \Psi_l\right\rangle = (\mathscr{L} \left|\Phi_k\right\rangle) \otimes (\mathscr{M} \left|\Psi_l\right\rangle)$$

Correspondingly, its matrix elements read:

$$\langle \Phi_k, \Psi_l | \mathscr{L}_1\mathscr{M}_2 | \Phi_{k'}, \Psi_{l'} \rangle = \langle \Phi_k | \mathscr{L} | \Phi_{k'} \rangle \cdot \langle \Psi_l | \mathscr{M} | \Psi_{l'} \rangle$$

As an example let us consider the spin-orbit coupling that occurs in the relativistic treatment of the wave function of an atom. The operator describing the coupling is proportional to

$$\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{L} = \sum_{n=1,2,3} S^n L^n$$

the product of spin and angular momentum vector operator. The eigenvectors $|\sigma\rangle$ of $S^z$ can serve as basis states for the spin. For the orbital part one possible choice of basis are the joint eigenvectors $|l,m\rangle$ of $L^2$ and $L^z$.
The fundamental tensor products are $|l,m,\sigma\rangle = |l,m\rangle \otimes |\sigma\rangle$. In this basis the matrix elements of the z-component of the spin-orbit coupling take the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle l,m,\sigma | L^z \otimes S^z | l',m',\sigma' \rangle &= \langle l,m | L^z | l',m' \rangle \cdot \langle \sigma | S^z | \sigma' \rangle \\ &= \hbar\, m\, \delta_{m,m'} \delta_{l,l'} \cdot \frac{\hbar}{2}\, \sigma\, \delta_{\sigma,\sigma'} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

The $\otimes$ between the operators is often omitted, when it is clear on which state each operator acts.

### Probabilities

As a further application one may ask what is the probability $P(\Phi_l)$ that a state $|\Psi\rangle$ in $\mathscr{H}$ is found in an eigenstate $|\Phi_l\rangle$ of an operator of, say, the first subspace $\mathscr{H}_1$. This is, as usual, given by the square modulus of the projection of $|\Psi\rangle$ onto the space spanned by $|\Phi_l\rangle$. Here, the identity is applied to the second subspace. The corresponding projection operator thus becomes

$$|\Phi_l\rangle \langle \Phi_l| \otimes \mathbb{1}$$

and the probability

$$P(\Phi_l) = \frac{\left|\left(|\Phi_l\rangle \langle \Phi_l| \otimes \mathbb{1}\right) |\Psi\rangle\right|^2}{\langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle}$$

The norm in the denominator can, as usual, be omitted if the state is already normalized.

**Example**

Consider a particle in a spin-orbit coupled state

$$|\Psi\rangle = \alpha\,|l,m\rangle \otimes |+z\rangle + \beta\,|l,m+1\rangle \otimes |-z\rangle$$

When measuring the $z$-component of the spin, the probability $P(s_z = -\frac{\hbar}{2})$ to obtain $-\frac{\hbar}{2}$ is given by

$$P(s_z = -\frac{\hbar}{2}) = \quad \frac{|(\mathbb{1} \otimes |-z\rangle\langle -z|)\,|\Psi\rangle|^2}{|\alpha|^2+|\beta|^2} = \tag{6.6}$$

$$\frac{|\beta\ |l,m+1\rangle|^2\ \ ||-z\rangle|^2}{|\alpha|^2+|\beta|^2} = \frac{|\beta|^2}{|\alpha|^2+|\beta|^2} \tag{6.7}$$

A little more difficult is $P(s_x = +\frac{\hbar}{2})$. One possibility is to expand $|\pm z\rangle$ in the $|\pm x\rangle$ basis. Alternatively (we now take a normalized state $|\alpha|^2+|\beta|^2 = 1$):

$$\begin{aligned} P(s_x = +\frac{\hbar}{2}) = \quad & |(\mathbb{1} \otimes |+x\rangle\langle +x|)\,|\Psi\rangle|^2 = \\ & \left| \left( \alpha\,|l,m\rangle \underbrace{\langle +x|+z\rangle}_{1/\sqrt{2}} + \beta\,|l,m+1\rangle \underbrace{\langle +x|-z\rangle}_{1/\sqrt{2}} \right) \otimes |+x\rangle \right|^2 \\ & = \frac{1}{2}\left(|\alpha|^2+|\beta|^2\right) = \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

## 6.6 Systems with two spin $\frac{1}{2}$ particles

In order to describe the spin state with two particles (i.e., we omit the spatial part) we use the (fundamental) product basis

$$|\sigma_1\rangle\,|\sigma_2\rangle\ .$$

Just a quick reminder:

$$\begin{aligned} S^z_\beta|\sigma\rangle_\beta &= \frac{\hbar}{2}\sigma|\sigma\rangle_\beta \\ S^2_\beta|\sigma\rangle_\beta &= \hbar^2\frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{2}+1)|\sigma\rangle_\beta = \hbar^2\frac{3}{4}|\sigma\rangle_\beta \qquad , \end{aligned}$$

Here, the index $\beta$ specifies the particle to which the state vector or spin operator refers. The product basis is complete. All spin information of the two spin-1/2 particles can be expressed using this product basis.

As long as no external B-field is applied the **total spin** of the system

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}_1 + \mathbf{S}_2$$

is conserved; this means that all its 3 components commute with the Hamilton operator. However, the same does not necessarily hold true for the individual spins $\mathbf{S}_1$ and $\mathbf{S}_2$. For example, if we include some interaction between the two particles, $\mathbf{S}_1$ and $\mathbf{S}_2$ do not commute with the Hamilton operator. Therefore, the eigenvalues of the individual $z$-components $S_\alpha^z$ do not represent suitable quantum numbers (conserved quantities) anymore. The $z$-component of the **total spin** $S^z \equiv S_1^z + S_2^z$, however, does remain a suitable quantum number. It is therefore both useful and interesting to solve the eigenvalue problem of the total spin operator. Since $\mathbf{S}_1/\hbar$ ($\mathbf{S}_2/\hbar$) generates the rotations of the spin of the first (second) particle, $\mathbf{S}/\hbar$ is the generator of the rotations of the total spin (in product space) Details: Sec. A.16 . Consequently, the same commutation rules that hold for $\mathbf{S}_1$ and $\mathbf{S}_2$ must apply to $\mathbf{S}$:

$$[S^\alpha, S^\beta] = i\hbar\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} S^\gamma \quad . \tag{6.8}$$

From this it follows that

$$[S^z, \mathbf{S}^2] = 0$$

and that therefore, there must exist a joint basis for these two operators. We are now going to determine the relation between these joint eigenvectors and the product basis states $|\sigma_1\rangle|\sigma_2\rangle$, that is find the transformation between the two bases. At first, we note that, since $\mathbf{S}_1$ and $\mathbf{S}_2$ apply to different particles, i.e. different subsystems (cf. 6.5 )

$$[S_1^\alpha, S_2^\beta] = 0$$

As a consequence,

$$[\mathbf{S}_1^2, \mathbf{S}_2^2] = 0$$

furthermore, considering that $\mathbf{S}_1^2$ commutes with all components $S_1^\alpha$:

$$\left[\mathbf{S}_1^2, \mathbf{S}^2\right] = [\mathbf{S}_1^2, \sum_\alpha (S_1^\alpha + S_2^\alpha)^2] = 0$$

and similarly for $\mathbf{S}_2^2$. In addition, $\mathbf{S}_1^2$ and $\mathbf{S}_2^2$ also commute with $S^z = S_1^z + S_2^z$:

$$[S^z, \mathbf{S}_\alpha^2] = [S_1^z + S_2^z, \mathbf{S}_\alpha^2] = 0 \quad \alpha = 1, 2 \, .$$

However, note that

$$[S_\alpha^z, \mathbf{S}^2] = [S_\alpha^z, (S_1^x + S_2^x)^2 + (S_1^y + S_2^y)^2 + (S_1^z + S_2^z)^2 \neq \mathbf{0}$$

We can therefore construct a basis of joint eigenvectors from the operators $\mathbf{S}_1^2, \mathbf{S}_2^2, \mathbf{S}^2$ and $S^z$, but not from the $S_1^z$,$S_2^z$ separately.

We will be able to show that this joint eigenbasis spans the whole Hilbert space. We label the vectors of this new basis by $|s_1, s_2, j, m\rangle$, denoting the corresponding quantum numbers of the mutual commuting operators. These obey the following eigenvalue conditions:

$$\begin{aligned}
a)\quad & \mathbf{S}_1^2|s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar^2\, s_1(s_1+1) & |s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle \\
b)\quad & \mathbf{S}_2^2|s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar^2\, s_2(s_2+1) & |s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle \\
c)\quad & \mathbf{S}^2|s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar^2\, j(j+1) & |s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle \\
d)\quad & S^z|s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar m & |s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle \quad ,
\end{aligned} \tag{6.9}$$

with $s_1 = s_2 = 1/2$. The transformation between the product basis and the new basis is defined by the expansion coefficients $C^{(jm)}_{\sigma_1;\sigma_2}$ that remain to be calculated.

$$|s_1,s_2,j,m\rangle = \sum_{\sigma_1,\sigma_2\in\{\pm1\}} C^{(jm)}_{\sigma_1,\sigma_2}\,|\sigma_1\rangle\,|\sigma_2\rangle$$

## 6.7 Addition of angular momenta

The above issue can be made more general. Specifically, one can consider, instead of two spin $\frac{1}{2}$ systems, two systems with angular momenta $\mathbf{J}_1$ and $\mathbf{J}_2$.
For example, $\mathbf{J}_1$ can describe the orbital angular momentum of an electron and $\mathbf{J}_2$ its spin. In that case the corresponding quantum numbers will have the possible values $j_1 = 0, 1, \cdots, \infty$, and $j_2 = \frac{1}{2}$. The two angular momenta interact via spin-orbit coupling. This does not commute with $\mathbf{J}_1$ or $\mathbf{J}_2$ separately, but it does commute with $\mathbf{J} \equiv \mathbf{J}_1 + \mathbf{J}_2$. Another example is represented by two interacting atoms, each one with its own angular momentum $\mathbf{J}_i$ $(i = 1, 2)$.
The discussion of Sec. 6.6 can be readily taken over, specifically, we have the following set of mutually commuting operators:

$$\mathbf{J}_1^2,\ \mathbf{J}_2^2,\ \mathbf{J}^2,\ \mathbf{J}^z$$

Accordingly, one can derive a **common eigenbasis** specified by the vectors $|j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle$ with the following eigenvalue properties:

$$\begin{aligned}
a)\quad & \mathbf{J}_1^2|j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar^2\, j_1(j_1+1) & |j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle \\
b)\quad & \mathbf{J}_2^2|j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar^2\, j_2(j_2+1) & |j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle \\
c)\quad & \mathbf{J}^2|j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar^2\, j(j+1) & |j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle \\
d)\quad & J^z|j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle &=& \hbar m & |j_1,j_2,j,m\rangle \quad ,
\end{aligned} \tag{6.10}$$

The basis transformation is given by

$$|j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle = \sum_{m_i=-j_i}^{j_i} C(j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2|j, m)\,|j_1, m_1\rangle\,|j_2, m_2\rangle \tag{6.11a}$$

where the expansion coefficients

$$C(j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2|j, m) = \langle j_1, m_1|\,\langle j_2, m_2|\,|j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle \tag{6.11b}$$

are termed **Clebsch-Gordan coefficients** .

### 6.7.1 Scalar product

The advantage of this classification is that eigenvectors of $\mathbf{J}^2$ are also eigenvectors of an operator which often occurs in physics, namely the scalar product

$$\mathbf{J}_1 \cdot \mathbf{J}_2 \ .$$

For example, the spin-orbit coupling reads $\mathbf{L}\cdot\mathbf{S}$. This is the main practical reason for introducing the total angular momentum basis: rotationally invariant interactions, which do not commute with $\mathbf{J}_1$ and $\mathbf{J}_2$ separately, are diagonal in the quantum numbers $j, m$. Instead of diagonalizing a large matrix in the product basis, one can simply read off the eigenvalues, as we now show.
The term is straightforward to evaluate, since

$$\mathbf{J}^2 = \mathbf{J}_1^2 + \mathbf{J}_2^2 + 2\mathbf{J}_1 \cdot \mathbf{J}_2 \ .$$

Therefore, eigenstates of $\mathbf{J}^2$ are also eigenstates of this operator

$$\mathbf{J}_1 \cdot \mathbf{J}_2\ |j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle = \frac{\hbar^2}{2}\left[j(j+1) - j_1(j_1+1) - j_2(j_2+1)\right]|j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle \tag{6.12}$$

### 6.7.2 Different notations and terming conventions

The notation for the basis states on both sides in 6.11a can quickly become confusing, or overloaded. In order to reduce the number of indices to carry around, different conventions may be used. We start with the states of the **total angular momentum basis** (sometimes referred as **total spin** depending on what one is referring to)

$$|j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle \ .$$

In many situations, $j_1$ and $j_2$ are fixed, so it is not necessary to write them explicitly, therefore, one can replace it with the expression

$$|j, m\rangle \ . \tag{6.13}$$

This form will be used in the following.
For states in the (tensor) **product basis**

$$|j_1,m_1\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle \tag{6.14}$$

again in situations in which $j_1$ and $j_2$ are fixed, these can be omitted, leading to the form

$$|m_1\rangle\,|m_2\rangle \tag{6.15}$$

In this last case it is not advisable to use $|m_1,m_2\rangle$, as we do for tensor products, since this could be confused with 6.13 .
The notation may become confusing when we include concrete numbers. For example, assume I write the state

$$|3,2\rangle\ .$$

Is this a state in the form 6.13 , or one of the two states in 6.14 ? What quantum numbers do 3 and 2 represent? If there can be such a confusion, it is advisable to write this explicitly in the following form

$$|j=3,m=2\rangle$$

Similarly I may have

$$|m_1=+2\rangle\,|m_2=-1\rangle$$

so that I know what I am referring to.
Finally, consider the case of a two-spin system, i.e. two particles for which we just consider their spin degrees of freedom, but no spatial part [3] as in Sec. 6.6. Then for the product states we may have instead of 6.14

$$|s_1,m_1\rangle\,|s_2,m_2\rangle$$

or $\sigma_i$ instead of $m_i$. Notice that while in most cases $s_1=s_2=\frac{1}{2}$ there are also particles with larger values of $s_i$, and in this case the possible values of $m_i$ are not just $\pm\frac{1}{2}$. Then one sometimes uses $s$ for the total spin quantum number instead of $j$, so 6.13 becomes

$$|s,m\rangle\ .$$

[3] This is the case, for example, when the spatial parts of the wave function of the two particles are fixed to belong to a certain orbital or lattice site (a different one for the two particles) because moving them to another orbital would be energetically unfavorable

### 6.7.3 Determining the allowed values of $j$

For the following discussion we work at fixed $j_1, j_2$ and thus use 6.13 , i.e. replace $|j_1, j_2, j, m\rangle \to |j, m\rangle$. In this way, the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients may be represented as

$$C(j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2|j, m) = \langle j_1, m_1| \langle j_2, m_2| |j, m\rangle \tag{6.16}$$

There are some restrictions in the sum 6.11a . First, the $z$ components are additive: $J^z = J_1^z + J_2^z$ so that $m = m_1 + m_2$. This does not hold for $j$, since $j \neq j_1 + j_2$. However, for given $j_1$ and $j_2$, not all values of the total angular momentum quantum number $j$ are allowed: The maximum value $m_{max}$ of $m$ is given by the sum of the maximum values of $m_1$ and $m_2$, i.e. $m_{max} = j_1 + j_2$. Since there are no larger values of $m$, this state must have $j = j_1 + j_2$, and there are no larger values of $j$. So the first constraint is

$$j \leq j_1 + j_2 \,.$$

This discussion clearly identifies (see 6.20 below)

$$|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2\rangle = |j_1, j_1\rangle\, |j_2, j_2\rangle \tag{6.17}$$

#### Smaller values of $j$

Now going to the next smaller value $m = j_1 + j_2 - 1$, there are two states with this $m$, namely

$$|j_1, j_1 - 1\rangle\, |j_2, j_2\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad |j_1, j_1\rangle\, |j_2, j_2 - 1\rangle \tag{6.18}$$

in this 2 dimensional subspace one vector ( a particular linear combination ) must have $j = j_1 + j_2$, since if one vector of the multiplet is present, (here $|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2\rangle$) then all others must be present. The other vector must have $j = j_1 + j_2 - 1$. The expressions of these two vectors $|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\rangle$ and $|j = j_1 + j_2 - 1, m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\rangle$ are nontrivial, since in general, they will be linear combinations of 6.18 .

The following discussion is shown schematically in Tab. 6.20 . One can proceed in the same way for smaller $m$, noticing that there are three independent vectors with $m = j_1 + j_2 - 2$, and that the subspace with that $m$ will contain the vectors with $j = j_1 + j_2$, $j_1 + j_2 - 1$, and $j_1 + j_2 - 2$ (see 6.20 ). The story continues for all $m = j_1 + j_2 - p$ with $p \leq 2j_2$ (for definiteness we assume $j_2 \leq j_1$). The subspace is $(p+1)$-dimensional, containing the vectors with $j = j_1 + j_2, j_1 + j_2 - 1, \cdots, j_1 + j_2 - p$.

However, the situation changes when $p = 2j_2 + 1$. In that case, there are not enough $m_2$ to have a total of $p + 1$ states. This means that there will be no additional values of $j$. In summary the

POSSIBLE VALUES OF $j$ ARE

$$j = j_1 + j_2,\ j_1 + j_2 - 1,\ j_1 + j_2 - 2,\ \cdots\ |j_1 - j_2|\ . \tag{6.19}$$

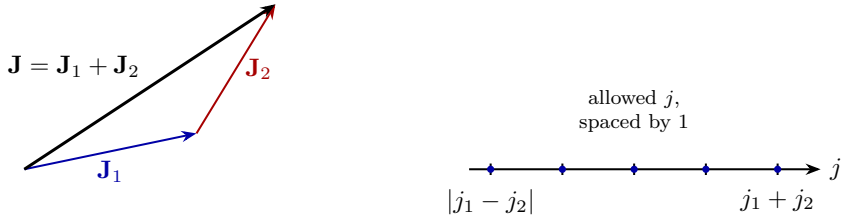



Figure 6.1: Classical vector-addition picture (left) vs. the quantum result 6.19 (right): only the lengths $j = |j_1 - j_2|, \ldots, j_1 + j_2$, spaced by integer steps, are allowed for the total angular momentum quantum number – a discrete echo of the fact that the classical $|\mathbf{J}_1 + \mathbf{J}_2|$ can take any value between $|j_1 - j_2|$ and $j_1 + j_2$ depending on the relative orientation of $\mathbf{J}_1, \mathbf{J}_2$.

| $m$ | product states with that $m$ | combine to $j$ values |
|---|---|---|
| $j_1 + j_2$ | $\|j_1, j_1\rangle \|j_2, j_2\rangle$ | $j_1 + j_2$ |
| $j_1 + j_2 - 1$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \|j_1, j_1 - 1\rangle \|j_2, j_2\rangle \\ \|j_1, j_1\rangle \|j_2, j_2 - 1\rangle \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} j_1 + j_2 \\ j_1 + j_2 - 1 \end{array} \right.$ |
| $j_1 + j_2 - 2$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \|j_1, j_1 - 2\rangle \|j_2, j_2\rangle \\ \|j_1, j_1 - 1\rangle \|j_2, j_2 - 1\rangle \\ \|j_1, j_1\rangle \|j_2, j_2 - 2\rangle \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} j_1 + j_2 \\ j_1 + j_2 - 1 \\ j_1 + j_2 - 2 \end{array} \right.$ |
| $\cdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\cdots$ |
| $j_1 - j_2$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \|j_1, j_1 - 2 * j_2,\rangle \|j_2, j_2\rangle \\ \cdots \\ \|j_1, j_1\rangle \|j_2, -j_2\rangle \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} j_1 + j_2 \\ \cdots \\ j_1 - j_2 \end{array} \right.$ |
| $\cdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\cdots$ |

(6.20)

Table 6.1: Schematic structure of the product space of two systems with angular momentum quantum numbers $j_1$ and $j_2$

### 6.7.4 Construction of the eigenstates

We illustrate here how to explicitly construct the eigenstates, i.e., in the end, the coefficients in 6.11a . For practical purposes, these coefficients are available in tables.
As discussed above, the first vector is given by

$$|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2\rangle = |j_1, j_1\rangle\,|j_2, j_2\rangle$$

We can now find the next vector with the same $j$ by applying the ladder operator 1.43 :

$$|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\rangle \propto J^-\,|j_1, j_1\rangle\,|j_2, j_2\rangle$$

since

$$J^- = J_1^- + J_2^-$$

we thus have (cf 1.43 )

$$\begin{aligned}|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\rangle \propto &\sqrt{j_1(j_1+1) - j_1(j_1-1)}\,|j_1, j_1 - 1\rangle\,|j_2, j_2\rangle + \\ &+ \sqrt{j_2(j_2+1) - j_2(j_2-1)}\,|j_1, j_1\rangle\,|j_2, j_2 - 1\rangle\ ,\end{aligned} \tag{6.21}$$

where the constant is obtained by normalisation. Since the subspace with $m = j_1 + j_2 - 1$ is spanned by the two vectors (see 6.20 ), the vector with $j = j_1 + j_2 - 1$ is simply the one orthogonal to 6.21 in this subspace.
The procedure goes on recursively like this: one applies the ladder operators to the two vectors
$|j = j_1 + j_2, m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\rangle$ and $|j = j_1 + j_2 - 1, m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\rangle$ to obtain the two corresponding vectors with $m = j_1 + j_2 - 2$. The vector orthogonal to both of them in this three dimensional subspace is the one with $j = j_1 + j_2 - 2$. And so on.

### 6.7.5 Application to the case of two spin $\frac{1}{2}$

The procedure in Sec. 6.7.4 is quite complicated, but relatively easy for two spin $\frac{1}{2}$ systems. Here $j_1 = j_2 = \frac{1}{2}$ do not need to be specified. We have (cf. 6.17 ):

$$|j = 1, m = +1\rangle = \left|+\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle \left|+\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle \tag{6.22}$$

By applying the ladder operator (cf. 6.21 )

$$|j = 1, m = 0\rangle \propto \left|+\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle \left|-\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle + \left|-\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle \left|+\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle\ , \tag{6.23}$$

and the proportionality (normalization) constant is clearly $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$.
$|j=0,m=0\rangle$ is obtained by orthogonalizing to 6.23 :

$$|j=0,m=0\rangle \propto \left|+\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle\left|-\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle - \left|-\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle\left|+\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle , \tag{6.24}$$

again with proportionality constant $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$. The sign (or the phase) is of course arbitrary. Finally, we could obtain $|j=1,m=-1\rangle$ by applying $J^-$ to 6.23 . However, it is easier to observe that $|j=1,m=-1\rangle$ is the only state having $m=-1$, and thus it is given by

$$|j=1,m=-1\rangle = \left|-\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle\left|-\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle . \tag{6.25}$$

In problems in which the two spins interact with each other, but the Hamiltonian still commutes with the total spin, the four possible states split into the **singlet** $|j=0,m=0\rangle$ and the three degenerate **triplet** $|j=1,m=+1\rangle, |j=1,m=0\rangle, |j=1,m=-1\rangle$ states.

SINGLET AND TRIPLET STATES OF TWO SPIN-1/2 PARTICLES

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| $j=0$ | $m=0$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\|\uparrow\rangle\|\downarrow\rangle - \|\downarrow\rangle\|\uparrow\rangle\Big)$ | singlet |
| $j=1$ | $m=+1$ | $\|\uparrow\rangle\|\uparrow\rangle$ | triplet |
| | $m=0$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\|\uparrow\rangle\|\downarrow\rangle + \|\downarrow\rangle\|\uparrow\rangle\Big)$ | |
| | $m=-1$ | $\|\downarrow\rangle\|\downarrow\rangle$ | |

(6.26)

### 6.7.6 How to use a table of Clebsch-Gordan coefficients

Let us recall the generic expansion 6.11a of a state with given total angular momentum quantum numbers $j,m$ in terms of product states with quantum numbers $j_1,m_1$ , $j_2,m_2$.
A table of the coefficient of the expansion (Clebsch-Gordan coefficients) 6.16

$$C(j_1,m_1;j_2,m_2|j,m) = \langle j_1,m_1|\langle j_2,m_2||j,m\rangle$$

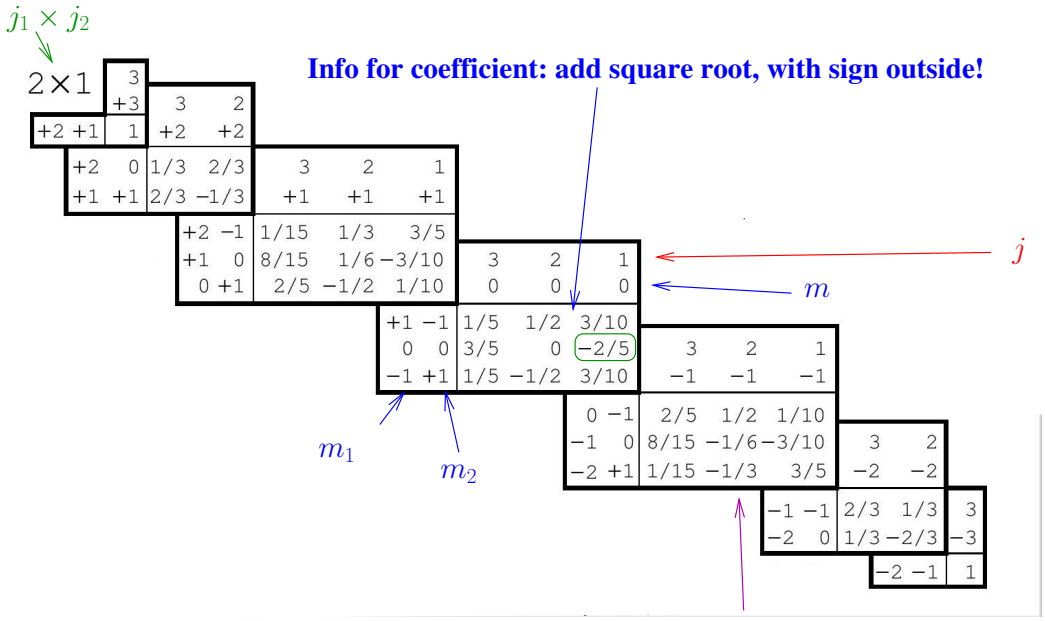



Figure 6.2: $j_1 = 2, j_2 = 1$ Clebsch-Gordan coefficients from http://pdg.lbl.gov/2002/clebrpp.pdf.

can be found in http://pdg.lbl.gov/2002/clebrpp.pdf (just for me here) You can also use a SymPy module for example (or mathematica) to produce them.
To understand how to use this table 211 let us look at an example for $j_1 = 2, j_2 = 1$ This table gives information to get the coefficients of the expansion 6.11a

$$\langle j_1 = 2, m_1 | \langle j_2 = 1, m_2 | | j, m \rangle \ .$$

The inner rectangle contains, in principle, the coefficients, whereby a square root over each entry is implied, with the sign staying outside of the square root. In addition, when exchanging $j_1, m_1$ with $j_2, m_2$ one can use the relation

$$\langle j_1, m_1 | \langle j_2, m_2 | | j, m \rangle = (-1)^{j - j_1 - j_2} \langle j_2, m_2 | \langle j_1, m_1 | | j, m \rangle \tag{6.27}$$

For example, the green mark shows a $-2/5$. This means that

$$\langle j_1 = 2, m_1 = 0 | \langle j_2 = 1, m_2 = 0 | | j = 1, m = 0 \rangle = -\sqrt{2/5} \ .$$

As another example, let us write a $j = 2, m = -1$ state (see violet arrow):

$$|j = 2, m = -1\rangle$$
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} | 2, \underset{\uparrow}{0}\ \underset{\uparrow}{} > | \underset{\uparrow}{1}, \underset{\uparrow}{-1} > - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} |2, -1\rangle |1, 0\rangle - \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} |2, -2\rangle |1, +1\rangle$$
$$\mathbf{j_1}\ \mathbf{m_1} \qquad \mathbf{j_2}\ \mathbf{m_2}$$

## 6.8 Matrix elements of vector operators (Wigner-Eckart's theorem)

Here, we want to look at the application of the theory of the addition of angular momenta to other problems in atomic and molecular physics (and beyond), whenever we need to calculate matrix elements of vector operators between atomic states. For example, in optics the transition rate between two states contains the dipole matrix element

$$\mathbf{d} = e\langle n,l,m|\,\hat{\mathbf{r}}\,|n',l',m'\rangle\ . \tag{6.28}$$

This is also needed to evaluate the effects of an electric field (Stark effect), and the corresponding lifting of degeneracy of atomic states.

Another application is the Zeeman effect, in which one considers the perturbation due to a magnetic field

Matrix elements of the form 6.28 can involve the calculation of a large number of integrals. For example, for a transition $2p \to 3d$ orbitals one has in 6.28 $l' = 1, l = 2$, i.e. $3\times 5$ combinations of $m, m'$. In addition, there are 3 components of $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$, for a total of 45 integrals. In addition, many of these integrals are zero due to symmetry, which corresponds to forbidden transitions, i.e. selection rules. It would be useful to figure out which ones are zero without doing the calculations. Wigner-Eckart's theorem allows one to obtain all 45 integrals by just evaluating one of them. The idea is that all those states and integrals can be obtained by symmetry transformations. The generalisation of 6.28 consists of a matrix element of a **vector operator** $\hat{\mathbf{V}}$ between angular momentum eigenstates

$$\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{\mathbf{V}}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$$

Here, $a, b$ are additional quantum numbers, e.g. $n, n'$ for hydrogen atom. $j$ could be just $l$, or the total angular momentum $j$, or spin $s$ depending on the problem at hand.

It is convenient to rewrite the vector operator in analogy to the ladder operators 1.22 (there are slightly different factors):

$$\hat{V}_{\pm 1} = \mp(\hat{V}_x \pm i\hat{V}_y)/\sqrt{2} \qquad \hat{V}_0 = \hat{V}_z \tag{6.29}$$

Now the theorem states that Proof here: Sec. A.17

[1] **Important Note:** While there is a symmetry when "turning around" the vectors in $\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_M\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$, i.e. $\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_M^\dagger\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle = \langle b,j_2,m_2|\,\hat{V}_M\,|a,j,m\rangle^*$ **there is no symmetry in the coefficient** $\langle a,j||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||b,j_2\rangle$ **i.e. it is** $\neq \langle b,j_2||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||a,j\rangle^*$**.** For details see here: Sec. A.19

WIGNER-ECKART'S THEOREM FOR VECTORS[1]

$$\langle a,j,m|\hat{V}_M|b,j_2,m_2\rangle = \langle j,m||j_1=1,m_1=M\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle\ \ \langle a,j||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||b,j_2\rangle\ , \tag{6.30}$$

where $\langle j,m||j_1=1,m_1=M\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle$ are the (complex-conjugates of the) Clebsch-Gordan coefficients 6.16 . The last term $\langle a,j||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||b,j_2\rangle$ is simply a proportionality constant, and can be determined by evaluating just one of the (nonvanishing) matrix elements on the left h.s., i.e. for one set of $m,M,m_2$. Then one automatically has all of them. 6.30 , compared with 6.16 suggests that $\hat{V}_M$ behaves similarly to a state with angular momentum quantum numbers $j_1=1,m_1=M$. This is not a coincidence: under rotations, the three spherical components 6.29 of a vector operator transform exactly like the $l=1$ spherical harmonics $Y_1^M$. Combining $|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$ with $\hat{V}_M$ is thus, as far as the ANGULAR (rotational) part of the problem is concerned, the same as combining two angular momenta $j_2$ and 1 – which is exactly why the same Clebsch-Gordan coefficients that appear in 6.11a also control the matrix elements of any vector operator.

The more general version of Wigner-Eckart's theorem applies to higher-dimensional tensors such as quadrupoles. A special case is a rank-0 tensor, i.e. a scalar operator $\hat{S}$, for which we already knew that Proof here: Sec. A.18

WIGNER-ECKART'S THEOREM FOR SCALARS

$$\langle a,j,m|\hat{S}|b,j_2,m_2\rangle = \delta_{j,j_2}\delta_{m,m_2}\langle a,j||\hat{S}||b,j\rangle \tag{6.31}$$

### Selection rules and parity

6.30 provides an easy rule to determine which matrix elements are allowed. From the rule $j=j_1+j_2,\cdots,|j_1-j_2|$, and $m=m_1+m_2$, we get for the present case $|j-j_2|\leq 1$ and $m=m_2+M$. The latter observation leads to the selection rules for optical dipole transitions between states of a spherical atom: $l_{final}=l_{initial}\pm 1$.

In principle, 6.30 only states $|l_{final} - l_{initial}| \leq 1$ so also $l_{final} = l_{initial}$ would be allowed. This, however, is excluded by the fact that $l_{final}$ and $l_{initial}$ must have different parity, i.e. $l_{final} - l_{initial} =$ odd. To see this, remember that the parity operator $\hat{P}$ transforms $\mathbf{r} \to -\mathbf{r}$:

$$\hat{P}\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \psi(-\mathbf{r})$$

Now, by looking at the spherical harmonics it is easy to see that **states with a given $l$ have a fixed parity $(-1)^l$,** i.e.

$$\hat{P}Y_{lm}(\theta,\varphi) = (-1)^l Y_{lm}(\theta,\varphi)\ .$$

On the other hand, for the position operator, we have

$$\hat{P}\hat{\mathbf{r}}\hat{P} = -\hat{\mathbf{r}}$$

which indicates the transformation of $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ under $\hat{P}$. We thus have for 6.28

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle n,l,m|\,\hat{\mathbf{r}}\,|n',l',m'\rangle = -\langle n,l,m|\,\hat{P}\hat{\mathbf{r}}\hat{P}\,|n',l',m'\rangle \\ &= (-1)^{l-l'+1}\langle n,l,m|\,\hat{\mathbf{r}}\,|n',l',m'\rangle = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } l-l' \text{ even} \\ \neq 0 & \text{for } l-l' \text{ odd} \end{cases} \end{aligned} \tag{6.32}$$

this gives the mentioned condition $l_{final} - l_{initial} =$ odd.

### 6.8.1 Applications

#### Stark effect in Hydrogen

As an application we consider the perturbation of the degenerate $n = 2$ Hydrogen states by a homogeneous electric field:

$$\hat{H}_1 = -eE\ \hat{z}\ . \tag{6.33}$$

According to degenerate perturbation theory, we ought to calculate all 16 matrix elements

$$\langle 2,l,m|\,\hat{z}\,|2,l',m'\rangle$$

First of all, due to 6.32 , only matrix elements between $l = 0$ and $l = 1$ are nonzero. Second, since (cf. 6.29 ) $\hat{z} = \hat{r}_0$, we have from 6.30 $m = m'$. So in the end, the only nonvanishing matrix elements are

$$d \equiv \langle 2,1,0|\hat{z}|2,0,0\rangle = \langle 2,0,0|\hat{z}|2,1,0\rangle\ , \tag{6.34}$$

We don't calculate $d$ here. From the $4\times 4$ matrix we are left with a $2\times 2$ between these states:

$$\langle 2,l,0|\,\hat{H}_1\,|2,l',0\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -eEd \\ -eEd & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

so the eigenstates/eigenenergy corrections are (cf. 6.33 , 6.34 )

| eigenstate | energy correction |
|---|---|
| $\|2,0,0\rangle + \|2,1,0\rangle$ | $-eEd$ |
| $\|2,1,\pm 1\rangle$ | $0$ |
| $\|2,0,0\rangle - \|2,1,0\rangle$ | $eEd$ |

(6.35)

**Further matrix elements** Wigner Eckart's theorem can be used to determine matrix elements of all the other components of a vector having evaluated only one. For example, from 6.34 we can evaluate $\langle 2,1,m|\,\hat{x}\,|2,0,0\rangle$.
From 6.29 , we have that for $\hat{\mathbf{V}} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}$,

$$\hat{r}_0 = \hat{z} \qquad \hat{r}_{\pm 1} = \mp(\hat{x} \pm i\,\hat{y})/\sqrt{2}$$

and, thus

$$\hat{x} = (\hat{r}_{-1} - \hat{r}_{+1})/\sqrt{2}\,.$$

Using 6.30 and 6.34 we have

$$d = \langle 2,1,0|\,\hat{r}_0\,|2,0,0\rangle = \underbrace{\langle 1,0||\,j_1=1,m_1=0\rangle\,|0,0\rangle}_{=1}\langle 2,1|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|2,0\rangle$$

which fixes the constant

$$\langle 2,1|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|2,0\rangle = d\,.$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle 2,1,m|\,\hat{x}\,|2,0,0\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\langle 2,1,m|\,\hat{r}_{-1}\,|2,0,0\rangle - \langle 2,1,m|\,\hat{r}_{+1}\,|2,0,0\rangle\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\langle 2,1|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|2,0\rangle \left( \underbrace{\langle 1,m||\,j_1=1,m_1=-1\rangle\,|0,0\rangle}_{=\delta_{m,-1}} - \underbrace{\langle 1,m||\,j_1=1,m_1=+1}_{=\delta_{m,+1}} \right. \\
&= \frac{d}{\sqrt{2}}(\delta_{m,-1} - \delta_{m,+1})
\end{aligned}$$

And similarly one can determine $\langle 2,1,m|\,\hat{y}\,|2,0,0\rangle$.
It is instructive to repeat the calculation with the hermitian conjugate (which, of course, should give the same):

$$d = \langle 2,0,0|\,\hat{r}_0\,|2,1,0\rangle = \underbrace{\langle 0,0||\,j_1=1,m_1=0\rangle\,|1,0\rangle}_{-1/\sqrt{3}}\langle 2,0|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|2,1\rangle\,.$$

Notice that (cf. footnote on Pag. 100)

$$\langle 2,0|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|2,1\rangle = -\sqrt{3}d \qquad \neq \langle \mathbf{2},\mathbf{1}|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|\mathbf{2},\mathbf{0}\rangle^* \,.$$

So these quantities are just constants and do not have the properties of matrix elements.
On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned}\langle 2,0,0|\hat{x}\,|2,1,m\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\langle 2,0,0|\,\hat{r}_{-1}\,|2,1,m\rangle - \langle 2,0,0|\,\hat{r}_{+1}\,|2,1,m\rangle\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\langle 2,0|\,|\hat{\mathbf{r}}|\,|2,1\rangle\left(\underbrace{\langle 0,0||j_1=1,m_1=-1\rangle\,|1,m\rangle}_{=\delta_{m,+1}/\sqrt{3}} - \underbrace{\langle 0,0||j_1=1,m_1=+1\rangle\,|1,m\rangle}_{=\delta_{m,-1}/\sqrt{3}}\right)\\ &= \frac{d}{\sqrt{2}}(\delta_{m,-1}-\delta_{m,+1})\end{aligned}$$

the same as 6.36 , as expected.

### Landé $g$-factor

This deals with the problem of an atom in which electrons have a total orbital angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ and total spin $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$, characterized by corresponding quantum numbers $l$ and $s$ (in the case of one electron, $s=\frac{1}{2}$).
They first couple via spin-orbit coupling

$$H_{SO} = \lambda\ \hat{\mathbf{L}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{S}} \tag{6.37}$$

so that the total angular momentum

$$\hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}} \tag{6.38}$$

commutes with the Hamiltonian, and eigenenergies depend on the corresponding quantum number $j$ only, with degeneracy $2j+1$ (fine-structure states).
One then studies the influence of an external magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\mathbf{e}_z$ which couples as (Zeeman effect)

$$H_B = \hat{\mu}\cdot\mathbf{B} = \mu_B(\hat{\mathbf{L}} + g_s\hat{\mathbf{S}})\cdot\mathbf{B} \qquad \mu_B = \frac{q}{2mc} \tag{6.39}$$

Due to the electron's gyromagnetic ratio $g_s = 2$, the term in brackets is not in the same direction as $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$. Classically: since $g_s \neq 1$, the magnetic moment $\mu \propto \hat{\mathbf{L}} + g_s\hat{\mathbf{S}}$ is tilted away from $\hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}}$ towards $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$ (Fig. 6.3). But $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$ precess rapidly around $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ because of the spin-orbit coupling, while $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ itself precesses only

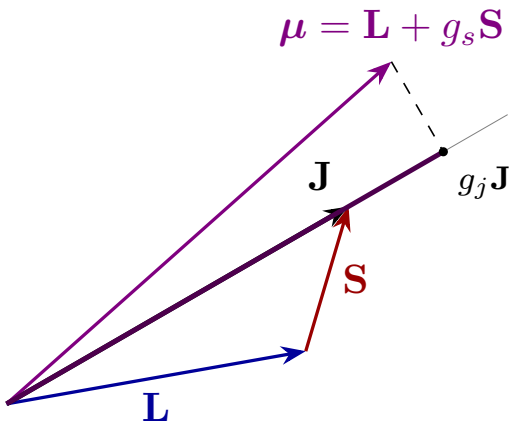



Figure 6.3: $\hat{\mathbf{L}}, \hat{\mathbf{S}}$ add up to $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$, but the magnetic moment $\mu \propto \hat{\mathbf{L}} + g_s\hat{\mathbf{S}}$ ($g_s = 2$) is NOT parallel to $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$. Only its projection $g_j\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ along $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ survives the fast precession of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}, \hat{\mathbf{S}}$ around $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$.

slowly around **B**. On the (slow) time scale relevant for the Zeeman splitting, only the time-averaged, i.e. the component of $\mu$ **along** $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ survives – this is exactly the content of the projection theorem used below.
Here, the perturbation due to $H_B$ is considered to be smaller than the effect of spin-orbit coupling, so that it is sufficient to consider first-order perturbation theory, which is, however, degenerate, due to the degeneracy of the $j$-multiplets. Therefore, we ought to calculate all matrix elements of $H_B$, i.e. of $L_z$ and $S_z$ between the degenerate states $|n, j, m_j\rangle$ for all $m_j$.
But again, Wigner-Eckart's theorem gives us an easier solution. From the proportionality 6.30 , it is clear that within a fixed set of $(a, j), (b, j_2)$ (here $(n, j), (n, j)$) all matrix elements of a vector are proportional to each other, so in our case for an arbitrary vector **V**

$$\langle n, j, m_j | \hat{\mathbf{V}} | n, j, m'_j \rangle = \gamma(n, j) \langle n, j, m_j | \hat{\mathbf{J}} | n, j, m'_j \rangle \ . \tag{6.40}$$

Here we prove : Sec. A.20 that the (**V**-dependent) constant $\gamma(n, j)$ is given by

$$\gamma(n, j) = \frac{\langle n, j, m_j | \hat{\mathbf{V}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} | n, j, m_j \rangle}{\hbar^2 \ j(j+1)} \tag{6.41}$$

and is independent of $m_j$ (projection theorem).
6.39 with 6.40 gives

$$\langle n, j, m_j | \hat{\mu} | n, j, m'_j \rangle = g_{nj} \ \mu_B \langle n, j, m_j | \hat{\mathbf{J}} | n, j, m'_j \rangle \tag{6.42}$$

with the Landé factor (cf. 6.41 )

$$g_{nj} \equiv \frac{\left\langle n,j,m_j \right| (\hat{\mathbf{L}} + g_s \hat{\mathbf{S}}) \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} \left| n,j,m_j \right\rangle}{\hbar^2 \; j(j+1)} \tag{6.43}$$

To determine this factor we consider that

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot (\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}}) = \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 - \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 - \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2)$$

and similarly

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 - \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 - \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2)$$

So that 6.43

$$g_j = \frac{j(j+1)(1+g_s) + l(l+1)(1-g_s) + s(s+1)(g_s-1)}{2j(j+1)} \tag{6.44}$$

Therefore, the Hamiltonian 6.39 can be written within these fixed-$j$ states

$$H_B = \mu_B \; g_{nj} \; \mathbf{B} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} \; .$$

Taking, without restriction of generality the magnetic field in the $z$-direction, we have for the energies

$$E_{m_j} = \mu_B \; g_{nj} \; B \; \hbar m_j$$

# Chapter 7

# Identical particles

In many-body systems (e.g. atoms with more than one electron, molecules) we deal with a system of identical particles. In classical mechanics, identical particles are always distinguishable in the sense that their trajectories can be traced. However, in quantum mechanics, identical particles are truly indistinguishable, because due to the uncertainty relation, we cannot follow their trajectory. A paradigmatic example is here the double-slit experiment. The fact that particles are indistinguishable has a number of important consequences. We consider a system of $N$ identical particles. We initially assume that the particles do not interact with each other.

$$H = H_1 + H_2 + \cdots + H_N \quad .$$

Particle $\alpha$ must satisfy the eigenvalue equation

$$H_\alpha |\varphi_\nu\rangle_\alpha = \varepsilon_\nu |\varphi_\nu\rangle_\alpha \quad .$$

An eigenstate of $H$ is therefore the product of the eigenstates of the subsystems

$$|\Psi\rangle = \bigotimes_{\alpha=1}^{N} |\varphi_{\nu_\alpha}\rangle_\alpha = \left|\varphi_{\nu_1}, \varphi_{\nu_2}, \cdots, \varphi_{\nu_N}\right\rangle = \left|\varphi_{\nu_1}\right\rangle \otimes \left|\varphi_{\nu_2}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes \left|\varphi_{\nu_N}\right\rangle$$

$$H\,|\Psi\rangle = E\,|\Psi\rangle \quad \text{with} \quad E = \sum_{\alpha=1}^{N} \varepsilon_{\nu_\alpha}$$

[**Note:** We have to distinguish between many-particle states, such as $|\Psi\rangle$, and single-particle states such as the $|\varphi_i\rangle$. In many-body physics, the former are often simply referred to as "states" and the latter as "orbitals" or "levels", although they need not necessarily refer to atomic orbitals.]

Example

$$\begin{aligned} N &= 2 \\ |\Psi\rangle &= \left|\varphi_\nu, \varphi_\mu\right\rangle \\ E &= \varepsilon_\nu + \varepsilon_\mu \quad . \end{aligned}$$

The point is that also the state vector $\left|\varphi_\mu, \varphi_\nu\right\rangle$ with interchanged particles is an eigenstate with energy $E = \varepsilon_\mu + \varepsilon_\nu$. Hence, the two states are degenerate. Therefore, a state consisting of N particles with different energies has a very high degeneracy of $N!$. This is termed exchange degeneracy.
We now consider, independently of the Hamilton-operator, the consequences of the indistinguishability of particles. Since the interchange of two identical particles must not lead to measurable consequences, initial and final states can differ only by a phase.

$$P_{ij}|\Psi\rangle = e^{i\alpha}|\Psi\rangle$$

def.**Exchange operator**
$P_{ij}$ is the exchange operator, which interchanges particles $i$ and $j$.

$$P_{ij}|\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \cdots, \varphi_i, \cdots, \varphi_j, \cdots, \varphi_n\rangle = |\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \cdots, \varphi_j, \cdots, \varphi_i, \cdots, \varphi_n\rangle \tag{7.1}$$

Applying $P_{ij}$ twice to an N-particle state obviously leads back to the initial state.

As a consequence

$$\begin{aligned} P_{ij}^2 &= \mathbb{1} \\ \Rightarrow \; P_{ij}^2|\Psi\rangle &= e^{2i\alpha}|\Psi\rangle = |\Psi\rangle \\ e^{2i\alpha} = 1 &\Leftrightarrow \alpha = 0, \pi \\ \Rightarrow \; P_{ij}|\Psi\rangle &= \pm|\Psi\rangle \end{aligned}$$

This holds for arbitrary indices $i, j$. Thus, $|\Psi\rangle$ has to be symmetric / antisymmetric with respect to all pairs $i, j$. Only two of the $N!$ possibilities are physically distinguishable.

PARTICLE STATISTICS

When $P_{ij}|\Psi\rangle = +|\Psi\rangle$ one speaks of bosons.
When $P_{ij}|\Psi\rangle = -|\Psi\rangle$ one speaks of fermions. (7.2)

From relativistic quantum theory, particles with integer spin are bosons and particles with half integer spin are fermions. Two combined fermions form a boson (e.g. superconductivity). Despite its innocent appearance, this symmetry requirement has far-reaching measurable consequences: it is responsible for the Pauli principle and thus for the shell structure of atoms and the stability of matter, for the completely different low-temperature behavior of bosonic and fermionic gases, and, as we will see for helium, it produces effective spin-dependent interactions even when the Hamiltonian does not contain spin at all.
In general one can carry out an arbitrary permutation which is produced by the Permutation operator $P$, that has the following effect on an arbitrary $N$-particle state:

$$P|\varphi_1,\varphi_2,\cdots,\varphi_n\rangle = |\varphi_{P_1},\varphi_{P_2},\cdots,\varphi_{P_n}\rangle$$

We can now combine all possible permutations of an $N$-particle system in a symmetric way via the Symmetrisation operator

$$S := \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}}\sum_P P$$

Or for the case of antisymmetric wave functions the Antisymmetrisation operator

$$A := \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}}\sum_P \mathrm{sign}(P)P$$

Starting from an arbitrary $N$-particle tensor product state vector $|\Psi\rangle$, which in general does not fulfill 7.2 , bosonic and fermionic states satisfying 7.2 can be produced by applying $S$ resp. $A$ :

$$\begin{array}{lrcl} \text{Bosons:} & |\Psi_B\rangle & = & S\,|\Psi\rangle \\ \text{Fermions:} & |\Psi_F\rangle & = & A\,|\Psi\rangle \end{array}$$

Example for $N=2$

$$|\Psi_{Bos}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|\varphi_1,\varphi_2\rangle + |\varphi_2,\varphi_1\rangle) \tag{7.3}$$

$$|\Psi_F\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|\varphi_1,\varphi_2\rangle - |\varphi_2,\varphi_1\rangle) \tag{7.4}$$

For a tensor product state $|\varphi_1,\varphi_2,\cdots\rangle = |\varphi_1\rangle_1 \otimes |\varphi_2\rangle_2 \cdots$, $|\Psi_F\rangle$ is a so-called **Slater determinant**

$$|\Psi_F\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}}\begin{vmatrix} |\varphi_1\rangle_1 & |\varphi_2\rangle_1 & \cdots & |\varphi_N\rangle_1 \\ |\varphi_1\rangle_2 & |\varphi_2\rangle_2 & \cdots & |\varphi_N\rangle_2 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ |\varphi_1\rangle_N & |\varphi_2\rangle_N & \cdots & |\varphi_N\rangle_N \end{vmatrix}$$

in coordinate representation

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{x}_1,\cdots,\mathbf{x}_N|\Psi_F\rangle &= \Psi_F(\mathbf{x}_1,\cdots,\mathbf{x}_N)\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}}\begin{vmatrix}\varphi_1(\mathbf{x}_1) & \varphi_2(\mathbf{x}_1) & \cdots & \varphi_N(\mathbf{x}_1)\\ \varphi_1(\mathbf{x}_2) & \varphi_2(\mathbf{x}_2) & \cdots & \varphi_N(\mathbf{x}_2)\\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots\\ \varphi_1(\mathbf{x}_N) & \varphi_2(\mathbf{x}_N) & \cdots & \varphi_N(\mathbf{x}_N)\end{vmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

Example for $N=2$

$$\begin{aligned}|\Psi_F\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{vmatrix}|\varphi_A\rangle_1 & |\varphi_B\rangle_1\\ |\varphi_A\rangle_2 & |\varphi_B\rangle_2\end{vmatrix}\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|\varphi_A\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_B\rangle_2-|\varphi_A\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_B\rangle_1\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|\varphi_A,\varphi_B\rangle-|\varphi_B,\varphi_A\rangle\right)\end{aligned}$$

in coordinate representation

$$\Psi_F(\mathbf{x}_1,\mathbf{x}_2)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\varphi_A(\mathbf{x}_1)\varphi_B(\mathbf{x}_2)-\varphi_A(\mathbf{x}_2)\varphi_B(\mathbf{x}_1)\right)$$

Example for $N=3$

$$\begin{aligned}|\Psi_F\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3!}}\begin{vmatrix}|\varphi_A\rangle_1 & |\varphi_B\rangle_1 & |\varphi_C\rangle_1\\ |\varphi_A\rangle_2 & |\varphi_B\rangle_2 & |\varphi_C\rangle_2\\ |\varphi_A\rangle_3 & |\varphi_B\rangle_3 & |\varphi_C\rangle_3\end{vmatrix}\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\Big(|\varphi_A\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_B\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_C\rangle_3+|\varphi_B\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_C\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_A\rangle_3\\ &\quad+|\varphi_C\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_A\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_B\rangle_3-|\varphi_C\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_B\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_A\rangle_3\\ &\quad-|\varphi_B\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_A\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_C\rangle_3-|\varphi_A\rangle_1\otimes|\varphi_C\rangle_2\otimes|\varphi_B\rangle_3\Big)\,.\end{aligned}\tag{7.5}$$

## 7.1 Pauli exclusion principle

An immediate consequence of antisymmetry is that electrons must satisfy the **Pauli exclusion principle**: Two identical fermions cannot occupy the same state. If $|\varphi_i\rangle=|\varphi_j\rangle$ where $i\neq j$, the exchange 7.1 results in the same state, but because of 7.2 with a negative sign, so it gives the zero state. Analogously, in this case two columns in the Slater determinant are identical, thus the determinant

vanishes.
Example: He atom, two electrons
Quantum numbers: $n;l;m_l;m_s$
Two electrons may not have the same set of quantum numbers.
The ground state has the quantum numbers: $n=1;l=0;m_l=0;m_s=\pm\frac{1}{2}$
Two electrons with opposite spin can be in the ground state. (Therefore, all states are pairwise occupied.)
Adding more electrons, they have to occupy the next shell:
$n=2$:
$l=0;m_l=0 \Rightarrow 2$ electrons
$l=1;m_l=-1,0,+1 \Rightarrow 6$ electrons
In this way, the *Aufbau* of the periodic table is explained.

## 7.2 Anyons (optional)

$P_{ij}^2=\mathbb{1}$ is not valid in two dimensions because of the special topology. Exchanging two particles in $\mathbb{R}^2$ twice, the way in which the particles are exchanged matters. The two ways to swap the particles back cannot be distorted into each other. Either particle I goes once around particle II or it goes down and up again on the same side. (Fig. 7.1).
A very illustrative example is given in Fig. 7.2. Two laces are fixed at one end, the loose end is "exchanged". In three dimensions, the two ways (Fig. 7.1) are identical, because they can be distorted into each other without touching the second particle. Thus, in two dimensions the wave function can acquire an arbitrary phase upon particle exchange, rather than just $\pm 1$. Particles which get an arbitrary phase upon exchange are called **Anyons**. These play an important role in the theory of the fractional quantum Hall (FQH) effect.

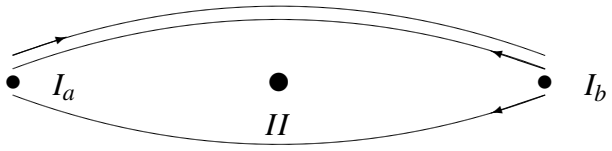



Figure 7.1: *Double exchange of two particles (I and II) in* $\mathbb{R}^2$.

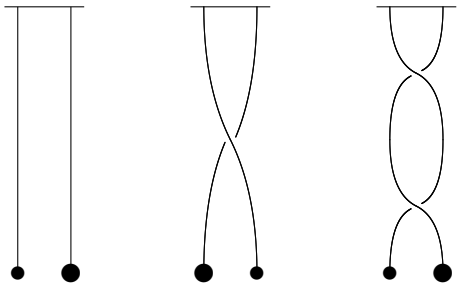


Figure 7.2: *Double exchange of two particles in* $\mathbb{R}^2$.

## 7.3 Occupation number representation

As discussed above, a basis vector for a Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_N$ describing $N$ identical particles consists of a symmetrized (Bosons) or antisymmetrized (Fermions) tensor product of single-particle basis states ("orbitals") $|\varphi_m\rangle$:

$$S_\pm \left|\varphi_{m_1}\right\rangle \otimes \left|\varphi_{m_2}\right\rangle \cdots \otimes \left|\varphi_{m_N}\right\rangle$$

where we have denoted $S_+ = S$ (symmetrisation) for bosons, and $S_- = A$ (antisymmetrisation) for fermions. The wave function is

$$\Psi(x_1, \cdots, x_N) = S_\pm \, \varphi_{m_1}(x_1)\varphi_{m_2}(x_2)\cdots\varphi_{m_N}(x_N) \, .$$

For simplicity, we have considered here a discrete basis for a single particle system, and taken $m_i = 1, 2, \cdots, \infty$. In general, $m$ can describe a set of quantum numbers (e.g. $m \equiv (n,l,m)$), or be continuous.
Each basis element is, therefore, specified by the set of positive integers $\{m_1, \cdots, m_N\}$. This provides the information: in which orbital each particle is. However, due to the indistinguishability of the particles, this is redundant information, since any permutation describes the same many-body state, up to a constant.
A more appropriate specification of a many-body basis state is the so-called **"occupation number representation" (Besetzungszahldarstellung)**. Here one specifies for each orbital $|\varphi_m\rangle$, the number of particles $N_m$ which are present in (occupy) that orbital:

$$|N_1, N_2, N_3, \cdots\rangle \tag{7.6}$$

Obviously, for bosons each $N_m$ can be any integer from 0 to $\infty$, for fermions just 0 or 1 due to the Pauli principle. Notice that, especially for fermions, this specifies

the many-body state only up to $\pm$ sign which depends on the order in which the orbitals are occupied. However, one can fix a convention according to which, for example, single-particle states are sorted in order of increasing $m$ from left to right.

### 7.3.1 Fock Space

For a Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_N$ with a given particle number $N$, the $N_m$ are constrained by $\sum_m N_m = N$.
However, one can consider the space obtained as the direct sum of all the $\mathscr{H}_N$ for $N = 0, \cdots, \infty$. This space with variable particle number is called **Fock space**.
Clearly, a possible basis for the Fock space is given by the set of states 7.6 with $N_m = 0, 1$ for fermions or $N_m = 0, \cdots, \infty$ for bosons but otherwise no restriction on the sum of the $N_m$.
The state $|0\rangle$ with no particles is called the **vacuum state**. This state is normalized $\langle 0|0\rangle = 1$ and should not be confused with the 0 "vector" which has norm 0.
The scalar product in the Fock space is naturally defined as

$$\langle N_1', N_2', N_3', \cdots | N_1, N_2, N_3, \cdots \rangle = \delta_{N_1', N_1} \delta_{N_2', N_2} \delta_{N_3', N_3} \cdots \tag{7.7}$$

A particularly useful formalism to describe a Fock space of bosons or fermions is given by **second quantisation** which will be introduced in Sec. 9.

## 7.4 Electron and spin

Electrons have an intrinsic degree of freedom (spin). The complete state of an electron consists of an orbital part $\varphi_i$ and a spin part $|\chi_\alpha\rangle$ (for example, $|\chi_\alpha\rangle = |+z\rangle$ or $|-z\rangle$, but also linear combinations). The general form of the state vector of **one** electron can be written as

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sum_{i,\alpha} c_{i,\alpha} \; |\varphi_i \chi_\alpha\rangle$$

The corresponding wave function

$$\Psi(\mathbf{x}, \sigma) := \langle \mathbf{x}, \sigma | \Psi \rangle = \sum_{i,\alpha} c_{i,\alpha} \varphi_i(\mathbf{x}) \chi_\alpha(\sigma) \quad \sigma = \pm z \qquad .$$

**Two electrons** What states can **two** electrons occupy? An elementary tensor product reads

$$|\Psi\rangle \quad = \quad \Big| \varphi_i \chi_\alpha, \varphi_j \chi_\beta \Big\rangle = |\varphi_i\rangle_1 \otimes |\varphi_j\rangle_2 \otimes |\chi_\alpha\rangle_1 \otimes |\chi_\beta\rangle_2 \qquad ,$$

Notice that we have grouped together the spatial part and the spin part of the state vector. This vector still has to be antisymmetrized, as discussed above. Two situations can be distinguished:

1. **Identical orbital parts ($i = j$):** Due to the Pauli exclusion principle, we must have $\alpha \neq \beta$. The antisymmetrisation of the state yields (without normalization):

$$\begin{aligned} & \Big|\varphi_i\chi_\alpha, \varphi_i\chi_\beta\Big\rangle - \Big|\varphi_i\chi_\beta, \varphi_i\chi_\alpha\Big\rangle \\ = \; & |\varphi_i\rangle_1 \otimes |\varphi_i\rangle_2 \otimes \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|\chi_\alpha\rangle_1 \otimes |\chi_\beta\rangle_2 - |\chi_\beta\rangle_1 \otimes |\chi_\alpha\rangle_2\Big)}_{\text{Singlet}} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Taking the $|\pm z\rangle$ basis, we get the singlet ($s = 0$) state, cf. 6.26 . [1]

SINGLET STATE OF TWO SPINS

$$|\text{Singlet}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|+z,-z\rangle - |-z,+z\rangle\Big) \tag{7.8}$$

1. **Different orbital parts ($i \neq j$):** Taking the $|\pm z\rangle$ basis, there are four possibilities for spins

I) $\alpha = \beta = +z$
II) $\alpha = \beta = -z$
III) $\alpha = -\beta = +z$
IV) $\alpha = -\beta = -z$

The resulting **globally** antisymmetrized states can be combined in antisymmetric in spin and symmetric in space; or symmetric in spin and antisymmetric in space. The triplet states in 6.26 are all symmetric in spin. Therefore, we have as possible two-electron states:

[1] In fact notice that the singlet term 7.8 has the same form in any quantisation direction $\hat{n}$ for the spin (for basis states $|\pm\hat{n}\rangle$), i.e.
$|\text{Singlet}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|+\hat{n},-\hat{n}\rangle - |-\hat{n},+\hat{n}\rangle)$. A simple way to see this is by considering that this state has angular momentum of zero and is therefore invariant under rotations and, thus, independent of the quantisation direction.

SINGLET AND TRIPLET STATES OF TWO ELECTRONS

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|\varphi_i,\varphi_j\rangle + |\varphi_j,\varphi_i\rangle\Big) \otimes |S=0, m_s=0\rangle \qquad \text{spin-singlet}$$
$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|\varphi_i,\varphi_j\rangle - |\varphi_j,\varphi_i\rangle\Big) \otimes |S=1, m_s\in\{0,\pm 1\}\rangle \qquad \text{spin-triplet} \tag{7.9}$$

## 7.5 The Helium atom

As an application, let us consider the example of two electrons in the Helium atom. As shown in figure 7.3 , Helium consists of a nucleus (Z = 2) and two electrons. The Hamiltonian for He is given by (atomic units)

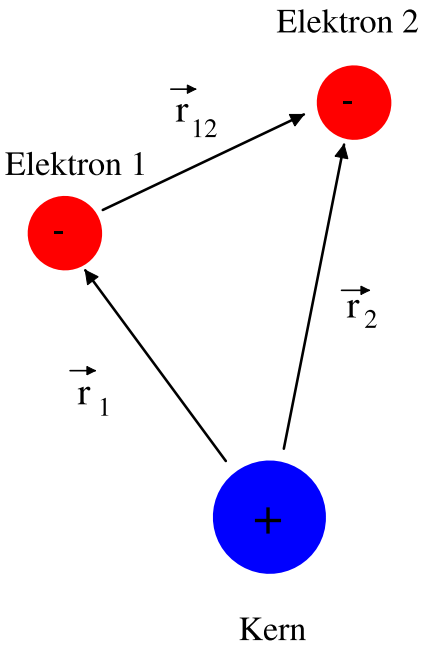



Figure 7.3: *Schematic sketch of an Helium atom*

$$H = \underbrace{\overbrace{\frac{\mathbf{p}_1^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_1}}^{H_{0,1}} + \overbrace{\frac{\mathbf{p}_2^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_2}}^{H_{0,2}}}_{H_0} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{r_{12}}}_{H_1} \tag{7.10}$$

We first focus on $H_0$. The two terms $H_{0,1}$ and $H_{0,2}$ are identical, except that they act on different particles. Each separate Hamilton operator describes a H-like atom with $Z = 2$. The lowest energy is obtained when both electrons are in ground state. Due to 7.9 the spin part has to be in a singlet state.

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_{orb}\rangle &= |n=1,l=0,m_l=0\rangle_1 \otimes |n=1,l=0,m_l=0\rangle_2 \\ &= |1,0,0\rangle_1 \otimes |1,0,0\rangle_2 \equiv |\varphi_0\rangle_1 \otimes |\varphi_0\rangle_2 \\ |\psi_{spin}\rangle &= |s=0,m_s=0\rangle \end{aligned}$$

The corresponding energy is

$$E = -2\left(\frac{Z^2}{2}\right) = -4 \stackrel{\wedge}{=} -4 \cdot 27.2\text{eV} = -108.8\text{eV}$$

Now, we take the interaction term $H_1 = H_1^{orb} \otimes \mathbb{1}^{spin}$ into account within first-order perturbation theory details: Sec. A.22 :

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta E^{(1)} &= \langle \Psi^{orb}|H_1^{orb}|\Psi^{orb}\rangle \langle \Psi^{spin}|\mathbb{1}^{spin}|\Psi^{spin}\rangle \\ &= \langle \Psi^{orb}|H_1^{orb}|\Psi^{orb}\rangle \\ &= \iint |\langle \mathbf{r}_1|1,0,0\rangle_1|^2 \, |\langle \mathbf{r}_2|1,0,0\rangle_2|^2 \, \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|} d^3r_1 d^3r_2 \\ &= \iint \rho(\mathbf{r}_1) \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|} \rho(\mathbf{r}_2) \, d^3r_1 \, d^3r_2 \end{aligned}$$

It describes the electrostatic interaction of two identical charge distributions $\rho(\mathbf{r})$. The electron density for the ground state is

$$\rho(\mathbf{r}) = \left|\varphi_0(Z,\mathbf{r})\right|^2 = \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} Z^{3/2} \, e^{-Zr}\right|^2 = \frac{1}{\pi} Z^3 \, e^{-2Zr} \tag{7.11}$$

The energy correction, thus, reads

$$\Delta E^{(1)} = \left(\frac{Z^3}{\pi}\right)^2 \iint e^{-2Zr_1} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|} e^{-2Zr_2} \, d^3r_1 \, d^3r_2$$

We substitute $2Z\mathbf{r}_\alpha = \mathbf{x}_\alpha$ and get

$$\Delta E^{(1)} = \underbrace{\left(\frac{Z^3}{\pi}\right)^2 (2Z)^{-5}}_{= \frac{Z}{2^5\pi^2}} \iint e^{-x_1} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2|} e^{-x_2} \, d^3x_1 \, d^3x_2 \tag{7.12}$$

The integral does not depend on $Z$. The calculation (details : Sec. A.23 ) gives

$$\Delta E^{(1)} = \frac{5}{8}Z \stackrel{\wedge}{=} \frac{5}{4}\cdot 27.2\text{eV} = 34.0\text{eV} \quad . \tag{7.13}$$

Thus, the ground state energy at this order is $E \cong -74.8$eV. The experimental value is $E_{\text{Exp}} = -78.8$eV. The calculated value does not yet agree very well with the experimental results due to the crude approximation we made. An improvement consists in adopting the variational method. We consider the atomic number $Z \to \mathscr{Z}$ of the wave function $|n=1,l=0,m_l=0\rangle$ (cf. 7.11 ) of the unperturbed problem as a variational parameter. We find the minimum of the expectation value of the energy

$$E^{(1)} = \frac{\langle\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})|H_0+H_1|\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle}{\langle\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})|\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle}$$

as a function of $\mathscr{Z}$. The result can only improve by finding a better $\mathscr{Z}$ with respect to $\mathscr{Z}=2$ we just evaluated. This choice also has a physical interpretation. The effective charge $\mathscr{Z}$ seen by each electron is smaller than the true $Z=2$, because the positive charge is partially screened by the negatively charged cloud of the other electron. By replacing $Z \to \mathscr{Z}$ we take this effect into account.
We rewrite the Hamiltonian (which has the correct $Z=2$) as

$$H = \overbrace{\frac{\mathbf{p}_1^2}{2} - \frac{\mathscr{Z}}{r_1}}^{H_{0,1}(\mathscr{Z})} + \frac{\mathscr{Z}-Z}{r_1} + \overbrace{\frac{\mathbf{p}_2^2}{2} - \frac{\mathscr{Z}}{r_2}}^{H_{0,2}(\mathscr{Z})} + \frac{\mathscr{Z}-Z}{r_2} + \frac{1}{r_{12}}$$

The contributions from $H_{0,1}(\mathscr{Z})$ and $H_{0,2}(\mathscr{Z})$ result in

$${}_1\langle\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})|H_{0,1}(\mathscr{Z})|\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle_1 \quad + \quad {}_2\langle\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})|H_{0,2}(\mathscr{Z})|\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle_2 = -2\frac{\mathscr{Z}^2}{2}\,,$$

where $|\Psi\rangle = |\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle_1 |\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle_2$ has been taken as a product of ground state wave functions of the two electrons. For this calculation, we used the fact that the Hamiltonian as well as the wave function describe an atom with atomic number $\mathscr{Z}$ similar to hydrogen.
The contribution from the modified potential was already calculated in 5.12 .

$${}_1\langle\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})|\frac{1}{r_1}|\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle_1 + {}_2\langle\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})|\frac{1}{r_2}|\varphi_0(\mathscr{Z})\rangle_2 = 2\,\mathscr{Z} \quad .$$

The remaining term was already evaluated in 7.13 .

$$\langle\Psi|\frac{1}{r_{12}}|\Psi\rangle = \frac{5}{8}\mathscr{Z} \quad .$$

The total variational energy, thus, becomes

$$E(\mathscr{Z}) = -\mathscr{Z}^2 + 2(\mathscr{Z} - Z)\mathscr{Z} + \frac{5}{8}\mathscr{Z} = \mathscr{Z}^2 - (2Z - \frac{5}{8})\mathscr{Z} \quad .$$

Minimisation with respect to $\mathscr{Z}$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial E(\mathscr{Z})}{\partial \mathscr{Z}} &= 2(\mathscr{Z} - Z + \frac{5}{16}) \stackrel{!}{=} 0 \qquad \Rightarrow \\ \mathscr{Z}^* &= Z - \frac{5}{16} = 1.69 \\ E(\mathscr{Z}^*) &= \underbrace{-Z^2 + \frac{5}{8}Z}_{E^{(1)}} - (\frac{5}{16})^2 \stackrel{\wedge}{=} -2.848 \cdot 27.21 \text{ eV} = -77.5 \text{ eV} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

The first two terms coincide with the results of perturbation theory. The result is already very close to the experimental value (−78.8 eV).

## 7.6 Excited states of helium

Finally, we consider the lowest excited states of helium, to show interesting effects of the symmetry of the wave function.
For an excited state, one particle stays in the ground state $n = 1, l = 0, m_l = 0$, whereas the second particle is in $n = 2, l, m_l$. According to 7.9 , there are four combinations

$$\begin{aligned} &\underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|100\rangle_1 \otimes |2lm\rangle_2 + |2lm\rangle_1 \otimes |100\rangle_2)}_{\Psi^+_{Orb}} && |s = 0, m_s = 0\rangle && \text{Singlet} \\ &\underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|100\rangle_1 \otimes |2lm\rangle_2 - |2lm\rangle_1 \otimes |100\rangle_2)}_{\Psi^-_{Orb}} && |s = 1, m_s \in \{0, \pm 1\}\rangle && \text{Triplet} \end{aligned} \tag{7.14}$$

These states are degenerate, if we do not take the electron-electron interaction into account, and have the following energy (in zeroth order)

$$E_0 = \left(-\frac{Z^2}{2 \cdot 1^2} - \frac{Z^2}{2 \cdot 2^2}\right) = -\frac{Z^2}{2}\left(1 + \frac{1}{4}\right) = -\frac{5}{2} \stackrel{\wedge}{=} -68.0\text{eV}$$

The energy depends neither on the spin state (singlet, triplet) nor on the angular momentum quantum numbers $(l, m)$. There are four spin states and for $n = 2$ there are four angular momentum quantum numbers ($l = 0, m = 0$) and ($l = 1, m =$

$0, \pm 1$). Thus, there is a sixteen-fold degeneracy. To estimate the energy correction in first order, we have to diagonalize $H_1$ in this subspace. However, we will see that the perturbation Hamiltonian is already diagonal in the states 7.14 . $H_1$ does not act on spin, therefore matrix elements of $H_1$

$$\Big(\langle\psi_{Orb}|\otimes\langle\psi_S|\Big)H_1\Big(|\psi'_{Orb}\rangle\otimes|\psi'_S\rangle\Big)=\langle\psi_{Orb}|H_1|\psi'_{Orb}\rangle\langle\,\psi_S|\psi'_S\rangle$$

are proportional to the overlap of spin states. The spin states are orthonormal, thus the perturbation term is diagonal in the spin quantum numbers.
Similar considerations apply to the orbital part: First observe that the states in 7.14 are eigenstates of $\mathbf{J}^2$ and $J^z$, where

$$\mathbf{J}=\mathbf{L_1}+\mathbf{L_2}$$

is the **total angular momentum.** Indeed, the product state

$$|100\rangle_1\otimes|2lm\rangle_2 \tag{7.15}$$

corresponds to the first particle having $l_1=0, m_1=0$ and the second $l_2=l, m_2=m$. Thus, since the first particle has no angular momentum at all, the total angular momentum is determined by the second particle. Therefore, 7.15 is a state with total angular momentum quantum numbers $j=l, j_z=m$. The same discussion holds for the state $|2lm\rangle_1|100\rangle_2$, and, consequently, for the linear combinations in 7.14 .
Now, observe that $H_1$ is invariant under rotations of the coordinate system (see 7.10 ), i.e. a scalar. Therefore (see also 6.31 ), we deduce that (i) it is diagonal in the states 7.14 and (ii) its expectation value depends on $l$ **but not on** $m$. In other words, the states are already adapted to the symmetry of the perturbation and we only need to evaluate the diagonal terms (cf. 7.14 ):

$$\begin{aligned}
&\langle\Psi^{\pm}_{Orb}|H_1|\Psi^{\pm}_{Orb}\rangle\langle\Psi^{S/T}_S|\Psi^{S/T}_S\rangle=\langle\Psi^{\pm}_{Orb}|H_1|\Psi^{\pm}_{Orb}\rangle\\
=\;&\frac{1}{2}\Big(\langle100|_1\otimes\langle2lm|_2\Big)H_1\Big(|100\rangle_1\otimes|2lm\rangle_2\Big)\\
+\;&\frac{1}{2}\Big(\langle2lm|_1\otimes\langle100|_2\Big)H_1\Big(|2lm\rangle_1\otimes|100\rangle_2\Big)\\
\pm\;&2\cdot\frac{1}{2}\Big(\langle2lm|_1\otimes\langle100|_2\Big)H_1\Big(|100\rangle_1\otimes|2lm\rangle_2\Big)
\end{aligned}\tag{7.16}$$

which will not depend on $m$. The first two terms are equal, the factor 2 occurring in the third term is due to the equality of the mixed terms. We obtain, for details

see here : Sec. A.24 :

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \underbrace{\int |\varphi_{100}(\mathbf{r}_1)|^2 \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1-\mathbf{r}_2|} |\varphi_{2lm}(\mathbf{r}_2)|^2 d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2}_{\text{classical Coulomb interaction}} \\
&\pm \underbrace{\int \varphi^*_{2lm}(\mathbf{r}_1)\varphi_{100}(\mathbf{r}_1)\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1-\mathbf{r}_2|}\varphi^*_{100}(\mathbf{r}_2)\varphi_{2lm}(\mathbf{r}_2) d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2}_{\text{Exchange interaction}} \qquad (7.17) \\
&=: C_l \pm A_l
\end{aligned}
$$

$C_l$ originates from the electrostatic Coulomb interaction and corresponds to the term causing a first $l$-dependent energy shift. The exchange term $A_l$ describes another quantum phenomenon. It is caused by the interference of the different involved orbital states. The integral in 7.17 gives $A_l > 0$. Therefore, **the spin singlet state (symmetric orbital part) is raised energetically, whereas the spin triplet state (antisymmetric orbital part) is lowered by $A_l$.** This can be qualitatively understood: For an antisymmetric orbital state, the probability to find both electrons very close to each other is strongly reduced. Thus, the Coulomb repulsion is small. For a symmetric orbital state, the opposite is true. Contrary to the ground state, the lowest excited state is a spin triplet, since it is energetically favorable to have an antisymmetric orbital part. Even though there is no spin interaction in $H$, the spin-dependent splitting comes into play due to Fermi statistics.

This **exchange interaction** is in many cases responsible for **collective magnetism** in some ferromagnetic materials. A similar mechanism leads to **Hund's rules.** By calculating the integrals in 7.17 , we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
E^{(1)}_{1s,2s} &= C_s \pm A_s &&= 11.4eV \pm 1.2eV && (7.18a) \\
E^{(1)}_{1s,2p} &= C_p \pm A_p &&= 13.2eV \pm 0.9eV \quad . && (7.18b)
\end{aligned}
$$

By adding the zero-order energy ($-68.0$eV), we get the total energy

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{1s,2s} &= -56.6eV \pm 1.2eV && \text{Exp: } -58.8eV \pm 0.4eV && (7.19a) \\
E_{1s,2p} &= -54.8eV \pm 0.9eV && \text{Exp: } -57.9eV \pm 0.1eV \quad . && (7.19b)
\end{aligned}
$$

The degeneracy is lifted for the spin $s$ (singlet-triplet) as well as for the angular momentum quantum number $l$ (s-,p-Orbitals). Only the degeneracy for $m_s$ and $m$ survives due to the rotation invariance in spin and position space. The quantitative agreement between experiments and first-order perturbation theory is not perfect.

Nevertheless, two important effects can be qualitatively explained: (i) singlet-triplet splitting of the energy levels (ii) The splitting for the $2s$ state is larger than for the $2p$ state.
The energy levels are outlined in figure 7.4.

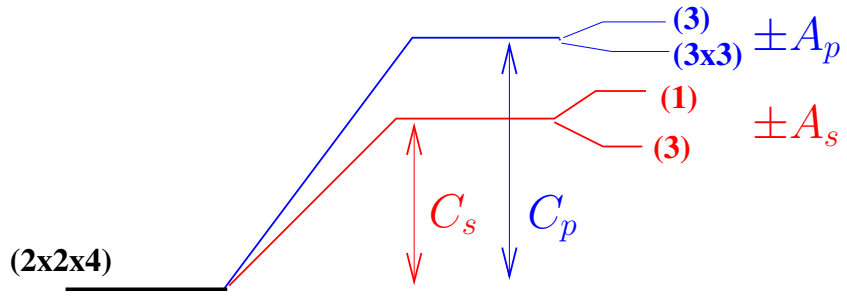



Figure 7.4: Energy splitting of excited states for helium. In parentheses the degeneracies.

# Chapter 8

# Field quantisation

## 8.1 Continuum systems: classical treatment

On the way to the concept of photons, we have to figure out how to quantize fields, i.e. continuum variables of position $x$ and time $t$. As a first example, we consider a vibrating string. We start by summarizing some of the classical results. See e.g. the lecture "Theoretische Mechanik" by E. Arrigoni with lecture notes here. The notation here may be slightly different.
The vertical displacement $u(x,t)$ of an infinitesimal string segment at horizontal position $x$ along the string ($0 < x < L$) obeys the equation of motion

$$c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \,. \tag{8.1}$$

This equation can be obtained from the corresponding **Lagrange functional**

$$\mathscr{L}[\dot{u},u,t] = \int_0^L \ell(u(x,t),u'(x,t),\dot{u}(x,t),x,t)\, dx \tag{8.2}$$

with the **Lagrange density**

$$\ell(u(x,t),u'(x,t),\dot{u}(x,t),x,t) = \frac{\rho}{2}\left(\dot{u}^2 - c^2\, u'^2\right) \,. \tag{8.3}$$

Here, $\rho$ is the mass density of the string, and

$$\dot{u} \equiv \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \qquad u' \equiv \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \,.$$

The Hamilton (minimal action) principle leads to the continuum Euler equations of motion[1]

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \dot{u}} + \frac{d}{dx}\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial u'} = \frac{\partial \ell}{\partial u} \tag{8.4}$$

[1] Here the "total derivatives" $\frac{d}{dt}$ and $\frac{d}{dx}$ are meant in the sense that one takes into account the dependence of $u$ on $x$ and $t$.

which can be easily shown to give the EOM 8.1 .
Equation 8.4 can be obtained by discretising the values of $x$ to $x_i$, with spacing $\Delta x$. Then $\mathscr{L}$ can be seen as a function of the $u_i \equiv u(x_i)$ and $\dot{u}_i$. In the continuum ($\Delta x \to 0$) limit, the usual (discrete) Lagrange II equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial \mathscr{L}}{\partial \dot{u}_i} = \frac{\partial \mathscr{L}}{\partial u_i} \tag{8.5}$$

can be shown to go over to 8.4 . One way to prove this ((proof here): Sec. A.25 ) is to start from a discrete version of 8.2 :

$$\mathscr{L} = \Delta x \sum_i \ell(u_i, u_i', \dot{u}_i, x_i, t) \tag{8.6}$$

## 8.2 Quantisation

The starting point for quantising a set of independent discrete variables $u_i$ is to identify their canonical momenta $p_i$, and assuming commutation rules between the variables and their momenta

$$[\hat{u}_i, \hat{p}_j] = i\hbar\, \delta_{ij} \,. \tag{8.7}$$

We thus need the canonical momenta. Once we have the Lagrange function, we know from classical mechanics that the $p_i$ are given by

$$p_i = \frac{\partial \mathscr{L}}{\partial \dot{u}_i} \,.$$

Thus, for the present case 8.6

$$p_i = \Delta x \, \frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \dot{u}_i}$$

Introducing the **momentum field**

$$\pi(x_i) = \frac{p_i}{\Delta x} = \frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \dot{u}(x_i)} \,, \tag{8.8}$$

which in this case 8.3 equals $\rho\dot{u}$, the commutation rules 8.7 become

$$\begin{aligned} [\hat{u}_i, \hat{\pi}_j] &= i\hbar \frac{\delta_{ij}}{\Delta x} \underset{\Delta x \to 0}{\Rightarrow} \\ [\hat{u}(x), \hat{\pi}(x')] &= i\hbar\, \delta(x - x') \,. \end{aligned} \tag{8.9}$$

The commutators of the $u$ among themselves, as well as those of the $\pi$, vanish:

$$[\hat{u}(x),\hat{u}(x')] = [\hat{\pi}(x),\hat{\pi}(x')] = 0\,. \tag{8.10}$$

8.8 with 8.9 and 8.10 determine the quantisation of the field $u$.
The Hamilton function is obtained as usual from the Legendre transformation. Replacing classical fields with their operators yields the Hamilton operator

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{H} &= \int \dot{u}(x)\hat{\pi}(x)\,dx - \mathscr{L} \equiv \int \hat{h}\left(\hat{\pi}(x),\hat{u}(x)\right)\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^L \left[\frac{1}{\rho}\left(\hat{\pi}(x)\right)^2 + c^2\,\rho\,\left(\frac{d\hat{u}(x)}{dx}\right)^2\right] dx\end{aligned} \tag{8.11}$$

with the Hamiltonian density $\hat{h}$.
This example summarizes the **generic procedure** (which we will use later for other cases) **to quantize a field**

- Determine the Lagrange density (here 8.3 ) which gives the correct classical wave equation
- With 8.8 determine the canonical momenta $\pi(x)$
- Postulate the commutation rules 8.9 (which correspond to the classical Poisson brackets)
- Write the Hamiltonian in terms of the $\hat{\pi}$ and $\hat{u}$. This will determine the quantum mechanical time evolution in the usual way.

After quantising the field, we have to solve the problem i.e. first put the

### 8.2.1 Hamiltonian 8.11 in diagonal form

In order to carry out calculations it is convenient to bring the Hamiltonian 8.11 in diagonal form. This is achieved by starting from the set of classical solutions of the homogeneous wave equation

$$u(x,t) = U_n(x)\,\cos(\omega_n t)$$

In the present case, $U_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin(k_n x)$ and $\omega_n = ck_n$ with $k_n = \pi n/L$. The important point is that the $U_n(x)$ form a complete orthonormal basis with the usual properties

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^L U_n(x)\,U_m(x)\,dx &= \delta_{n,m} \\ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} U_n(x)U_n(x') &= \delta(x-x')\,.\end{aligned} \tag{8.12}$$

One can use these relations to introduce new operators

$$\hat{q}_m = \int_0^L U_m(x)\, \hat{u}(x)\, dx \tag{8.13}$$

$$\hat{p}_m = \int_0^L U_m(x)\, \hat{\pi}(x)\, dx\,. \tag{8.14}$$

The inverse relations read

$$\hat{u}(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} U_n(x)\hat{q}_n$$

$$\hat{\pi}(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} U_n(x)\, \hat{p}_n \tag{8.15}$$

It is straightforward to show (see here): Sec. A.25 that the $\hat{q}_m$ and $\hat{p}_m$ obey canonical commutation rules

$$[\hat{q}_m, \hat{p}_{m'}] = i\hbar\delta_{m,m'} \qquad [\hat{q}_m, \hat{q}_{m'}] = [\hat{p}_m, \hat{p}_{m'}] = 0 \tag{8.16}$$

The Hamiltonian in terms of these operators has a particularly simple form (see here): Sec. A.25:

$$\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_n \left(\frac{1}{\rho}\hat{p}_n^2 + \rho\ \omega_n^2\ \hat{q}_n^2\right)\,. \tag{8.17}$$

with $\omega_n = ck_n$.
This is the Hamilton operator of a set of uncoupled harmonic oscillators with mass $\rho$ and frequencies $\omega_n$. The solution goes via the usual ladder operators:

$$\hat{b}_n^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\sqrt{\frac{\rho\,\omega_n}{\hbar}}\ \hat{q}_n - i\frac{1}{\sqrt{\hbar\rho\,\omega_n}}\ \hat{p}_n\right) \tag{8.18}$$

$$\hat{b}_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\sqrt{\frac{\rho\,\omega_n}{\hbar}}\ \hat{q}_n + i\frac{1}{\sqrt{\hbar\rho\,\omega_n}}\ \hat{p}_n\right)\,.$$

with the known commutation relations

$$[\hat{b}_n, \hat{b}_m] = 0 \tag{8.19}$$

$$[\hat{b}_n^\dagger, \hat{b}_m^\dagger] = 0$$

$$[\hat{b}_n, \hat{b}_m^\dagger] = \delta_{nm}\,.$$

It is customary to omit the ˆ from these ladder operators, which we are going to do in the following.

The Hamiltonian finally becomes

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \hbar\omega_n \left( b_n^\dagger b_n + \frac{1}{2} \right) .$$

Its eigenstates can be written in terms of the set of quantum numbers $\{N_n, n = 1, 2, \cdots\}$ of each one of the harmonic oscillators as

$$|N_1, N_2, \cdots\rangle . \tag{8.20}$$

where each $N_n$ can be $0, 1, \cdots, \infty$.
These states have the same structure as the states of the many-particle Fock space 7.6 . The scalar product is the same as 7.7 .
The interesting aspect of this result is that we started from a field, whose excitations are **waves**, and we come out with a description in which the wave modes are similar to **particles**. This is an important characteristic of quantum mechanics in which, on the one hand, particles are described by waves but also the opposite waves are described by particles. For the vibrating string considered here (or for elastic waves in a solid) these quanta are the phonons; for the electromagnetic field, treated in Chap. 10, they are the photons. The quantum number $N_n$ is then interpreted as the number of such particles in mode $n$, which is the key to the occupation-number formalism of the next chapter.

### 8.2.2 Creation and destruction operators

From the Bachelor Quantum Mechanics course, we already know the properties of the ladder operators $b_n$ and $b_n^\dagger$. Acting on the basis states they have the properties of increasing or decreasing the excitations:

$$\begin{aligned} b_n^\dagger \; |N_1, N_2, \cdots N_n, \cdots\rangle &= \sqrt{N_n + 1}\, |N_1, N_2, \cdots (N_n + 1), \cdots\rangle , \\ b_n \; |N_1, N_2, \cdots N_n, \cdots\rangle &= \sqrt{N_n}\, |N_1, N_2, \cdots (N_n - 1), \cdots\rangle . \end{aligned} \tag{8.21}$$

Obviously the same operators with the same properties can be formally introduced for a bosonic Fock space. They are completely defined by their commutation rules 8.19 and, due to their property 8.21 of creating and destroying particles, are termed **creation and destruction (or annihilation) operators**.
One important composite operator is the **number operator** $b_n^\dagger b_n$ which counts the number of particles in level $n$:

$$b_n^\dagger b_n \; |N_1, N_2, \cdots N_n, \cdots\rangle = N_n \, |N_1, N_2, \cdots N_n, \cdots\rangle \tag{8.22}$$

# Chapter 9

# Second quantisation

## 9.1 Quantisation of the Schrödinger field

We could now consider the wave function in the Schrödinger equation, also known as SCHRÖDINGER FIELD, as a classical field, and adopt the procedure described in Chap. 8 to quantise it. Since the system is somewhat quantised twice, this is referred to as **Second Quantisation**. A more correct term is **Field Quantisation**.

The goal is to introduce a formalism to treat states with many identical particles in a more compact way.
(i) As in Sec. 8 we will introduce creation and destruction operators which change the number of bosonic or fermionic particles.
(ii) Operators, such as the Hamilton operator, but also other operators (observables) will be written in terms of these operators.
(iii) Many-body states will be constructed by creating particles on top of a state without particles, the vacuum state.
(iv) The second quantisation formalism provides an alternative to the one of Sec. 7, whereby many-body states are written as symmetrized/antisymmetrized wave functions. Of course physical quantities, i.e. the expectation values of operators will be the same when evaluated with the two formalisms. We will not derive an exact proof but illustrate it for some examples.

To achieve this we need to carry out the same procedure described in Sec. 8.2 but for another wave equation. Instead of the wave equation for an elastic string 8.1 , we will consider the Schrödinger equation and quantize the corresponing field.

### 9.1.1 Lagrangian of the Schrödinger field

Starting from the Schrödinger equation of a single particle in a potential $V(x)$,

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2\Psi + V(\mathbf{x})\Psi = i\hbar\dot{\Psi}\,.$$

we can consider the real and the imaginary part as independent fields since $\Psi$ and $\Psi^*$ are complex functions of $\mathbf{x}$ and $t$. Another possibility is to take $\Psi$ and $\Psi^*$ as independent fields.
We are looking for a Lagrangian, which produces the Schrödinger equation via the Lagrange II equations. A possible form satisfying this is easily seen to be

$$\mathscr{L} = \int \Psi^* \left[ i\hbar\dot{\Psi} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2\Psi - V(\mathbf{x})\Psi \right] d^3x\,. \tag{9.1}$$

The Lagrange II equations are now evaluated with respect to $\Psi^*$. The canonical momentum for $\Psi^*$ vanishes, due to

$$\tilde{\pi} := \frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\dot{\Psi}^*} = 0\,. \tag{9.2}$$

Therefore we have

$$0 = \frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\Psi^*} = i\hbar\dot{\Psi} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2\Psi - V(\mathbf{x})\Psi$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad i\hbar\dot{\Psi} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2\Psi + V(\mathbf{x})\Psi\,.$$

This is indeed the Schrödinger equation. We now derive the Lagrangian II equation with respect to the second independent variable $\Psi$. The canonical momentum is (see 9.1 )

$$\pi := \frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\dot{\Psi}} = i\hbar\Psi^*(\mathbf{x},t) \tag{9.3}$$

and the Lagrangian II equation gives the complex conjugate Schrödinger equation (proof here: Sec. A.26 ). As usual, we obtain the Hamilton function by a Legendre transformation. With 9.1 , we get

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \int \Bigg( \overbrace{\frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\dot{\Psi}^*}}^{\overset{9.2}{=}\,0}\dot{\Psi}^* + \overbrace{\frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\dot{\Psi}}}^{\overset{9.3}{=}\,i\hbar\Psi^*}\dot{\Psi} - \overbrace{\mathscr{L}}^{9.1} \Bigg) d^3x \\ &= \int \left( i\hbar\Psi^*\dot{\Psi} - i\hbar\Psi^*\dot{\Psi} - \Psi^*\left[\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 - V(\mathbf{x})\right]\Psi \right) d^3x\,. \end{aligned}$$

The first two terms cancel out and therefore we get the Hamilton function

$$H = \int \Psi^* \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V(\mathbf{x}) \right] \Psi \, d^3x \, . \tag{9.4}$$

Despite the fact that the Lagrangian is not symmetric between $\Psi$ and $\Psi^*$, we obtained a symmetric form of the Hamilton function. We recognize this as the expectation value of the Hamiltonian for a single particle.

$$H = \langle \Psi | \hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} | \Psi \rangle \tag{9.5}$$

Here the subscript $_{\mathrm{FQ1}}$ has been introduced in order to label an operator for a particle in first quantisation, in contrast to operators in second quantisation, labeled below by $_{\mathrm{SQ}}$
Up to now, $\Psi$ and $\Psi^*$ were classical fields. As next step, we are going to quantise them.

### 9.1.2 Quantisation

We use the relation 9.3 $\pi = i\hbar\Psi^*$ to find the canonical momentum to $\Psi$. We replace both fields with field operators and we require as before

$$[\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\pi}(\mathbf{x}')] = i\hbar\delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}') \, . \tag{9.6}$$

This results in

$$[\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')] = \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}') \, . \tag{9.7}$$

Additionally we require that $\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})$ and $\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})$ commute with each other.

$$[\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')] = 0 \tag{9.8a}$$

$$[\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')] = 0 \, . \tag{9.8b}$$

Similarly to Chap. 8, we expand the field operators in terms of the stationary solutions of the field equation, i.e. the eigenfunctions of the Schrödinger equation $\varphi_n(\mathbf{x})$ with operator coefficients $\hat{b}_n$.

$$\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_n \hat{b}_n \varphi_n(\mathbf{x}) \tag{9.9}$$

$$\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_n \hat{b}_n^\dagger \varphi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) \, .$$

The canonical commutation rules for the fields, 9.6 and 9.7 , become for the operators $b_n$ (we will omit the $\hat{}$ for $b_n$) proof here: Sec. A.28 :

$$[b_n, b_m^\dagger] = \delta_{n,m} \tag{9.10a}$$
$$[b_n, b_m] = 0 \tag{9.10b}$$
$$[b_n^\dagger, b_m^\dagger] = 0\,. \tag{9.10c}$$

Since we quantised the wave functions, the Hamilton function becomes the Hamiltonian operator proof here: Sec. A.28

HAMILTON OPERATOR IN SECOND QUANTISATION IN ITS EIGENBASIS

$$\hat{H}_{\mathrm{SQ}} = \int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) \underbrace{\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 + V(x)\right]}_{\hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}} \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\, d^3x_1 \tag{9.11a}$$
$$= \sum_n E_n b_n^\dagger b_n\,. \tag{9.11b}$$

As in Sec. 8 these kinds of "harmonic oscillator" operators $b_n^\dagger$ describe the creation of a particle in the eigenstate of the Hamiltonian ("level") with single-particle wave function $\varphi_n(\mathbf{x})$. The advantage of 9.11a is that one can create many (identical) particles with different wave functions. In first quantisation, this is only possible with a symmetrized function with more than one variable $\Psi(\mathbf{x}_1, \cdots, \mathbf{x}_n)$. The physical content of 9.11a is transparent: $b_n^\dagger b_n$ counts the number of particles in level $n$ (cf. 8.21 ), so the total energy is the sum of the level energies weighted by their occupations – exactly what one expects for noninteracting identical particles.
It is thus convenient to use the one-to-one correspondence with a quantum-mechanical system consisting of a set of harmonic oscillators. Its (unnormalized) eigenstates are

$$|\psi\rangle = \prod_n (b_n^\dagger)^{N_n} |0\rangle\,, \tag{9.12}$$

where $N_n$ is the occupation of the level $n$.
Here, $|0\rangle$ is the **vacuum state** with the following properties:

$$b_n|0\rangle = 0 \qquad \text{for all } n \tag{9.13}$$

and, due to 9.9

$$\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})|0\rangle = 0 \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \tag{9.14}$$

Alternatively to 9.9 one can expand the field operators in terms of an alternative set of orthonormal basis functions $\chi_n$.

$$\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_n \hat{c}_n \, \chi_n(\mathbf{x}) \qquad \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_n \hat{c}_n^\dagger \, \chi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) \, . \tag{9.15}$$

One can transform directly from the operators $b$ to $c$:

$$b_n = \sum_m U_{nm} \hat{c}_m \qquad b_n^\dagger = \sum_m U_{nm}^* \hat{c}_m^\dagger \, , \tag{9.16}$$

using the unitary matrix $U_{nm} = \int \varphi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) \chi_m(\mathbf{x}) \, d^3x$. This follows from 9.9 by multiplying from the left with $\varphi_n^*$ and integrating (Exercise).
The creation and destruction (or annihilation) operators $c_n^\dagger$ ($c_n$) (as for the operators $b$ we will omit the $\hat{}$ from now on) obey the same commutation rules as the operators $b$ due to the orthonormality of the basis. proof here: Sec. A.28 The Hamiltonian is no longer diagonal in the $c$ operators. Instead, we get for the

HAMILTONIAN IN SECOND QUANTISATION
FOR AN ARBITRARY ORTHONORMAL BASIS

$$\hat{H}_{\mathrm{SQ}} = \sum_{n,m} h_{n,m} c_n^\dagger c_m \tag{9.17}$$

with matrix elements

$$h_{n,m} = \int \chi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V(x) \right] \chi_m(\mathbf{x}) \, d^3x \tag{9.18}$$
$$= \langle \chi_n | \hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} | \chi_m \rangle \; :$$

One could think that the second quantisation leads to different physical results. This is not the case. Both formalisms are completely equivalent. However, second quantisation has several practical advantages, especially when dealing with many-particle systems. Moreover, second quantisation is more flexible for phenomena without a constant number of particles (e.g. annihilation and creation of photons).

## 9.2 Second quantisation for fermions

The form discussed in the previous section reproduces the **symmetry** of the wave function (particle statistics), which is valid for bosons. To describe fermions, which have an **antisymmetric** wave function we have to use different creation and destruction operators. As an example, we consider a state with two fermionic particles in two levels $|\varphi_{\mathbf{q}}\rangle$ and $|\varphi_{\mathbf{q}'}\rangle$

$$|\Psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|\varphi_{\mathbf{q}}\rangle \otimes |\varphi_{\mathbf{q}'}\rangle - |\varphi_{\mathbf{q}'}\rangle \otimes |\varphi_{\mathbf{q}}\rangle\Big) .$$

In second quantisation, this state has the form

$$|\Psi\rangle = c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'} |0\rangle .$$

To ensure the correct antisymmetry, we clearly require

$$c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'} = -c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \{c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}, c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'}\} = 0$$

$$\text{with} \quad \{A,B\} := AB + BA \quad \text{(Anti-commutator)} .$$

For fermions we often have to consider spin ($\sigma = \pm 1$ this means the sign of one component, e.g. of $z$) . Therefore, in the above equations the level $|\varphi_{\mathbf{q}}\rangle$ describes both the spatial as well as the spin part of the wave function. In other words, we can use a convention whereby $\mathbf{q} \equiv (n,\sigma)$ describes both the orbital ($n$) quantum numbers as well as the spin projection.
Summarizing, for fermions the following anticommutation relations guarantee the description of a properly antisymmetrized wave function (we won't prove it)

$$\{c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}, c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'}\} = \{c_{\mathbf{q}}, c_{\mathbf{q}'}\} = 0$$
$$\{c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}, c_{\mathbf{q}'}\} = \delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}'} .$$

If we consider spin explicitly, we note that the delta splits into $\delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}'} = \delta_{n,n'}\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}$, leading to

ANTI-COMMUTATION RELATIONS FOR FERMIONS

$$\{c^\dagger_{n,\sigma}, c^\dagger_{m,\sigma'}\} = 0 \tag{9.19}$$
$$\{c_{n,\sigma}, c_{m,\sigma'}\} = 0 \tag{9.20}$$
$$\{c_{n,\sigma}, c^\dagger_{m,\sigma'}\} = \delta_{n,m}\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'} . \tag{9.21}$$

The Pauli principle is accounted for, since $(c^\dagger_{n,\sigma})^2 |0\rangle = 0$, i.e. one cannot have two fermions with the same $n$ and $\sigma$.
The **Hamiltonian in second quantisation for fermions** is analogous to the one for bosons. In the eigenbasis (cf. 9.11a ):

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{n,\sigma} E_{n\sigma}\, c^\dagger_{n,\sigma}\, c_{n,\sigma}$$

where $E_{n\sigma}$ is often independent of spin $\sigma$. Or for an arbitrary basis [1]

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{n,m,\sigma} h_{n,m}\, a^\dagger_{n,\sigma}\, a_{m,\sigma}\,,$$

where $a^\dagger_{n,\sigma}$,$a_{n,\sigma}$ have the same anticommutation rules 9.21 , and the matrix elements $h_{n,m}$ have the same expression as in 9.17 . As one can see, the difference is just the introduction of spin to label the single-particle state.
Also the many-particle eigenstates have the same form 9.12 as for bosons

$$|\psi\rangle = \prod_{n,\sigma} (c^\dagger_{n\sigma})^{N_{n\sigma}} |0\rangle\,, \tag{9.22}$$

where $N_{n\sigma}$ is the occupation of the level $n$ with spin $\sigma$, which, in contrast to bosons, can only take the values 0 or 1. The **vacuum state** $|0\rangle$ has the same properties as 9.13

$$c_{n\sigma}|0\rangle = 0 \qquad \text{for all } n, \sigma \tag{9.23}$$

The anticommutation rules guarantee that these fermionic states are automatically antisymmetrised.

## 9.3 Operators in second quantisation

The procedure to quantise fields described above consisted in starting from the Lagrange and Hamilton function (total energy), quantising the fields $\Psi$, and expanding them in terms of orthonormal solutions of the field equation with the coefficients (amplitudes) being operators. Based on this approach, arbitrary operators/observables can be translated into second quantisation.

### 9.3.1 Single particle operators

In first quantisation the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ}}$ of $N$ identical, non interacting particles is the sum of the Hamiltonians $\hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ}i}$ of each particle $i$

$$\hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ}} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ}i} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} H(\hat{\mathbf{r}}_i, \hat{\mathbf{p}}_i) \tag{9.24}$$

[1] we take a spin-independent Hamiltonian for simplicity

In second quantisation, this is replaced by the quantized Hamiltonian of the Schrödinger field. As discussed in 9.5 , the latter is composed of the Expectation value of the first-quantisation Hamiltonian (for one particle)

$$H_{\mathrm{SQ}} = \langle\Psi|\hat{H}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}|\Psi\rangle \,,$$

where the wave function $\Psi$ is quantized according to 9.7 and 9.8a for bosons, or the corresponding anticommutator expression including spin for fermions

$$\begin{aligned}
\{\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\Psi}^\dagger_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x}')\} &= \delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')\ \delta_{\sigma,\sigma'} \\
\{\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\Psi}_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x}')\} &= 0 \\
\{\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{x}), \hat{\Psi}^\dagger_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x}')\} &= 0 \,.
\end{aligned}$$

This procedure can be applied in the same way to arbitrary, so-called single-particle operators.
A single-particle operator is one, which has the form 9.24 in first quantisation, i.e. it is composed of an independent sum over all particles of the same operator acting on just one of the particles.

$$\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}i} \tag{9.25}$$

Terms describing interactions between the particles cannot be described by single-particle operators, and will be discussed below.
We apply the procedure of Sec. 9.1 to an arbitrary operator $\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}}$ in first quantisation generically expressed in the form 9.25 . The single operators $\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}i}$ can be, for example, expressed as functions of $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_i$ and $\hat{\mathbf{p}}_i = -i\hbar\nabla_i$, e.g. $\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}i} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}_i$.
As discussed in Sec. 9.1, we need the expectation value

$$\langle\Psi|\,\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}\,|\Psi\rangle = \int \Psi^*(\mathbf{x})\ \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}\ \Psi(\mathbf{x})\ d^3x \,.$$

Using the same procedure as for $\hat{H}$ this leads to

$$\hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} = \int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\ \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}\ \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\ d^3x \,. \tag{9.26}$$

As in 9.9 , we can expand the field operator into eigenfunctions $\varphi_n(\mathbf{x})$ of $\hat{H}$ (or in arbitrary orthogonal functions $\chi_n(\mathbf{x})$, as in 9.15 ) and get

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) &= \sum_n \varphi_n(\mathbf{x})\hat{b}_n \\
\hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} &= \sum_{n,m} \left( \int \varphi^*_n(\mathbf{x})\ \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}\ \varphi_m(\mathbf{x})\ d^3x \right) b^\dagger_n b_m \\
&= \sum_{n,m} \langle\varphi_n|\,\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}\,|\varphi_m\rangle\, b^\dagger_n b_m
\end{aligned}$$

i.e

$$\hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} = \sum_{n,m} O_{n,m}\, b_n^\dagger b_m \tag{9.27}$$
$$O_{n,m} = \langle \varphi_n | \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} | \varphi_m \rangle$$

9.27 provides the expression for an arbitrary (single-particle) operators in second quantisation in terms of creation and destruction operators.

**Summary: single-particle operators**

In general, for a system with $N$ identical particles a single-particle operator $\hat{O}$ has the form[2]

SINGLE-PARTICLE OPERATORS

$$\text{for} \quad \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} O_{\mathrm{FQ}i} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} O(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_i, \hat{\mathbf{p}}_i) \qquad \text{in first quantisation}$$
$$\hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} = \sum_{n,n'} O_{n,n'}\, b_n^\dagger b_{n'} \qquad \text{in second quantisation} \tag{9.28}$$
$$\text{with} \quad O_{n,n'} = \langle \varphi_n | \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} | \varphi_{n'} \rangle = \int \varphi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) O(\mathbf{x}, -i\hbar\boldsymbol{\nabla}) \varphi_{n'}(\mathbf{x}) d^3\mathbf{x}\,.$$

The many-body basis states are given in 9.12 . These bosonic states are automatically symmetrised.
For fermions we have in complete analogy, the only difference being spin

SINGLE PARTICLE OPERATORS FOR FERMIONS IN SQ

$$\hat{O} = \sum_{n,n',\sigma} O_{n,n'}\, c_{n,\sigma}^\dagger c_{n',\sigma}$$
$$O_{n,n'} = \langle \varphi_n | \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} | \varphi_{n'} \rangle = \int \varphi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) O(\mathbf{x}, -i\hbar\boldsymbol{\nabla}) \varphi_{n'}(\mathbf{x}) d^3\mathbf{x}\,. \tag{9.29}$$

[2] Again: $\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}i}$ is the first quantisation operator for just particle $i$, while $\hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ}}$ is the sum over all particles of that operator

With many-body states 9.22 .

### Useful rules for (anti) commutators

When working in second quantisation one often has to carry out commutators or anticommutators between operators consisting of product of creation and destruction operators. In this case, the (possibly repeated) application of these relations can be useful. The proof is here: Sec. A.30

$$\begin{aligned}[a\,b,c] &= \\ &= a[b,c]+[a,c]b \\ &= a\{b,c\}-\{a,c\}b\end{aligned} \tag{9.30}$$

$$\begin{aligned}[c,a\,b] &= \\ &= [c,a]b+a[c,b] \\ &= \{c,a\}b-a\{c,b\}\end{aligned} \tag{9.31}$$

### Equivalence between FQ and SQ for single-particle operators

As discussed above, second quantisation is just an alternative formalism to deal with many-particle systems in an efficient way. Of course, the requirement is that first (FQ) and second (SQ) quantisation should give the same physical results. In other words, expectation values of corresponding operators must coincide in the two formalisms.
To evaluate expectation values of operators in FQ one has first to symmetrize (or antisymmetrize) the wave function, as discussed in Chap. 7, which for more than two or three particles becomes quite laborious.
In second quantisation (anti)-symmetrisation is not necessary, as it is automatically taken care of by states of the form 9.12 .
We will not prove systematically the equivalence of FQ and SQ here. This would be a lengthy procedure. We refer to the abundant literature. However, we will illustrate this for simple examples. This gives us the opportunity to exercise a bit with creation and destruction operators.

We consider an arbitrary single-particle operator $\hat{O}$, e.g. the position operator $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$. For a particle with wave function $\varphi_\nu(\mathbf{x})$, the expectation value of $\hat{O}$ in first quantisation is given by

$$\langle \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} \rangle = \int \varphi_\nu^*(\mathbf{x})\ \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}}\ \varphi_\nu(\mathbf{x})\ d\mathbf{x}\,.$$

In second quantisation, the state has the following form [3]

$$|\varphi_\nu\rangle = b_\nu^\dagger |0\rangle$$

and the expectation value of the operator 9.27 becomes

$$\langle \hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} \rangle = \sum_{n,m} O_{n,m} \langle 0 | b_\nu b_n^\dagger b_m b_\nu^\dagger | 0 \rangle \tag{9.32}$$

To evaluate this, we first deal with the right hand side of 9.32 :

$$b_m b_\nu^\dagger |0\rangle = \pm b_\nu^\dagger \underbrace{b_m |0\rangle}_{0} + \underbrace{[b_m, b_\nu^\dagger]_\mp}_{\delta_{m,\nu}} |0\rangle = \delta_{m,\nu} |0\rangle$$

Here and below, the upper sign is for bosons and the lower for fermions. Moreover, we have defined $[A,B]_\mp \equiv AB \mp BA$ as the commutator/anticommutator. Another way to obtain this result is to interpret the state $b_\nu^\dagger |0\rangle$ as a "single particle in level $\nu$". $b_m$ destroys a particle in level $m$: if $m \neq \nu$ this results in "nothing" (0), otherwise, if $m = \nu$, we arrive at the vacuum state (state without particles).
The left hand side is evaluated by using the hermitian conjugate, which results in a similar expression as above (see 9.47 ):

$$\langle 0 | b_\nu b_n^\dagger = \left( b_n b_\nu^\dagger |0\rangle \right)^\dagger = \left( \delta_{n,\nu} |0\rangle \right)^\dagger = \delta_{n,\nu} \langle 0 |$$

In total, 9.32 results in

$$\langle \hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} \rangle = \sum_{n,m} O_{n,m} \delta_{n,\nu} \delta_{m,\nu} \langle 0 | 0 \rangle = O_{\nu,\nu} = \int \varphi_\nu^* \, \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} \, \varphi_\nu(\mathbf{x}) \, d\mathbf{x} \, .$$

This is also what is expected in first quantisation. First and second quantisation lead to the same result.
More interesting is the case of a state with more than one particle in second quantisation. Here, several levels are occupied, e.g. for two particles:

$$|\varphi_\nu, \varphi_\mu\rangle = \frac{1}{Z_{\nu\mu}} b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle \, .$$

The normalisation constant $Z_{\nu\mu}$ can be determined by analogy with a system of harmonic oscillators. For $\nu = \mu$ (only possible for bosons), we have $Z_{\nu\nu} = \sqrt{2}$. For $\nu \neq \mu$ the state corresponds to having two "oscillators" in the first excited state. Here the normalisation constant is[4] $Z_{\nu\mu} = 1 \cdot 1 = 1$.

[3] Also valid for fermions, whereby spin is included in the index $\nu$.

[4] The normalisation constant can be also determined explicitly by carrying out the scalar product of the state with itself. (see here for bosons): Sec. A.29

The expectation value of an arbitrary single-particle operator (cf. 9.27 ) in this state becomes

$$\langle \hat{O}_{\rm SQ} \rangle = \frac{1}{Z^2_{\nu\mu}} \sum_{nm} O_{nm} \, \langle 0 | b_\mu b_\nu b_n^\dagger b_m b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger | 0 \rangle \tag{9.33}$$

As before, we first consider the right-hand side of the expectation value. We want to end up having the annihilation operator $b_m$ on the right, in order to destroy the vacuum state.

$$\begin{aligned} b_m b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle &= \pm b_\nu^\dagger b_m b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle + \delta_{m,\nu} b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle \\ &= b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger \underbrace{b_m |0\rangle}_{=0} \pm \delta_{m,\mu} b_\nu^\dagger |0\rangle + \delta_{m,\nu} b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle \\ &= \pm \delta_{m,\mu} b_\nu^\dagger |0\rangle + \delta_{m,\nu} b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle \; . \end{aligned} \tag{9.34}$$

This result can be understood in the following way: $b_m$ should destroy a particle in level $m$. If there is no particle in $m$, the result is 0, otherwise the other particle in the initial state remains. In the case of fermions there is an additional minus sign depending on which of the two particles has been destroyed.
The left-hand side is again evaluated by using the hermitian conjugate of the right-hand side:

$$\langle 0 | b_\mu b_\nu b_n^\dagger = \langle 0 | b_\mu \delta_{n,\nu} \pm \langle 0 | b_\nu \delta_{n,\mu} \; .$$

We now distinguish the cases $\nu = \mu$ and $\nu \neq \mu$. For $\nu = \mu$ 9.34 becomes [5]

$$b_m {b_\nu^\dagger}^2 |0\rangle = 2 \delta_{m,\nu} b_\nu^\dagger \, |0\rangle$$

using $\langle 0 | \, b_\nu \, b_\nu^\dagger \, |0\rangle = 1$ this results in

$$\langle 0 | b_\nu^2 b_n^\dagger \, b_m {b_\nu^\dagger}^2 |0\rangle = 4 \delta_{n,\nu} \delta_{m,\nu}$$

so that 9.33 becomes

$$\langle \hat{O}_{\rm SQ} \rangle = \frac{4}{2} O_{\nu,\nu} = 2 \, O_{\nu,\nu} \; .$$

For $\nu \neq \mu$ using 9.34 and its hermitian conjugate as well as $\langle 0 | b_\nu b_\mu^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \delta_{\nu\mu}$

$$\langle 0 | b_\mu b_\nu b_n^\dagger \, b_m b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \delta_{n,\nu} \delta_{m,\nu} + \delta_{n,\mu} \delta_{m,\mu}$$

[5] This is valid for bosons only. For fermions this becomes zero, which is understandable since $\nu = \mu$ is not allowed by Pauli principle

(notice that the fermionic sign cancels out), and 9.33 becomes

$$\langle \hat{O}_{\mathrm{SQ}} \rangle = O_{\nu,\nu} + O_{\mu,\mu}$$

These are results we would obtain in first quantisation for two particles in the (anti-)symmetrized states

$$|\Psi\rangle = |\varphi_\nu\rangle \otimes |\varphi_\nu\rangle \qquad \text{for bosons only}$$

or

$$|\Psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \Big( |\varphi_\nu\rangle \otimes |\varphi_\mu\rangle \pm |\varphi_\mu\rangle \otimes |\varphi_\nu\rangle \Big)$$

To evaluate this in first quantisation, we should have used the respective operators in first quantisation for two particles

$$\hat{O} = \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ1}} + \hat{O}_{\mathrm{FQ2}} \, .$$

**Physical meaning of the field operator $\hat{\Psi}$**

The probability density $\rho(\mathbf{x})$ at the position $\mathbf{x}$ in first quantisation becomes the **particle density operator** in second quantisation.

$$\hat{\rho}(\mathbf{x}) \equiv \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{9.35}$$

In this way, one can show that the **operator $\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})$ creates a particle at the position x**. This means that

$$|\mathbf{x}\rangle \equiv \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\,|0\rangle \tag{9.36}$$

becomes a state with one particle in $\mathbf{x}$ (with a delta-wave function). In order to prove this, we show that $|\mathbf{x}\rangle$ is an eigenstate of the density 9.35

**Proof:**

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\rho}(\mathbf{y})\,|\mathbf{x}\rangle =& \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{y})\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{y})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\,|0\rangle \\
=& \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{y}) \Big( \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{y}) + \delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}) \Big) |0\rangle = \delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{y})\,|0\rangle \\
=& \delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\,|0\rangle = \delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})\,|\mathbf{x}\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, including spin for fermions it is straightforward to show that

$$\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x})\,|0\rangle$$

is an eigenstate of the density for one spin direction

$$\hat{\rho}_\sigma(\mathbf{y}) \equiv \hat{\Psi}^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{y})\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{y})$$

with eigenvalue $\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}\delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})$. In this case the **total density operator** is obtained by summing over spin:

$$\hat{\rho}(\mathbf{y}) \equiv \sum_\sigma \hat{\Psi}^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{y})\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{y})$$

We will need it later.

### 9.3.2 Two-particle operators

In addition to the single-particle operators that describe, in an Hamiltonian, the kinetic energy and the interaction with external potentials, two-particle operators also play an important role. Two-particle operators describe the interaction between particles expressed as a sum of interactions between pairs of particles.
One of the most important examples is the Coulomb interaction. To determine its second quantisation expression, we start from the classical form of the interaction between two charge densities $\rho_1(\mathbf{x})$ and $\rho_2(\mathbf{x}')$

$$\begin{aligned} H_{int} &= \int\int \rho_1(\mathbf{x}) V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') \rho_2(\mathbf{x}') d^3\mathbf{x} d^3\mathbf{x}' \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\int\int \rho(\mathbf{x}) V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') \rho(\mathbf{x}') d^3\mathbf{x} d^3\mathbf{x}' - \textit{self-energy}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{9.37}$$

where we use the total charge density $\rho(\mathbf{x}) = \rho_1(\mathbf{x}) + \rho_2(\mathbf{x})$, as the two charges are indistinguishable. The factor $1/2$ compensates for the double counting and the *self-energy* term subtracts the interaction energy $\rho_1(\mathbf{x})\rho_1(\mathbf{x}')$ of a charge with itself. We now replace the particle density with the corresponding operator in second quantisation (we don't consider spin for the moment).

$$\hat{\rho}(\mathbf{x}) = \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{9.38}$$

and get [6]

$$\hat{H}_{int} = \frac{1}{2}\int\int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}') d^3\mathbf{x} d^3\mathbf{x}' - \textit{self-energy}\,. \tag{9.39}$$

The subtraction of the self energy term can be taken into account by requiring that the interaction vanishes if less than two particles are present, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{H}_{int}|0\rangle &= 0 \\ \hat{H}_{int}\, b_l^\dagger|0\rangle &= 0\,. \end{aligned}$$

In second quantisation this requirement is naturally achieved by "normal ordering" creation and destruction operators. This means that all destruction operators are moved to the right and all creation operators to the left. We obtain:

[6] From now on, for simplicity we will omit the explicit subscript $_{SQ}$. So all operators will be understood to be in second quantisation, unless specified with the $_{FQ}$ subscript.

INTERACTION PART OF THE HAMILTONIAN IN SECOND QUANTISATION IN TERMS OF FIELD OPERATORS (CF. 9.39 )

$$\text{for} \quad \hat{H}_{int\,\mathrm{FQ}} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i\neq j=1}^{N} V(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_i,\hat{\mathbf{x}}_j) \qquad \text{in FQ} \tag{9.40}$$

$$\hat{H}_{int} = \frac{1}{2}\int\int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})d^3\mathbf{x}d^3\mathbf{x}' \qquad \text{in SQ}\,.$$

By introducing an arbitrary single-particle basis $\varphi_n(\mathbf{x})$ as in 9.9 and by using 9.40 we obtain

INTERACTION PART OF THE HAMILTONIAN IN SECOND QUANTISATION IN ARBITRARY SINGLE-PARTICLE BASIS

$$\hat{H}_{int} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n_1,n_2,n_3,n_4} V_{\underline{n}}\, b^\dagger_{n_1} b^\dagger_{n_2} b_{n_3} b_{n_4} \tag{9.41}$$

$$V_{\underline{n}} = \int\int \varphi^*_{n_1}(\mathbf{x})\varphi^*_{n_2}(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\varphi_{n_3}(\mathbf{x}')\varphi_{n_4}(\mathbf{x})\; d^3\mathbf{x}\, d^3\mathbf{x}'$$
$$= {}_1\langle\varphi_{n_1}|\;{}_2\langle\varphi_{n_2}|V(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_1,\hat{\mathbf{x}}_2)|\varphi_{n_4}\rangle_1\,|\varphi_{n_3}\rangle_2\;.$$

### 9.3.3 Two-particle operators for fermions

The expressions above are in principle also valid for fermions, if spin can be omitted. The form of the interaction is the same as for bosons, 9.39 . Taking into account spin the density is given by

$$\hat{\rho}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_\sigma \Psi^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\Psi_\sigma(x)$$

This means that in the two densities in 9.37 one has to sum independently over spin. Therefore, 9.40 becomes for fermions (see also Fig. 9.1)

$$\hat{H}_{int} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma_A,\sigma_B}\int\int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger_{\sigma_A}(\mathbf{x})\;\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_{\sigma_B}(\mathbf{x}')\;V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\;\hat{\Psi}_{\sigma_B}(\mathbf{x}')\;\hat{\Psi}_{\sigma_A}(\mathbf{x})\;d^3\mathbf{x}\,d^3\mathbf{x}'$$

The interaction Hamiltonian 9.41 then acquires a similar form, including spin.

INTERACTION PART OF THE HAMILTONIAN FOR FERMIONS WITH SPIN

$$H_{int} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n_1,n_2,n_3,n_4} \sum_{\sigma_A,\sigma_B} V_{\underline{n}}\, c^\dagger_{n_1,\sigma_A}\, c^\dagger_{n_2,\sigma_B}\, c_{n_3,\sigma_B}\, c_{n_4,\sigma_A} \tag{9.42}$$

$$V_{n_1,n_2,n_3,n_4} = \int\int \varphi^*_{n_1}(\mathbf{x})\varphi^*_{n_2}(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\varphi_{n_3}(\mathbf{x}')\varphi_{n_4}(\mathbf{x})\, d^3\mathbf{x}\, d^3\mathbf{x}'$$

$$= {}_1\langle\varphi_{n_1}|\ {}_2\langle\varphi_{n_2}|V(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_1,\hat{\mathbf{x}}_2)|\varphi_{n_4}\rangle_1|\varphi_{n_3}\rangle_2$$

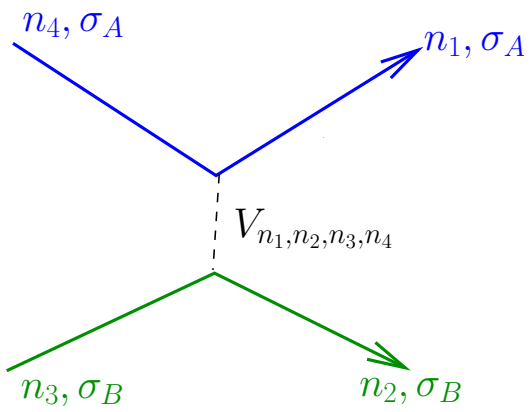



Figure 9.1: Interpretation of the interaction term in 9.42 . Two particles in the initial levels $n_3$ and $n_4$ are scattered $n_4 \to n_1$ and $n_3 \to n_2$. Spin is not changed by scattering, which explains the spin structure. In SQ scattering is described by first destroying the particles and then creating them in different levels. Also the matrix element in 9.42 (last line) can be understood from this picture.

## 9.4 Summary: creation and destruction operators and Fock space

A Fock space (see Sec. 7.3.1) describes a system with different particle numbers. A natural set of basis states is given by the occupation-number representation.

$$|N_1, N_2, \cdots, N_n, \cdots\rangle \tag{9.43}$$

The subscript indices represent a single-particle state or level. E.g.:

$$1 \to (n=1,l=0,m=0,\sigma=\uparrow) \quad 2 \to (n=1,l=0,m=0,\sigma=\downarrow)$$
$$3 \to (n=2,l=0,m=0,\sigma=\uparrow) \quad 4 \to (n=2,l=0,m=0,\sigma=\downarrow)$$
$$5 \to (n=2,l=1,m=-1,\sigma=\uparrow) \quad 6 \to (n=2,l=1,m=-1,\sigma=\downarrow)$$
$$7 \to (n=2,l=1,m=0,\sigma=\uparrow) \quad 8 \to (n=2,l=1,m=0,\sigma=\downarrow)$$
$$9 \to (n=2,l=1,m=+1,\sigma=\uparrow) \quad 10 \to (n=2,l=1,m=+1,\sigma=\downarrow) \quad \cdots$$

The capital $N_n$ indicates how many particles there are in level $n$. Clearly $N_n = 0,1$ for fermions, due to Pauli principle, and $N_n = 0,1,2,\cdots$ for bosons.
An arbitrary state of the Fock space is a linear combination of 9.43

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sum_{N_1,N_2,\cdots,N_n,\cdots} C_{N_1,N_2,\cdots,N_n,\cdots} |N_1,N_2,\cdots,N_n,\cdots\rangle \ . \tag{9.44}$$

Second quantisation allows us to express these states with the help of creation and annihilation operators:

$$\begin{aligned} &|N_1,N_2,\cdots,N_n,\cdots\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_1!N_2!\cdots N_n!}} \cdots \left(b_1^\dagger\right)^{N_1} \left(b_2^\dagger\right)^{N_2} \cdots \left(b_n^\dagger\right)^{N_n} \cdots |0\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{9.45}$$

The **vacuum** $|0\rangle$ is the state without particles and has the property 9.13 , and the operators $b_i$ obey the commutation 9.10a for bosons or anticommutation rules 9.21 for fermions. [7] Moreover, they are the hermitian conjugate of each other:

$$(b_n)^\dagger = b_n^\dagger \tag{9.46}$$

Single-and two-particle operators can be written in both case in the form 9.28 and 9.41 .
Corresponding "bra" states can be obtained by a useful rule of hermitian conjugation:

$$\langle\Psi|\hat{A} = \left(\hat{A}^\dagger|\Psi\rangle\right)^\dagger \tag{9.47}$$

so that from 9.45

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle N_1,N_2,\cdots,N_n,\cdots| = \left(|N_1,N_2,\cdots,N_n,\cdots\rangle\right)^\dagger \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_1!}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{N_2!}} \cdots \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_n!}} \cdots \langle 0| \cdots (b_n)^{N_n} \cdots (b_2)^{N_2} (b_1)^{N_1} \end{aligned} \tag{9.48}$$

9.47 together with 9.13 implies that the "left vacuum" is annihilated by creation operators:

$$\langle 0|b_n^\dagger = 0 \qquad \forall n \tag{9.49}$$

[7] Note that the index $n$ may include spin in this case, see above.

## 9.5 Unitary transformations

It may sometimes be convenient to carry out a transformation from a set of operators $\left(b_n, b_n^\dagger\right)$ to another set $\left(c_n, c_n^\dagger\right)$. This is allowed as long as the $c_n, c_n^\dagger$ obey the same commutation or anticommutation relation as the $b_n, b_n^\dagger$. It can be shown that this is the case if the transformation is done with the help of a unitary matrix $U$:

$$c_k = \sum_n U_{k,n}\, b_n \tag{9.50}$$

Using its unitarity ($U^{-1} = U^\dagger$) the inverse reads

$$b_n = \sum_k U^*_{k,n} c_k \tag{9.51}$$

Due to 9.46 , the $^\dagger$ operators are transformed as

$$c_k^\dagger = \sum_n U^*_{k,n} b_n^\dagger \tag{9.52}$$

As already discussed in Sec. 9.1.2 the transformation 9.51 corresponds to replacing operators ($b_n^\dagger$) creating particle on one basis set of orbitals ($\varphi_n(\mathbf{x})$) to new operators ($c_k^\dagger$) creating particle on another basis set (say $\chi_k(\mathbf{x})$).
From 9.50 , we easily get the (anti)commutation rules:

$$[c_k, c_p^\dagger]_\pm = \sum_n U_{k,n} \sum_m \underbrace{U^*_{p,m}}_{U^\dagger_{m,p}} \underbrace{[b_n, b_m^\dagger]_\pm}_{\delta_{nm}} = \sum_n U_{k,n} U^\dagger_{n,p} = (UU^\dagger)_{k,p} = \delta_{kp} \tag{9.53}$$

i.e. the correct ones. Here, we used a common notation $[\cdots]_\pm$ where the $+$ stands for anticommutators and $-$ for commutators.

### 9.5.1 Application: tight-binding Hamiltonian

Consider a chain of $L$ lattice sites $n = 0, 1, \cdots, L-1$ with periodic boundary conditions $n + L \equiv n$ (for example, these could be points on a ring, e.g. Benzene, or a very long chain, for which boundary conditions don't matter). $b_n^\dagger$ creates a particle (fermion or boson) on the lattice site $n$ (this could be, for example, an orbital on that site). The **tight-binding Hamiltonian** reads

$$\hat{H} = \varepsilon \sum_n b_n^\dagger b_n - t \sum_n \left( b_{n+1}^\dagger b_n + b_n^\dagger b_{n+1} \right) . \tag{9.54}$$

and describes particles on orbitals with energies $\varepsilon$, and an amplitude $t$ for each particle for moving to the left or to the right orbital ("hopping").

This model is easily solved by discrete Fourier transformation 9.50 with

$$U_{k,n} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}} e^{2\pi\ i\ k\ n/L} \tag{9.55}$$

Notice that also the indices $k = 0, \cdots, L-1$ have periodic boundary conditions: $U_{k+L,n} = U_{k,n}$. In this way, it can be seen that $U$ is indeed unitary:

$$(UU^\dagger)_{k,p} = \sum_n U_{k,n} U^*_{p,n} = \frac{1}{L} \sum_n e^{2\pi\ i\ (k-p)\ n/L} = \delta_{k,p} \tag{9.56}$$

All indices have to be understood from 0 to $L-1$.
In this way, 9.54 becomes (we use 9.51 )

$$\hat{H} = \varepsilon \sum_{p,k} \underbrace{\sum_n U_{p,n} U^*_{k,n}}_{\delta_{p,k}} c^\dagger_p c_k - t \sum_{n,p,k} \left( U_{p,n+1} U^*_{k,n} + U_{p,n} U^*_{k,n+1} \right) c^\dagger_p c_k \ . \tag{9.57}$$

Now

$$\sum_n U_{p,n+1} U^*_{k,n} = \frac{1}{L} e^{2\pi\ i\ p/L} \sum_n e^{2\pi\ i\ (k-p)\ n/L} = e^{2\pi\ i\ p/L}\ \delta_{k,p}$$

similarly

$$\sum_n U_{p,n} U^*_{k,n+1} = e^{-2\pi\ i\ p/L}\ \delta_{k,p}$$

So that 9.57 becomes

$$\hat{H} = \sum_k \left( \varepsilon - 2t \cos(2\pi k/L) \right)\ c^\dagger_k c_k \tag{9.58}$$

which is in diagonal form.
The operators $c^\dagger_k$ create particles with (crystal) momentum $P_k = 2\pi k/L$ and energy $\varepsilon_k \equiv (\varepsilon - 2t\cos(2\pi k/L))$. The mode with lowest energy is the one with $k = 0$, so the bosonic ground state with $N$ particles is simply

$$\left| G^B_N \right\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \left( c^\dagger_0 \right)^N |0\rangle$$

All particles are in the lowest level: it is a Bose-Einstein condensate. Its energy is $N(\varepsilon - 2t)$.
For fermions one has to start filling levels according to the Pauli principle. This is discussed in the context of the Fermi sphere in Sec. 9.6.1.

## 9.6 Momentum space

For translation invariant systems it may be convenient to carry out the transformation 9.15 where the orthonormal basis set consists of eigenfunctions of momentum, i.e. plane waves. The basis is, in principle, continuous, so that the sum in 9.15 should be replaced by an integral. However, it is often common practice to restrict the space to a cubic box of edge $L$ with periodic boundary condition. In the end, physical results are obtained by letting $L \to \infty$.
In a periodic box, the normalized eigenfunctions of the momentum operator $\hat{p}$ are

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} e^{i\,\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} \qquad \Omega = L^3 = \text{volume} \tag{9.59}$$

with

$$\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{L}(n_1, n_2, n_3) \quad n_i = -\infty, \cdots, +\infty \tag{9.60}$$

Then 9.17 becomes [8]

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'} h_{\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{k}} c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}'}\, c_{\mathbf{k}}$$

$$h_{\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{\Omega}\int d^3\mathbf{x}\; e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}')\cdot\mathbf{x}} \left(\frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{k}^2}{2m} + U(\mathbf{x})\right) = \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{k}^2}{2m}\delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'} + \frac{U(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}')}{\Omega} \tag{9.61}$$

where we have used two useful formulas

$$\frac{1}{\Omega}\int d^3\mathbf{x} e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}')\cdot\mathbf{x}} = \delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'} \tag{9.62}$$

$$\int d^3\mathbf{x} e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}')\cdot\mathbf{x}}\, U(\mathbf{x}) = U(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}') \tag{9.63}$$

which is the Fourier transform of $U(\mathbf{x})$ (with abuse of notation).
The interacting term 9.41 can be obtained by first carrying out the integral. We consider the case of a potential which depends on distance only:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int\int \varphi^*_{\mathbf{k}_1}(\mathbf{x})\varphi^*_{\mathbf{k}_2}(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')\varphi_{\mathbf{k}_3}(\mathbf{x}')\varphi_{\mathbf{k}_4}(\mathbf{x})\; d^3\mathbf{x}d^3\mathbf{x}' \\
&= \frac{1}{\Omega^2}\int\int d^3\mathbf{x}\, d^3\mathbf{r}\; e^{-i(\mathbf{k}_1-\mathbf{k}_4)\cdot\mathbf{x}} e^{-i(\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{k}_3)\cdot(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{r})}\; V(\mathbf{r}) \\
&= \frac{1}{\Omega}\delta_{\mathbf{k}_1+\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{k}_3-\mathbf{k}_4} V(\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{k}_3)
\end{aligned} \tag{9.64}$$

[8] We use $U(\mathbf{x})$ for the external potential instead of $V(\mathbf{x})$, in order to distinguish it from the electron-electron interaction

where we have transformed $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{r}$, used 9.62 and again introduced the Fourier transform of $V$, analogously to 9.63 .
In this way, by taking $\mathbf{k}_3 = \mathbf{k}_2 - \mathbf{q}$ and exploiting the $\delta$ leading to $\mathbf{k}_4 = \mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{q}$ it is convenient to write 9.41 (or 9.42 ) as

$$\hat{H}_{int} = \frac{1}{2\Omega} \sum_{\mathbf{k}_1,\mathbf{k}_2,\mathbf{q}} \sum_{\sigma,\sigma'} V(\mathbf{q})\, c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}_1,\sigma}\, c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}_2,\sigma'}\, c_{\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{q},\sigma'}\, c_{\mathbf{k}_1+\mathbf{q},\sigma}\ , \tag{9.65}$$

where for convenience we have introduced spin (for the case of Fermions, oth-

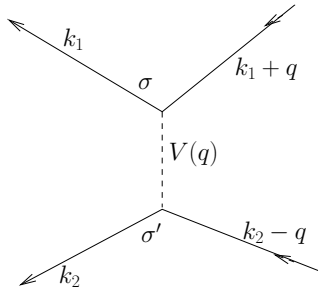



Figure 9.2: Schematic representation of an interacting process

erwise the expression is the same for bosons). The interaction term describes a process in which two particles with momenta $\mathbf{k}_2 - \mathbf{q}$ and $\mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{q}$ come together and exchange momentum $\mathbf{q}$ so that total momentum is conserved.
The amplitude for the process is given by the Fourier transform of the interaction evaluated at the transferred momentum $\mathbf{q}$. On the other hand, the external potential given by $U$ in 9.61 can be written as (again with spin, when we have Fermions)

$$\hat{H}_U = \frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{k,q} \sum_{\sigma} U(\mathbf{q})\, c^{\dagger}_{k-q,\sigma} c_{k,\sigma} \tag{9.66}$$

and describe a transfer of momentum $\mathbf{q}$ from the potential center, so momentum

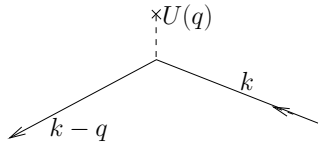



Figure 9.3: Scattering by a potential

is not conserved.

### 9.6.1 Free fermions

For free fermions we have 9.61 with $U = 0$:

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \sum_{\sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \tag{9.67}$$

$$\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \equiv \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{k}^2}{2m} \qquad \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \equiv c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma}$$

The ground state $|F\rangle$ (state with minimal energy) is the one in which all levels $\mathbf{k}$ up to a certain energy $\varepsilon_F$ (Fermi energy), or, equivalently with $|\mathbf{k}|$ smaller than the Fermi momentum $k_F$ with $\varepsilon_F = \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m}$ are occupied ($\hat{n}_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} = 1$) and the other ones are empty ($\hat{n}_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} = 0$): [9]

$$|F\rangle = \prod_{|\mathbf{k}| \le k_F} \prod_{\sigma} c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} |0\rangle \ . \tag{9.68}$$

These states can be represented by a filled sphere, the **Fermi sphere**. The total

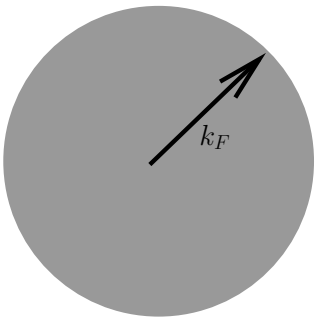



Figure 9.4: Fermi sphere

number of particles is given by the sum of the $\mathbf{k}$ points within the sphere times 2 for spin:

$$N_p = 2 \sum_{|\mathbf{k}| \le k_F} 1 = 2\Omega \int_{|\mathbf{k}| \le k_F} \frac{d^3\mathbf{k}}{(2\pi)^3} = \frac{2\Omega}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{4\pi}{3} k_F^3 \tag{9.69}$$

where we have used $\sum_{\mathbf{k}} \cdots = \Omega \int \frac{d^3\mathbf{k}}{(2\pi)^3} \cdots$ cf. here: Sec. A.32. We, thus have the relation between $k_F$ and the particle density $n_p$:

$$k_F^3 = 3\pi^2 n_p \tag{9.70}$$

[9] Note that in the expression below one has to specify the order of the operators in the product.

Similarly, the total ground-state energy is given by

$$\mathscr{E}_{\mathscr{F}} = 2\sum_{|\mathbf{k}|\le k_F} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} = 2\Omega \int_{|\mathbf{k}|\le k_F} \frac{d^3\mathbf{k}}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{k}^2}{2m} = \frac{3}{5}\varepsilon_F N_p$$

**Excited states** are obtained by removing a particle from within the Fermi sphere (i.e., creating a hole) and putting it outside: particle-hole excitations:

$$c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_1,\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k}_2,\sigma'} |F\rangle \qquad |\mathbf{k}_1| > k_F, |\mathbf{k}_2| \le k_F \tag{9.71}$$

the corresponding excitation energy is

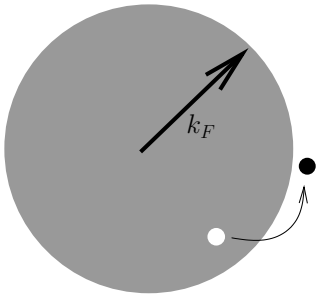



Figure 9.5: Particle-hole excitation.

$$E_{ex,\mathbf{k}_1\sigma,\mathbf{k}_2\sigma} = E_{\mathbf{k}_1\sigma,\mathbf{k}_2\sigma} - E_F = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}_2} \tag{9.72}$$

These excitations play an important role in solid state physics. For example, at finite temperature particle-hole excitations are created up to an energy $E_{ex,\mathbf{k}_1\sigma,\mathbf{k}_2\sigma} \approx k_B T$.

## 9.7 Field operators

The transformation 9.15 , whose inverse is given in A.48 is a continuous version of 9.50 . While operators such as $b^\dagger_n$, $c^\dagger_k$ create particles on discrete levels, field operators $\Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})$ create particles on continuous single-particle states, in this case on an eigenstate of the position operator $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$, as discussed around 9.36 . The concept of field operators can be extended to an arbitrary continuous basis. Let us consider a basis labeled by a continuous variable $k$ (the momentum basis, but also the real-space basis are one possible example). Let us denote the corresponding single particle state vectors "levels" by $|\varphi_k\rangle$ with wave functions $\langle x|\varphi_k\rangle = \varphi_k(x)$ (e.g. $\varphi_k(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{ikx}$)

As is known from QMI, these states are not normalizable in the usual way: one has to use a "delta-function" normalisation:

$$\langle \varphi_{k'} | \varphi_k \rangle = \delta(k - k') \tag{9.73}$$

Then one can introduce creation $\hat{\Upsilon}^\dagger(k)$ and destruction $\hat{\Upsilon}(k)$ operators, who have the property to create or annihilate particles in the corresponding "level" $|\varphi_k\rangle$.
According to the different normalisation 9.73 , the (anti-)commutation rules have, instead of 9.10a , the delta-form[10]

$$[\hat{\Upsilon}(k), \hat{\Upsilon}^\dagger(k')] = \delta(k - k') \tag{9.74}$$

The expressions for single- and two-particle operators in second quantisation, 9.28 and 9.41 , respectively, remain the same except that one replaces $n_i \to k_i$ and one integrates over the $k_i$.
Notice that the $\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})$ (resp. $\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})$) (cf. 9.7 ) are a special case, as they create (resp. destroy) a particle in an orbital localized in $\mathbf{x}$ (delta function).

## 9.8 Heisenberg time dependence for operators

Creation and annihilation, as well as field operators discussed above can be assigned a time dependence according to the usual Heisenberg representation , which for an arbitrary operator (in both first or second quantisation) reads:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \hat{O}(t) = [\hat{O}(t), \hat{H}] + i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \hat{O}(t) \tag{9.75}$$

For time-independent Hamiltonians and operators, the formal solution reads, as usual

$$\hat{O}(t) = e^{i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\; \hat{O}\; e^{-i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,. \tag{9.76}$$

Since operators can be quite generally expressed as polynomials in the $b, b^\dagger$ and/or $\hat{\Psi}, \hat{\Psi}^\dagger$ operators, it is easy to show that the time dependence can be pulled over to these operators. For example, take the interaction operator 9.40 (we

[10] Depending on the convention there might be a coefficient, like $2\pi$ or so in front of the $\delta$, as well as in front of 9.73

omit the subscript $_{SQ}$):

$$\hat{H}_{int}(t) = e^{i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,\frac{1}{2}\int\int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})d^3\mathbf{x}d^3\mathbf{x}'\; e^{-i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar} =$$
$$\frac{1}{2}\int\int e^{i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\underbrace{e^{-i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,e^{i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}}_{\mathbf{1}}\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')e^{-i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')$$
$$\times e^{i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')e^{-i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\underbrace{e^{i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}\,\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})e^{-i\,\hat{H}\,t/\hbar}}_{\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x},t)}d^3\mathbf{x}d^3\mathbf{x}'$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}\int\int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x},t)\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}',t)V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}',t)\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x},t)d^3\mathbf{x}d^3\mathbf{x}'\,, \tag{9.77}$$

i.e. the time dependence of $\hat{H}_{int}(t)$ is obtained by inserting the time dependence in the constituent field operators.

### 9.8.1 Time dependence of field operators

For a noninteracting Hamiltonian 9.11a (we use $U(\mathbf{x})$ instead of $V(\mathbf{x})$ for the potential):

$$i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) = \int d^3\mathbf{x}'\,\left(\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla'^2 + U(\mathbf{x}')\right]\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')\right.$$
$$\left. - \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla'^2 + U(\mathbf{x}')\right]\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\right)$$
$$= \int d^3\mathbf{x}'\,\underbrace{\left(\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}') \mp \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\right)}_{\delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')}\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla'^2 + U(\mathbf{x}')\right]\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}')$$
$$= \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + U(\mathbf{x})\right]\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\,, \tag{9.78}$$

where the $-$ sign is for bosons and $+$ for fermions. We now include also the interaction, 9.40 so that the total Hamiltonian is $\hat{H}_{SQ} + \left(\hat{H}_{int}\right)_{SQ}$. One obtains (without proof)

$$i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) = \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + U(\mathbf{x})\right]\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) + \int d^3\mathbf{x}'\,\hat{\rho}(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{9.79}$$

Both expressions are formally analogous to the Schrödinger equation in first quantisation.

### 9.8.2 Time dependence of creation and annihilation operators

The Heisenberg time dependence for $c, c^\dagger$ operators described by the noninteracting Hamiltonian is given by 9.17

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} c_n(t) = \sum_{k,m} h_{k,m} \underbrace{[c_n(t), c_k^\dagger(t) c_m(t)]}_{\delta_{n,k}\ c_m(t)} = \sum_m h_{n,m} c_m(t) \tag{9.80}$$

For the case of a diagonal Hamiltonian 9.11a , for which $h_{n,m} \to \delta_{n,m} E_n$ and $c_n \to b_n$, the solution is simple

$$b_n(t) = e^{-iE_n\ t/\hbar}\ b_n(0) \tag{9.81}$$

For the more general case 9.80 the solution can be formally obtained by introducing a column vector

$$\mathbf{c} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ \vdots \\ c_n \end{pmatrix}$$

together with the matrix $\mathbf{h} = \{h_{n,m}\}$. Then 9.80 becomes a matrix equation

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}\ \mathbf{c}(t) = \mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{c}(t)$$

with formal solution

$$\mathbf{c}(t) = e^{-i\mathbf{h}\ t/\hbar}\ \mathbf{c}(0)$$

These expressions are used for Green's functions in many-body solid state physics.

### 9.8.3 Single-particle correlation function

One quantity of interest is the single-particle correlation function

$$G(\mathbf{x}, t; \mathbf{x}', t') \equiv \langle F | \hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x}, t) \hat{\Psi}_\sigma^\dagger(\mathbf{x}', t') | F \rangle\ . \tag{9.82}$$

Physically, this describes the amplitude that after creating a particle at $\mathbf{x}'$ at time $t'$, this is found at time $t$ in $\mathbf{x}$. It thus describes particle transport from $\mathbf{x}'$ to $\mathbf{x}$.
We evaluate this quantity for the case of free fermions. First, we transform the field operators according to 9.9 with the $\varphi_n$ replaced by the eigenfunctions 9.59 and the $b$ by $c$.

$$\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_k c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} \tag{9.83}$$

Then

$$\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x},t)\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{x}',t') = \frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} e^{-i\mathbf{k}'\cdot\mathbf{x}'} c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma}(t) c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',\sigma}(t') \tag{9.84}$$

Since the Hamiltonian 9.67 is diagonal in the $c$, their Heisenberg time dependence is given by the same form as in 9.81

$$c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma}(t) = e^{-i\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}\, t/\hbar} c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma}\ . \tag{9.85}$$

We are left with the evaluation of expectation values of operators in 9.82 (cf. 9.84 )

$$\langle F|\, c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',\sigma}\, |F\rangle$$

Clearly, if one creates a particle at $\mathbf{k}'$, this same particle has to be annihilated again in order to get the same state, therefore $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{k}'$. Moreover, $\mathbf{k}'$ must be outside of the Fermi sphere: $|\mathbf{k}'| > k_F$. This gives for the above expectation value

$$\langle F|\, c_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',\sigma}\, |F\rangle = \delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'}\theta(|\mathbf{k}| - k_F) \tag{9.86}$$

Using 9.84 , 9.85 , and 9.86 we obtain for 9.82

$$\begin{aligned} G(\mathbf{x},t;\mathbf{x}',t') = G(\underbrace{|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}_{r},\underbrace{t-t'}_{\tau}) &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{|\mathbf{k}|>k_F}}_{\int_{|\mathbf{k}|>k_F}\frac{d^3\mathbf{k}}{(2\pi)^3}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')} e^{-i\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}\,\tau/\hbar} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\int_{k>k_F} k^2\, dk\, e^{-i\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}\,\tau/\hbar}\, 2\pi \underbrace{\int_{-1}^{1} d\,\cos\theta\, e^{ik|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|\cos\theta}}_{\frac{2\sin kr}{kr}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi^2 r}\int_{k_F}^{\infty} dk\, k\sin kr\, e^{-i\varepsilon_k\,\tau/\hbar} \end{aligned} \tag{9.87}$$

For $\tau = 0$ the integral can be evaluated analytically yielding the equal-time correlation function

$$G(r,0) = \frac{3n_p}{2}\,\frac{z\cos z - \sin z}{z^3} \qquad z \equiv rk_F \tag{9.88}$$

This describes decaying oscillations with wavevector $k_F$ (Friedel oscillations) produced by adding a particle.

Another interesting information is the behavior of 9.87 for large $\tau$. In this case, it can be seen that the leading contribution to the $k$ integral comes by expanding $\varepsilon_k$ around $k_F$: $\varepsilon_k \approx \varepsilon_{k_F} + \hbar v_F(k-k_F)$, where $v_F$ is the so-called Fermi velocity. Due to the *sinkr*, one has in the exponent terms of the form

$$e^{-i\varepsilon_{k_F}\,\tau/\hbar} e^{-i(v_F\tau \mp r)(k-k_F)} e^{\pm irk_F}\ ,$$

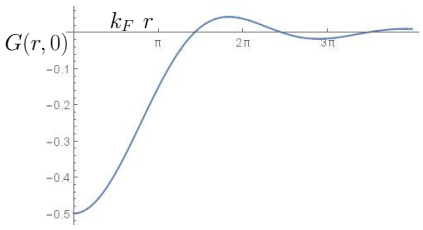



Figure 9.6: Equal time correlation function 9.88

where $\pm$ come from the sin. Due to the integral over $k$, the term in the center oscillates fast, and cancels out unless the argument $v_F\tau \mp r \approx 0$. This describes particles moving with the Fermi velocity $v_F$. On top of this, there are again spatial oscillations with momentum $k_F$ and time oscillations with frequency $\varepsilon_{k_F}/\hbar$.

### 9.8.4 Pair distribution function

The evaluation of the pair distribution function illustrates how fermions affect each other even without interaction. We start from the state $\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\,|F\rangle$ in which a particle has been removed from the Fermi sphere at position $\mathbf{x}$. Its normalisation is given by

$$\langle F|\,\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\,|F\rangle = \langle F|\,\hat{\rho}_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\,|F\rangle = n_p/2\,. \tag{9.89}$$

Here, we used the density operator $\hat{\rho}_\sigma(\mathbf{x})$ (with given spin) cf. 9.35 , and since the filled Fermi sphere is translation invariant, its expectation value, the average density is $\mathbf{x}$-independent. We now determine the probability density $\frac{n_p}{2} g_{\sigma,\sigma'}(\mathbf{r})$ to find a particle with spin $\sigma'$ at a distance $\mathbf{r}$ from the first one. This is given by the expectation value of $\hat{\rho}_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{r})$ in this state. We get:

$$\left(\frac{n_p}{2}\right)^2 g_{\sigma,\sigma'}(\mathbf{r}) = \langle F|\,\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\hat{\Psi}^\dagger_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{r})\hat{\Psi}_{\sigma'}(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{r})\hat{\Psi}_\sigma(\mathbf{x})\,|F\rangle \tag{9.90}$$
$$= \frac{1}{\Omega^2}\sum_{\mathbf{k}_1,\mathbf{k}_2,\mathbf{k}_3,\mathbf{k}_4} e^{-i(\mathbf{k}_1-\mathbf{k}_4+\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{k}_3)\cdot\mathbf{x}} e^{-i(\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{k}_3)\cdot\mathbf{r}}\,\langle F|\,c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_1,\sigma}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_2,\sigma'}c_{\mathbf{k}_3,\sigma'}c_{\mathbf{k}_4,\sigma}\,|F\rangle$$

We now distinguish between two cases:

- $\sigma = -\sigma'$
  In this case, it is clear that in 9.90 for each spin separately the particle that has been destroyed must be created with the same $\mathbf{k}$, i.e. we get $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{k}_4$ and $\mathbf{k}_2 = \mathbf{k}_3$. Then, the result is independent of $\mathbf{r}$ and is given by

$$g_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) = \left(\frac{2}{n_p\,\Omega}\sum_{|\mathbf{k}|<k_F} 1\right)^2 = 1 \tag{9.91}$$

- $\sigma = \sigma'$
  In this case, we have two terms contributing in the sum 9.90 . The first one with $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{k}_4$ and $\mathbf{k}_2 = \mathbf{k}_3$, whose contribution is the same as before. The second one has $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{k}_3$ and $\mathbf{k}_2 = \mathbf{k}_4$. Its contribution (exchange contribution) is

$$\left(\frac{n_p}{2}\right)^2 g^{ex}_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{\Omega^2}\sum_{\mathbf{k}_1,\mathbf{k}_2} e^{-i(\mathbf{k}_2-\mathbf{k}_1)\cdot\mathbf{r}} \langle F| c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_1,\sigma} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_2,\sigma'} \underbrace{c_{\mathbf{k}_1,\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k}_2,\sigma}}_{-c_{\mathbf{k}_2,\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k}_1,\sigma}} |F\rangle$$

  In the expectation value $\langle F|\cdots|F\rangle$ (with the minus sign) one first destroys a particle in $\mathbf{k}_1$ then in $\mathbf{k}_2$, then creates the one in $\mathbf{k}_2$ then in $\mathbf{k}_1$. This gives 1 provided $|\mathbf{k}_1|$ and $|\mathbf{k}_2| < k_F$. In this way, the sums over $k_1$ and $k_2$ are independent of each other, we thus get

$$g^{ex}_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) = -\left|\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{|\mathbf{k}_1|<k_F} e^{i\,\mathbf{k}_1\cdot\mathbf{r}}\right|^2$$

  The sum is like the one in 9.87 for $\tau = 0$ and one integrates from 0 to $k_F$ instead, yielding $-G(r,0)$. In total, thus

$$g_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) = 1 + g^{ex}_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) = 1 - \frac{9}{z^6}(\sin z - z\cos z)^2 \qquad z = k_F r \qquad (9.92)$$

  This pair distribution function is suppressed at low distances. This is a pure

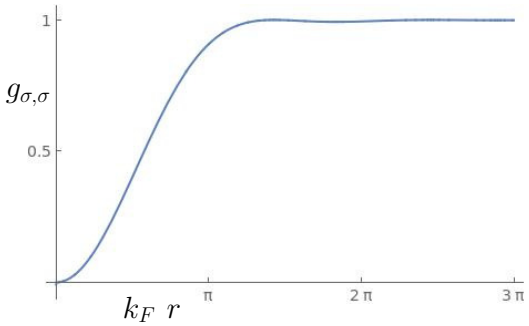



Figure 9.7: Equal spin pair distribution function $g_{\sigma,\sigma}$ 9.92

exchange effect depending on the antisymmetry of the wave function. It signals the fact that the probability to find two fermions with the same spin at a distance $r \lesssim \frac{1}{k_F}$ is suppressed.

# Chapter 10

# Quantisation of the free electromagnetic field

The quantisation of the electromagnetic field is also necessary in order to end up with a description in terms of **photons**. Like in the case of the elastic string of Chap. 8 one starts from a continuous object and ends up with discrete oscillators describing particles.
The procedure for quantisation of the electromagnetic field is similar to the case of the Schrödinger field in Chap. 9; there are, however, some important differences leading to technical issues.

- The dynamical variable is the vector potential $\mathbf{A}$, which, being a vector, has three components.
- In the Coulomb gauge, $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$, so the three components of the vector are not independent of each other
- $\mathbf{A}$ is a real field, with the consequence that Fourier components with opposite $\mathbf{k}$ are not independent

## 10.1 Lagrangian and Hamiltonian

The electric and the magnetic field can be determined from a scalar and a vector potential

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E} &= -\frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} - \nabla\phi \\ \mathbf{B} &= \nabla \times \mathbf{A} \end{aligned} \tag{10.1}$$

We use Gaussian units and $c$ is the speed of light. For simplicity, we use units in which $c = 1$. We use the Coulomb gauge for which

$$\boxed{\phi = 0 \qquad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0\,.} \tag{10.2}$$

The homogeneous Maxwell equations can be eliminated by using 10.1 . The inhomogeneous Maxwell equations reduce (by using 10.2 ) to the wave equation for $\mathbf{A}$:

$$\boxed{\nabla^2 \mathbf{A} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{A} = 0\,.} \tag{10.3}$$

We now show that the Lagrange function

$$\mathscr{L} = \int d^3\mathbf{r}\,\frac{\mu}{2}\left(\dot{\mathbf{A}}^2 - (\nabla \times \mathbf{A})^2\right) = \int d^3\mathbf{r}\,\frac{\mu}{2}\left(\mathbf{E}^2 - \mathbf{B}^2\right) \tag{10.4}$$

which gives the conjugate momentum density $\Pi_n$

$$\Pi_n = \frac{\delta \mathscr{L}}{\delta \dot{A}_n} = \mu\,\dot{A}_n = -\mu E_n \tag{10.5}$$

leads to the correct equation of motion 10.3 . This is proven here: Sec. A.31 . Here, we introduced the factor $\mu$, on which, of course, the equations of motion do not depend, but which in the end has to be fixed to

$$\mu = \frac{1}{4\pi} \tag{10.6}$$

in order to reproduce the correct energy of the electromagnetic field in Gauss' units.
As usual, we obtain the Hamilton function $H$ from the Legendre transformation

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \int d^3\mathbf{r}\,\boldsymbol{\Pi}\cdot\dot{\mathbf{A}} - \mathscr{L} = \boxed{\int d^3\mathbf{r}\,\frac{\mu}{2}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{\Pi}^2}{\mu^2} + (\nabla\times\mathbf{A})^2\right)} \\ &= \int d^3\mathbf{r}\,\frac{\mu}{2}\left(\mathbf{E}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2\right) \end{aligned} \tag{10.7}$$

which gives the total energy of the electromagnetic field (c.g.s. units).
Quantisation cannot yet be applied, since not all variables are independent, due to 10.2 . In other words, commutation rules in the form

$$[\hat{A}_n(\mathbf{r}), \hat{\Pi}_m(\mathbf{r}')] = i\hbar\,\delta_{n,m}\,\delta(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}') \qquad \textbf{NO!} \tag{10.8}$$

would contradict 10.2 . (See here: Sec. A.33 ).

## 10.2 Normal modes

To make progress, we now carry out a discrete Fourier transformation. (See Sec. 9.6) More specifically, we consider a cubic "box" with volume $\Omega = L^3$ and periodic boundary conditions, and we expand $\mathbf{A}$ in terms of the orthonormal functions $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$

$$\boxed{\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}\, \mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}}} \tag{10.9}$$

The inversion rules are

$$\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} \int d^3\mathbf{r}\; e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}\, \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})\;. \tag{10.10}$$

The same transformation applies for $\mathbf{\Pi}(\mathbf{r})$

$$\mathbf{\Pi}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}\, \mathbf{\Pi}_{\mathbf{k}}\;. \tag{10.11}$$

The periodic boundary conditions make the $\mathbf{k}$ discrete:

$$\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{L}(n_1, n_2, n_3) \qquad n_i \text{ integers.} \tag{10.12}$$

Moreover, since $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x})$ and $\mathbf{\Pi}(\mathbf{x})$ are real fields,

$$\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}} = \mathbf{A}^*_{-\mathbf{k}} \qquad \mathbf{\Pi}_{\mathbf{k}} = \mathbf{\Pi}^*_{-\mathbf{k}} \tag{10.13}$$

## 10.3 Quantisation

In analogy to 8.16 , we would expect second quantisation to be generated by introducing the commutators $[\hat{A}_{n\mathbf{k}}, \hat{\Pi}_{m\mathbf{k}'}] = i\hbar\, \delta_{nm}\, \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}$ (here, $n, m$ are components of the vectors). However, there are two issues: First, due to the fact that the Fourier basis is complex, one has to require instead

$$[\hat{A}_{n\mathbf{k}}, \hat{\Pi}_{m-\mathbf{k}'}] = i\hbar\, \delta_{nm}\, \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} \qquad \textbf{not yet correct!} \tag{10.14}$$

in order to obtain **local** commutation rules in $\mathbf{r}$ space: details here: Sec. A.32

$$\begin{aligned}[\hat{A}_n(\mathbf{r}), \hat{\Pi}_m(\mathbf{r}')] &= \frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} e^{-i\mathbf{k}'\cdot\mathbf{r}'} [\hat{A}_{n\mathbf{k}}, \hat{\Pi}_{m-\mathbf{k}'}] \\ &= i\hbar\, \delta_{nm} \frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} = i\hbar\, \delta_{nm}\, \delta(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}') \qquad \textbf{not yet correct!}\end{aligned}$$

Notice that a change in sign of $\mathbf{k}'$ in the commutators would have introduced a change in sign in $\mathbf{r}'$, which is not correct.
This is not yet the whole story: these commutation rules are still incorrect, as discussed in 10.8 . They are in contradiction with the **transversality condition** **10.2** (See here: Sec. A.33). To enforce this condition, we express $\mathbf{A_k}$ and $\mathbf{\Pi_k}$ in terms of two real unit vectors (polarisations) $\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}$ with $s = \pm 1$, which are mutually orthogonal and orthogonal to $\mathbf{k}$:

$$\boxed{\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} = 0 \qquad \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s'} = \delta_{ss'}} \tag{10.15}$$

$$\boxed{\hat{\mathbf{A}}_{\mathbf{k}} = \sum_s \hat{q}_{\mathbf{k},s}\,\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \qquad \hat{\mathbf{\Pi}}_{\mathbf{k}} = \sum_s \hat{p}_{\mathbf{k},s}\,\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}} \tag{10.16}$$

and now assume canonical **commutation rules between the coefficients** in the form

$$\boxed{[\hat{q}_{\mathbf{k},s}, \hat{p}_{-\mathbf{k}',-s'}] = i\hbar\,\delta_{s,s'}\,\delta_{k,k'}} \tag{10.17}$$

We use the conventions, motivated by 10.13

$$\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} = \mathbf{u}_{-\mathbf{k},-s} = \mathbf{u}^*_{\mathbf{k},s} \qquad \hat{q}_{\mathbf{k},s} = \hat{q}^\dagger_{-\mathbf{k},-s} \qquad \hat{p}_{\mathbf{k},s} = \hat{p}^\dagger_{-\mathbf{k},-s} \tag{10.18}$$

The Hamiltonian 10.7 becomes (again, we omit the " ˆ " from the notation)

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \frac{\mu}{2}\sum_{\mathbf{k}}\left[\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}_{-\mathbf{k}}\cdot\mathbf{\Pi}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\mu^2} + (\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{A}_{-\mathbf{k}})\cdot(\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}})\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2\mu}\sum_{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{\Pi}_{-\mathbf{k}}\cdot\mathbf{\Pi}_{\mathbf{k}} + \mu^2\,k^2\mathbf{A}_{-\mathbf{k}}\cdot\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}}\right], \end{aligned} \tag{10.19}$$

where in the last line we have exploited the fact that $\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}} = 0$.
Inserting 10.16 in one of the terms in $H$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{\Pi}_{-\mathbf{k}}\cdot\mathbf{\Pi}_{\mathbf{k}} &= \sum_{s_1 s_2}\mathbf{u}_{-\mathbf{k},s_1}p_{-\mathbf{k},s_1}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s_2}p_{\mathbf{k},s_2} = \sum_{s_1 s_2}\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},-s_1}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s_2}\;p_{-\mathbf{k},s_1}\;p_{\mathbf{k},s_2} \\ &= \sum_s p_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\;p_{\mathbf{k},s} \end{aligned}$$

where we have exploited the orthogonality of the $\mathbf{u}$ and 10.18 . Similarly

$$\mathbf{A}_{-\mathbf{k}}\cdot\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}} = \sum_s q_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\;q_{\mathbf{k},s}$$

The Hamiltonian 10.19 , thus becomes

$$H = \frac{1}{2\mu}\sum_{\mathbf{k}}\sum_s\left(p_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\;p_{\mathbf{k},s} + \mu^2k^2\;q_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\;q_{\mathbf{k},s}\right) \tag{10.20}$$

The treatment is similar to the case of the harmonic oscillator, with slight variations. One introduces creation and destruction operators (remember that $k \equiv |\mathbf{k}|$)

$$a_{\mathbf{k},s} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\hbar\mu k}} \left(\mu k\, \hat{q}_{\mathbf{k},s} + i\, \hat{p}_{\mathbf{k},s}\right)$$
$$a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},s} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\hbar\mu k}} \left(\mu k\, \hat{q}_{-\mathbf{k},-s} - i\, \hat{p}_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\right) = \left(a_{\mathbf{k},s}\right)^{\dagger} \tag{10.21}$$

The inverse of this expression is

$$\hat{q}_{\mathbf{k},s} = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{2\mu k}} \left(a_{\mathbf{k},s} + a^{\dagger}_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\right)$$
$$\hat{p}_{\mathbf{k},s} = -i\sqrt{\frac{\hbar\mu k}{2}} \left(a_{\mathbf{k},s} - a^{\dagger}_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\right) \tag{10.22}$$

These operators obey the usual commutation relations (easy to show by using 10.17 )

$$\boxed{[a_{\mathbf{k},s}, a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}] = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}\, \delta_{ss'}} \tag{10.23}$$

with all other commutators being zero. In terms of these, 10.20 acquires the familiar form, where we reintroduce the speed of light $c$, so that $\omega_k = ck$:

$$\boxed{H = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \sum_{s} \hbar\omega_k\, a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},s} a_{\mathbf{k},s} + \text{const.}} \tag{10.24}$$

Here, the (infinite) constant comes, as for the usual harmonic oscillator, from commutations of $p$ and $q$ and describes the zero-point energy. As long as one measures only energy differences, this constant is unobservable and can be dropped. Its changes, however, e.g. upon modifying the boundary conditions of the field, do have measurable consequences (Casimir effect).

10.23 together with 10.24 describe again a set of **independent harmonic oscillators**. Each one of these oscillators describes a **photon mode with wavevector k and polarisation vector $\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}$**. The "creation" operator $a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},s}$ increases by 1 the number of photons in this mode, while $a_{\mathbf{k},s}$ decreases it by 1.

The commutators of the fields are evaluated here: Sec. A.34 .

# Chapter 11

# Interaction of radiation field with matter

Starting from the results of the previous chapters, we will treat here the interaction between radiation field and matter, and apply the formalism to two cases of interest:
(i) Absorption and emission of radiation
(ii) Bremsstrahlung

In both cases, the electromagnetic field will be treated in second quantisation according to the results of Sec. 10. The electron Hamiltonian will be treated in first quantisation for case (i), this means that we will consider just one electron at a time. We will use the full second quantisation (for both radiation and electrons) formalism for case (ii).

## 11.1 Free radiation field

The Hamiltonian of the free electromagnetic (radiation) field follows from the corresponding Hamilton function, that we derived in 10.24 .

HAMILTONIAN OF THE FREE ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELD

$$H_{em} = \sum_{\mathbf{k},s} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},s} a_{\mathbf{k},s} \tag{11.1a}$$
$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = |\mathbf{k}|\, c\ .$$

## 11.2 Electron and interaction term

The Hamiltonian of a single electron in an electromagnetic field is given in 4.1 .

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t)\right)^2 + V(\mathbf{r}) \tag{11.2}$$

We consider the contribution of a static field $V(\mathbf{r})$, plus an electromagnetic field in the Coulomb gauge described by the vector potential $\mathbf{A}$. For simplicity, we neglect electron spin.
We split 11.2 in a term describing an electron in an external potential (for example in an atomic orbital)

$$H_{el} = \frac{1}{2m}\mathbf{p}^2 + V(\mathbf{r}) \tag{11.3}$$

and the **electron-photon interaction** term

$$H_{el-ph} = \underbrace{-\frac{q}{mc}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t)\cdot\mathbf{p}}_{H'} + \underbrace{\frac{q^2}{2mc^2}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t)^2}_{H''}\ . \tag{11.4}$$

The two terms in 11.4 are termed paramagnetic ($H'$) and diamagnetic ($H''$), respectively. Notice that despite the fact that $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ are noncommuting operators, the order in the product $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t)\cdot\mathbf{p}$ doesn't matter due to the Coulomb gauge $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{A} = 0$.
We will consider $H_{el-ph}$ 11.4 as a perturbation of the unperturbed Hamiltonian $H_0 \equiv H_{el} + H_{em}$. Since radiation is treated in second quantisation, we have to replace in $H_{el-ph}$ the vector potential $\mathbf{A}$ with its second quantisation expression

10.9 with 10.16 , 10.22 and $\mu = 1/(4\pi)$, leading to

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_k}\right)^{1/2} \sum_s \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\, e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \left(a_{\mathbf{k},s} + a^\dagger_{-\mathbf{k},-s}\right)$$
$$= \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\gamma_k}{\sqrt{\Omega}} \sum_s \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \left(a_{\mathbf{k},s} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} + a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s} e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}\right), \tag{11.5}$$

$$\gamma_k \equiv \left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\omega_k}\right)^{1/2} \tag{11.6}$$

where we have used the symmetry 10.18 , and reintroduced the speed of light $c$.
The paramagnetic interaction term in 11.4 , thus becomes

$$H' = -\frac{q}{mc} \sum_{\mathbf{k},s} \frac{\gamma_k}{\sqrt{\Omega}} \left(a_{\mathbf{k},s} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} + a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s} e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}\right) \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \mathbf{p} \tag{11.7}$$

## 11.3 Transition rate

We evaluate the rate for a transition between an initial state $|i\rangle$ and a final state $|f\rangle$ under the influence of the perturbation $H'$ within Fermi's golden rule 3.27 . We neglect contributions coming from $H''$: we will discuss why later.
First, the states $|i\rangle$ and $|f\rangle$ are eigenstates of the unperturbed Hamiltonian

$$H_0 \equiv H_{el} + H_{em} \tag{11.8}$$

These are product states of the form

$$|m\rangle = |\text{electron state}_m\rangle \otimes |\text{photon state}_m\rangle \qquad m = i, f\,. \tag{11.9}$$

Here, $|\text{electron state}_m\rangle$ is an eigenstate of $H_{el}$, which we assume discrete, for example an atomic or molecular orbital, with energy $\varepsilon_m$ and denote it as $|\varepsilon_m\rangle$.
$|\text{photon state}_m\rangle$ is an eigenstate of the many-body photon Hamiltonian $H_{em}$, and can be written in the occupation number representation as $\left|\{n^m_{\mathbf{k}s}\}, \forall(\mathbf{k},s)\right\rangle$, (See Sec. 7.3). Here $n^m_{\mathbf{k}s}$ is the number of photons with momentum $\mathbf{k}$ and polarisation $s$ in the state $|\text{photon state}_m\rangle$.
The total energy $E_m$ of the state $|m\rangle$ is thus given by (neglecting the zero-point energy)

$$E_m = \varepsilon_m + \sum_{\mathbf{k},s} \hbar\omega_k\, n^m_{\mathbf{k}s}\,. \tag{11.10}$$

Fermi's golden rule 3.27 for the transition rate, thus becomes

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \left|\langle\varepsilon_f| \otimes \langle\{n^f_{\mathbf{k}s}\}|\, H'\, |\varepsilon_i\rangle \otimes |\{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}\}\rangle\right|^2 \delta(E_f - E_i)$$

From the expression 11.7 it is clear that $H'$ can create or destroy a single photon. Therefore, $|f\rangle$ can differ from $|i\rangle$ by having one photon more (photon emission) in a given mode, or one less (photon absorption). We consider these two processes separately.

### 11.3.1 Photon emission

The final state will have just one additional photon in a single mode, say $(\mathbf{k}, s)$, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} n^f_{\mathbf{k}'s'} &= n^i_{\mathbf{k}'s'} \qquad (\mathbf{k}', s') \neq (\mathbf{k}, s) \\ n^f_{\mathbf{k}s} &= n^i_{\mathbf{k}s} + 1 \end{aligned} \tag{11.11}$$

For the energy difference we, thus, have

$$E_f - E_i = \varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i + \hbar\omega_k$$

The matrix element of 11.7 is given by

$$\langle f|H'|i\rangle = -\frac{q}{mc}\sum_{k',s'}\frac{\gamma_{k'}}{\sqrt{\Omega}}\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\cdot\langle\varepsilon_f|\mathbf{p}e^{-i\mathbf{k}'\cdot\mathbf{r}}|\varepsilon_i\rangle\langle\{n^f_{\mathbf{k}s}\}|a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'}|\{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}\}\rangle\,. \tag{11.12}$$

Due to 11.11 , the photon matrix element is given by

$$\langle\{n^f_{\mathbf{k}s}\}|a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'}|\{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}\}\rangle = \sqrt{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}+1}\;\delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'}\delta_{s,s'}$$

In total, using 11.6 , we have for the emission rate

$$W^e_{i\to f} = \frac{4\pi^2 q^2}{\Omega m^2\omega_k}\,\delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i + \hbar\omega_k)(n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}+1)\left|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\langle\varepsilon_f|\,\mathbf{p}e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}\,|\varepsilon_i\rangle\right|^2 \tag{11.13}$$

This term describes the transition from a higher $\varepsilon_i$ to a lower $\varepsilon_f = \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega_k$ electronic state upon emitting a photon. This can occur spontaneously, i.e. without the presence of other photons, $n^i_{\mathbf{k}s} = 0$ (**"spontaneous emission"**). The presence of an external field $n^i_{\mathbf{k}s} > 0$ with that resonance frequency enhances the emission rate by a factor proportional to its intensity (**"stimulated emission"**). Notice that spontaneous emission is a genuine consequence of the quantisation of the radiation field: it originates from the "+1" in the matrix element $\sqrt{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}+1}$, i.e. ultimately from the commutator $[a, a^\dagger] = 1$. If the electromagnetic field were treated as a classical external perturbation, the transition rate would be proportional to the field intensity and an excited atom in the dark ($n^i_{\mathbf{k}s} = 0$) would never decay. This is one of the main motivations for the field quantisation carried out in the previous chapters.

### 11.3.2 Photon absorption

For a photon absorption process the discussion is similar. In this case, the final state will have one photon less in $\mathbf{k}, s$, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} n^f_{\mathbf{k}'s'} &= n^i_{\mathbf{k}'s'} \quad (\mathbf{k}', s') \neq (\mathbf{k}, s) \\ n^f_{\mathbf{k}s} &= n^i_{\mathbf{k}s} - 1 \end{aligned} \tag{11.14}$$

The energy difference

$$E_f - E_i = \varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega_k$$

The matrix element is given by

$$\langle f| H' |i\rangle = -\frac{q}{mc} \sum_{k',s'} \frac{\gamma_{k'}}{\sqrt{\Omega}} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} \cdot \left\langle \varepsilon_f \right| \mathbf{p} e^{i\mathbf{k}'\cdot\mathbf{r}} \left| \varepsilon_i \right\rangle \underbrace{\left\langle \{n^f_{\mathbf{k}s}\} \right| a_{\mathbf{k}',s'} \left| \{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}\} \right\rangle}_{\sqrt{n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}}\delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'}\delta_{s,s'}} \tag{11.15}$$

Finally, the absorption rate becomes

$$W^a_{i\to f} = \frac{4\pi^2 q^2}{\Omega m^2 \omega_k} \, \delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega_k) \, n^i_{\mathbf{k}s} \, \left| \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \left\langle \varepsilon_f \right| \mathbf{p} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \left| \varepsilon_i \right\rangle \right|^2 \tag{11.16}$$

In this case the absorption rate is proportional to $n^i_{\mathbf{k}s}$, i.e. absorption takes place only if photons with that frequency are present, which is somewhat obvious.

### 11.3.3 Electric dipole transition

An expansion in multipoles of the charge corresponds to an expansion in powers of $a_0/\lambda$. Here, $a_0$ is the typical spatial extension of the charge (e.g. Bohr's radius) and $\lambda$ the wavelength of radiation. For $a_0 \ll \lambda$ one can restrict to the lowest order, i.e. the electric dipole term. This corresponds to neglecting the $i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}$ term in the exponent of 11.13 and 11.16 which is of the order of $a_0/\lambda$.
The remaining matrix element of the momentum can be then transformed into

$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle \varepsilon_f \right| \mathbf{p} \left| \varepsilon_i \right\rangle &= \frac{im}{\hbar} \left\langle \varepsilon_f \right| [H_{el}, \mathbf{r}] \left| \varepsilon_i \right\rangle = \frac{im}{\hbar} \left\langle \varepsilon_f \right| H_{el}\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}H_{el} \left| \varepsilon_i \right\rangle \\ &= \frac{im}{\hbar} (\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i) \left\langle \varepsilon_f \right| \mathbf{r} \left| \varepsilon_i \right\rangle \ . \end{aligned} \tag{11.17}$$

I.e. it is proportional to the dipole matrix element.

**Selection rules**

The dipole matrix element 11.17 is nonzero only between certain pairs of states. This leads to the so-called **dipole selection rules**. For example, the two states $|\varepsilon_f\rangle\,|\varepsilon_i\rangle$ must have different parity under reflection $\mathbf{r} \to -\mathbf{r}$, and, in case of atomic orbitals, must have the quantum number $l$ differing by $\pm 1$, i.e.

$$l_f = l_i \pm 1 \tag{11.18}$$

This can be understood by the fact that a photon has angular momentum $j = 1$. In the case of photon absorption, the initial state consisting of the electron and one photon has, according to the general rules of addition of angular momenta 6.19 , a total angular momentum $j_{tot,i}$ where $l_i - 1 \leq j_{tot,i} \leq l_i + 1$. In the final state the photon has been absorbed, so angular momentum conservation fixes $l_f$ to be equal to $j_{tot,i}$. Considering the fact that $l_f = l_i$ is excluded since it has the same parity, this gives the selection rule 11.18 . The same discussion holds upon exchanging final and initial state for the case of photon emission.
This discussion neglects the contribution of the spatial part of the photon wave function to $j_{tot}$. This is correct within the electric dipole approximation in which $\mathbf{k}$ is neglected, i.e. the photon wave function is a constant. Higher orders in $\mathbf{k}$, i.e. higher orders in the multipole expansion, allow for transitions between more distant angular momenta.

### 11.3.4 Lifetime of an excited state

In the absence of external radiation there can be only spontaneous photon emission accompanied by a decay from an excited state $i$ into a state with lower energy. Since $\sum_f W^e_{i\to f} = -\frac{dP_i}{dt}$ describes the rate of decrease of the average occupation (population) of the excited state, this is equal to the inverse lifetime $\frac{1}{\tau}$.
From 11.13 , and in the electric dipole approximation 11.17 , we obtain in the absence of photons in the initial state ($n_{\mathbf{k},s} = 0$)

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = \sum_{\varepsilon_f} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{4\pi^2 q^2}{\Omega \hbar^2 \omega_k}\, \delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i + \hbar\omega_k)(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i)^2 \sum_s \left|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \langle \varepsilon_f | \mathbf{r} | \varepsilon_i \rangle\right|^2 \tag{11.19}$$

where we have explicitly written the sum over the final states $f$ as a sum over the photon momentum $\mathbf{k}$, the polarisation $s$, and the electron final states $\varepsilon_f$.
In the infinite volume limit, we can replace (cf. A.50 )

$$\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{\mathbf{k}} \longrightarrow \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\int d^3\mathbf{k} = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\int k^2\, dk\, d\cos\theta\, d\varphi\,.$$

The sum over the photon polarisation in 11.19

$$\sum_s \left| \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \underbrace{\langle \varepsilon_f | \mathbf{r} | \varepsilon_i \rangle}_{\mathbf{d}_{if}} \right|^2 \tag{11.20}$$

can be carried out in the following way: Without restriction we can take $\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s=-1}$ perpendicular to $\mathbf{d}_{if}$, so that there is only a contribution from $s = 1$. Let us call $\alpha$ the angle between $\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},1}$ and $\mathbf{d}_{if}$. Then, due to the fact that $\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},1}$ and $\mathbf{k}$ are orthogonal, the angle between $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{d}_{if}$ is $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} - \alpha$. One obtains for 11.20

$$|\mathbf{d}_{if}|^2 \cos^2 \alpha = |\mathbf{d}_{if}|^2 \sin^2 \theta$$

Here, again,

$$\mathbf{d}_{if} \equiv \langle \varepsilon_f | \mathbf{r} | \varepsilon_i \rangle \tag{11.21}$$

is the dipole matrix element between initial and final state.
For a fixed final state $\varepsilon_f$ in 11.19 , we carry out the integration by taking $\mathbf{d}_{if}$ in the $z$ direction. Therefore, 11.19 becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{\tau} &= \sum_{\varepsilon_f} \int k^2 \, dk \, d\cos\theta \, d\varphi \frac{4\pi^2 q^2}{(2\pi)^3 \, \hbar^2 ck} \, \delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i + \hbar c \, k)(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i)^2 \, |\mathbf{d}_{if}|^2 \sin^2\theta \\
&= \sum_{\varepsilon_f} \frac{q^2}{\hbar^4 \, c^3} |\mathbf{d}_{if}|^2 (\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f)^3 \int \sin^2\theta d\cos\theta \\
&= \sum_{\varepsilon_f} \underbrace{\frac{q^2}{\hbar c}}_{\approx 1/137} \frac{4}{3c^2} |\mathbf{d}_{if}|^2 \frac{(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f)^2}{\hbar^2} \frac{(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f)}{\hbar}
\end{aligned} \tag{11.22}$$

$\hbar/\tau$ describes the energy uncertainty $\Delta\varepsilon_i$ (lifetime broadening) of the level $\varepsilon_i$. Accordingly: the ratio $\Delta\varepsilon_i/(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f)$ describes how sharp a certain transition is.
Let us estimate this ratio from 11.22 : $\frac{(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f)}{\hbar}$ is a typical frequency, whose inverse is the typical time for an electron to go around an orbit. $d_{if}$ is the typical radius of an orbit, so that $\beta_e = d_{if} \, \frac{(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f)}{\hbar}/c$ is a typical speed of the electron in units of the speed of light.
In total, $\Delta\varepsilon_i/(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_f) \sim \beta_e^2 \alpha$, where $\alpha$ is the fine structure constant $\frac{q^2}{\hbar c} \approx 1/137$.

## 11.4 Nonrelativistic Bremsstrahlung

As we know from classical electrodynamics, accelerated charges emit radiation. If two particles scatter off each other, they will emit radiation. We would like to treat

this process quantum-mechanically. Therefore we consider the scattering of an electron with a nucleus described by a static potential $V(\mathbf{r})$, and take into account the interaction with radiation as well. For simplicity, we neglect the electron spin, since it does not change during scattering and has no effect on the result. As we consider scattering of a single electron, the result is independent of particle statistics and is also valid for bosons.
The Hamiltonian initially consists of three parts:

$$H = H_{kin} + H_{em} + H_{int} \ ,$$

the kinetic energy of the electron, the contribution from the free electromagnetic field 11.1a and the interaction between charge and field.

## 11.5 Kinetic energy of the electron

We now rewrite the kinetic part of the Hamiltonian of the electrons in second quantisation (cf. 9.11a , 9.9 or 9.29 ). We use as eigenfunctions $\varphi_n(\mathbf{x})$ plane waves with periodic boundary conditions in a cubic box of the length $L$ (cf. Sec. 9.6)

PLANE WAVE BASIS

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} e^{i\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}} \tag{11.23a}$$

$$q_\alpha = \frac{2\pi n_\alpha}{L}; \qquad n_\alpha \in \mathfrak{N}_0 \tag{11.23b}$$

$$\sum_q \varphi_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{r}) \varphi^*_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{r}') = \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') \tag{11.23c}$$

$$\int \varphi^*_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{r}) \varphi_{\mathbf{q}'}(\mathbf{r}) \, d^3\mathbf{r} = \delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}'} \tag{11.23d}$$

The completeness and orthogonality of plane waves follow from the fact that they are eigenfunctions of the momentum operator. It also follows that the kinetic energy is diagonal in this basis. As in 9.11a we get

KINETIC ENERGY FOR PLANE WAVES

$$H_{kin} = \sum_{\mathbf{q}} E_{\mathbf{q}} c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}} c_{\mathbf{q}} \tag{11.24a}$$

$$E_{\mathbf{q}} = \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}^2}{2m} \,. \tag{11.24b}$$

## 11.6 Interaction between charge and radiation field

We use once again $c = 1$. To derive the interaction between radiation field and electron, we start from the expression of the total electron Hamiltonian 4.1 . As described in Chap. 9 we use the energy expectation value and transform the electron wave function into a field operator. The result is the kinetic energy **plus** the interaction

$$\begin{aligned} H_{kin} + H_{int} &= \int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^{\dagger}(\mathbf{r}) \left[ \frac{1}{2m} \left( \frac{\hbar}{i} \boldsymbol{\nabla} - e\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \right)^2 + V(\mathbf{r}) \right] \Psi(\mathbf{r}) \\ &= \underbrace{\int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^{\dagger}(\mathbf{r}) \frac{-\hbar^2 \boldsymbol{\nabla}^2}{2m} \Psi(\mathbf{r})}_{H_{kin}} \underbrace{- \frac{e\hbar}{im} \int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^{\dagger}(\mathbf{r}) \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\nabla} \Psi(\mathbf{r})}_{H'} + \ldots \\ &\ldots + \underbrace{\int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^{\dagger}(\mathbf{r}) V(\mathbf{r}) \Psi(\mathbf{r})}_{H_V} + \underbrace{\frac{e^2}{2m} \int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^{\dagger}(\mathbf{r}) \mathbf{A}^2(\mathbf{r}) \Psi(\mathbf{r})}_{H''} \,. \end{aligned} \tag{11.25}$$

We evaluate again the interaction term $H'$ 11.25 , now with the electron field in second quantisation. We use again 11.5 for the vector potential. For a more efficient notation, we define the operators

$$a^{\tau}_{\mathbf{k},s} = \begin{cases} a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k},s} & \text{for} \quad \tau = +1 \\ a_{\mathbf{k},s} & \text{for} \quad \tau = -1 \end{cases}$$

and use them to rewrite 11.5 in a more compact form

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{k} \\ s=\pm 1 \\ \tau=\pm 1}} \left( \frac{2\pi\hbar}{\Omega k} \right)^{1/2} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} a^{\tau}_{\mathbf{k},s} e^{-i\tau\mathbf{kr}} \,. \tag{11.26}$$

Please remember that $\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\mathbf{A}=0$. Therefore, $\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot(\mathbf{A}f(\mathbf{r}))=\mathbf{A}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}f(\mathbf{r})$. Thereby, the Hamiltonian representing the interaction $H'$ in 11.25 becomes (we reintroduce $c$, so that $\omega_k = ck$)

$$\begin{aligned} H' &= -\frac{e\hbar}{imc}\int d^3\mathbf{r}\Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r})\left[\sum_{\mathbf{k},s,\tau}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_k}\right)^{1/2}\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}a^\tau_{\mathbf{k},s}e^{-i\tau\mathbf{kr}}\right]\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}\Psi(\mathbf{r}) \\ &= -\frac{e\hbar}{imc}\sum_{\mathbf{k}s,\tau}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_k}\right)^{1/2}\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}a^\tau_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\left[\int d^3\mathbf{r}\Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r})e^{-i\tau\mathbf{kr}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\Psi(\mathbf{r})\right] \end{aligned} \tag{11.27}$$

For the expression in square brackets we introduce the expansion of the field operators in plane waves (cf. 9.9 with 11.23a ), as we did for the kinetic energy.

$$\begin{aligned} [\ldots] &= \sum_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}'}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}c_{\mathbf{q}'}\int\frac{d^3\mathbf{r}}{\Omega}e^{-i\mathbf{qr}}e^{-i\tau\mathbf{kr}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}e^{i\mathbf{q}'\mathbf{r}} \\ &= i\sum_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}'}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}c_{\mathbf{q}'}\,\mathbf{q}'\int\frac{d^3\mathbf{r}}{\Omega}e^{i(\mathbf{q}'-\mathbf{q}-\tau\mathbf{k})\mathbf{r}} \\ &= i\sum_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}'}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}c_{\mathbf{q}'}\,\mathbf{q}'\,\delta_{\mathbf{q}-(\mathbf{q}'-\tau\mathbf{k})} \\ &= i\sum_{\mathbf{q}'}\mathbf{q}'c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'-\tau\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{q}'}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{11.28}$$

This result is plugged in the square brackets in the Hamiltonian 11.27 and leads to

$$\begin{aligned} H' &= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\sum_{\substack{\mathbf{kq}\\s,\tau}}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_k}\right)^{1/2}\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\,c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}-\tau\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{q}}a^\tau_{\mathbf{k},s} \\ &= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\sum_{\mathbf{kq}s}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_k}\right)^{1/2}\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\left(c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{q}}a_{\mathbf{k},s}+c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}c_{\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{k}}a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{11.29}$$

For the last transformation, we used $\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}=0$.
The interaction term consists of two parts, shown in Fig. 381 with Feynman diagrams. The picture on the left represents the first part of the Hamiltonian, in which an electron with momentum $\mathbf{q}_i$ and a photon with momentum $\mathbf{k}$ and polarisation $s$ are annihilated and a new electron with momentum $\mathbf{q}_f=\mathbf{q}_i+\mathbf{k}$ is created. The second term describes the inverse process – first, an electron is annihilated and then a photon and an electron are created.

Figure 11.1: Feynman diagrams for the two scattering events of the interaction term of the Hamiltonian 11.29 .

## 11.7 Diamagnetic contribution*(Addendum)*

Now we will evaluate the so-called diamagnetic part $H''$ in 11.25 . As we will see, this part does not contribute to the Bremsstrahlung. Once again we use 11.26 for $\mathbf{A}$,

$$H'' = \frac{e^2}{2mc^2} \int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \mathbf{A}^2(\mathbf{r}) \Psi(\mathbf{r})$$

$$\mathbf{A}^2 = \frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}' \\ s,s' \\ \tau,\tau'}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_\mathbf{k}\omega_{\mathbf{k}'}}} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} \, a^\tau_{\mathbf{k},s} a^{\tau'}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} e^{-i(\tau\mathbf{k}+\tau'\mathbf{k}')\cdot\mathbf{r}}$$

$$H'' = \frac{\pi\hbar e^2}{m\Omega} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}' \\ s,s' \\ \tau,\tau'}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_\mathbf{k}\omega_{\mathbf{k}'}}} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} \, a^\tau_{\mathbf{k},s} a^{\tau'}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} \ldots$$

$$\ldots \left[ \int d^3\mathbf{r} \Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) e^{-i(\tau\mathbf{k}+\tau'\mathbf{k}')\mathbf{r}} \Psi(\mathbf{r}) \right]$$

The term $[\ldots]$ is the same as in 11.27 , with the only difference that $\tau\mathbf{k} \to (\tau\mathbf{k} + \tau'\mathbf{k}')$. Accordingly, we use the result in 11.28

$$[\ldots] = \sum_\mathbf{q} c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}+\tau\mathbf{k}+\tau'\mathbf{k}'}$$

$$H'' = \frac{\pi\hbar e^2}{m\Omega} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}' \\ s,s' \\ \tau,\tau'}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_\mathbf{k}\omega_{\mathbf{k}'}}} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\, a^{\tau}_{\mathbf{k},s} a^{\tau'}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}+\tau\mathbf{k}+\tau'\mathbf{k}'} \cdot$$

DIAMAGNETIC TERM

$$\begin{aligned} H'' = \frac{\pi\hbar e^2}{m\Omega} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}' \\ s,s'}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_\mathbf{k}\omega_{\mathbf{k}'}}} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'} \Big\{ & a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s} a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'} c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{k}'} \\ & + a_{\mathbf{k},s} a_{\mathbf{k}',s'} c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}'} + a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s} a_{\mathbf{k}',s'} c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}'} \\ & + a_{\mathbf{k},s} a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'} c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{k}'} \Big\} \end{aligned} \tag{11.30}$$

The two lower processes describe scattering of an electron with a photon. For those, the total momentum is conserved. This is **Compton scattering**, where one photon is scattered off a (free) electron.

## 11.8 Potential term

Finally, we are left with the term representing the potential in 11.25 . In second quantisation the expression is derived using 9.29 (we neglect spin for simplicity):

POTENTIAL TERM

$$\begin{aligned} H_V &= \sum_{q,q'} V(\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}') c^\dagger_\mathbf{q} c_{\mathbf{q}'} \\ V(\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}') &= \int \varphi^*_\mathbf{q}(\mathbf{r}) V(\mathbf{r})\, \varphi_{\mathbf{q}'}(\mathbf{r})\, d^3\mathbf{r} \\ &= \frac{1}{\Omega} \int e^{i\mathbf{r}(\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{q}')} V(\mathbf{r})\, d^3\mathbf{r} \quad = V(\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{q}') \end{aligned} \tag{11.31}$$

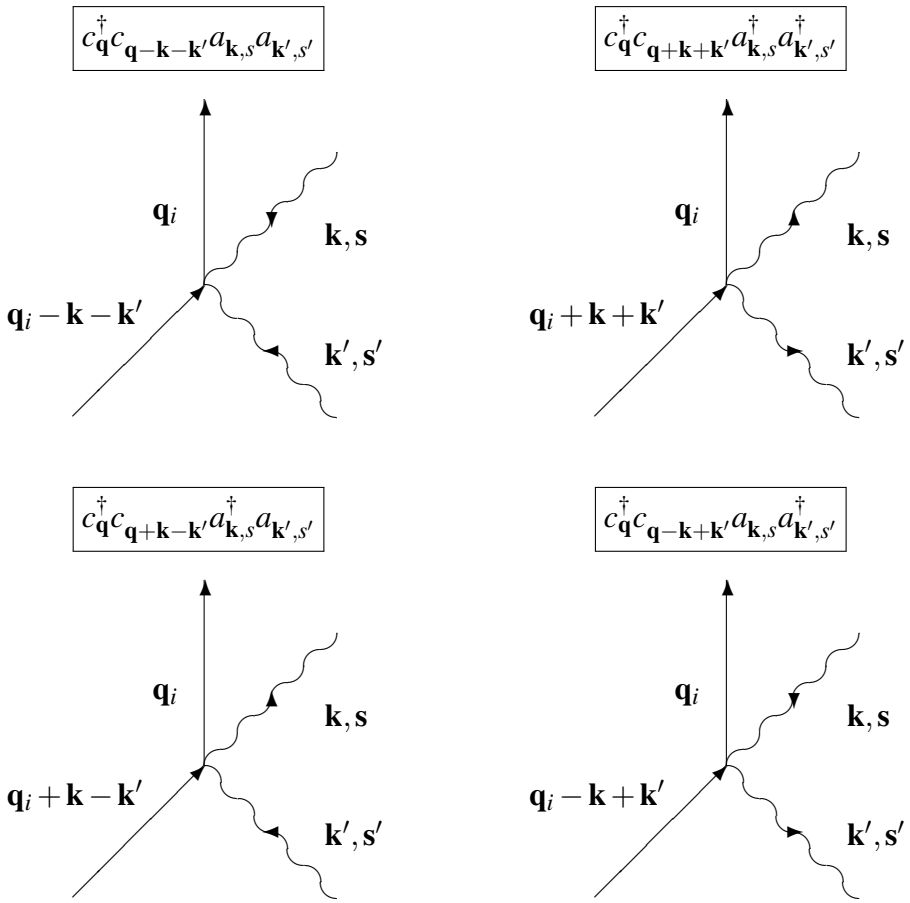



Figure 11.2: The contributions to $H''$ ( 11.30 ). The lower two terms contribute to Compton scattering. The upper terms describe emission and absorption of two photons.

For the Coulomb potential for atomic number $Z$ we have

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{Ze^2}{r} \tag{11.32}$$
$$V(\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{q}') = -\frac{4\pi Ze^2}{\Omega\,|\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{q}'|^2}\,.$$

Derivation of the Fourier transformation here: Sec. A.35 .

## 11.9 Transition amplitude

### 11.9.1 First order

We now split the Hamiltonian, which at this point consists of the following terms,

$$H = \underbrace{H_{kin} + H_{em}}_{H_0} + \underbrace{H_V + H' + H''}_{H_{int}}\,,$$

into an unperturbed term $H_0$ and a perturbation term $H_{int}$. Eigenvectors of $H_0$ have the form (Electron spin is neglected)

$$|\Psi\rangle = c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}_1} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}_2} \cdots a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_1,s_1} a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}_2,s_2} \cdots |0\rangle\,.$$

We are interested in processes where an electron is scattered and a photon is emitted. That means

$$\text{Initial state:} \qquad |i\rangle = c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle \tag{11.33a}$$
$$\text{Final state:} \qquad |f\rangle = c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}_f} a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s}|0\rangle\,.$$

We use Fermi's golden rule ( 3.27 with 3.33 ), to determine the transition rate

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\left|M_{fi}\right|^2\,\delta(E_f - E_i)$$
$$M_{fi} = H_{fi} + \sum_n \frac{H_{fn}H_{ni}}{E_i - E_n + iO^+} \tag{11.33b}$$

In principle, $H'$ 11.29 in first order could already describe the process we are interested in. The matrix element would then be

$$M_{fi} = \langle f|H'|i\rangle = -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\sum_{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{q}s'}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_{\mathbf{k}'}}\right)^{1/2}\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}$$
$$\times\,\langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}_f}a_{\mathbf{k},s}\left(c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{k}'}c_{\mathbf{q}}a_{\mathbf{k}',s'} + c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{k}'}c_{\mathbf{q}}a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\right)c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle \tag{11.34}$$

Obviously, only the second summand contributes and we require

$$\mathbf{k}' = \mathbf{k}, \qquad s' = s, \qquad \mathbf{q} = \mathbf{q}_i, \qquad \mathbf{q}_f = \mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{k}$$

Therefore, we have

$$M_{fi} = -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega\omega_{\mathbf{k}}}\right)^{1/2} \mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\, \delta_{\mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i + \mathbf{k}} \,.$$

Nevertheless, one can show that in this process energy and momentum cannot be simultaneously conserved. Proof here: Sec. A.36 .

### 11.9.2 Second order

Therefore, first order perturbation theory does not contribute to the bremsstrahlung process and we proceed to second order, i.e. the second term in 11.33b . (The Compton term 11.30 needs a photon in the initial state or two photons in the initial/final state and does not contribute either.)
We consider the matrix elements (of $H'$ 11.29 and $H_V$ 11.31 )

$$\begin{aligned} H_{fn}H_{ni} &= \left(H_{V\,fn} + H'_{fn}\right)\left(H_{V\,ni} + H'_{ni}\right) \\ &= H_{V\,fn}H_{V\,ni} + H'_{fn}H'_{ni} + H'_{fn}H_{V\,ni} + H_{V\,fn}H'_{ni} \,. \end{aligned}$$

The first two matrix elements vanish. In the first term, no photons are created by $H_V$, thus the final state cannot be reached. In the second term, a photon exists in an intermediate state, but applying $H'$ once more, it either annihilates this photon or creates a second one. Both possible results do not correspond to the final state. Therefore, we are left with

$$H_{fn}H_{ni} = H'_{f,n_1}H_{V\,n_1,i} + H_{V\,f,n_2}H'_{n_2,i} \,.$$

The corresponding processes are shown in 11.3 . Here, we have two possible intermediate states

$$\begin{aligned} |n_1\rangle &= c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}|0\rangle \\ |n_2\rangle &= c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s}|0\rangle \,, \end{aligned} \tag{11.35}$$

where we still have to sum over $\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{k}, s$.

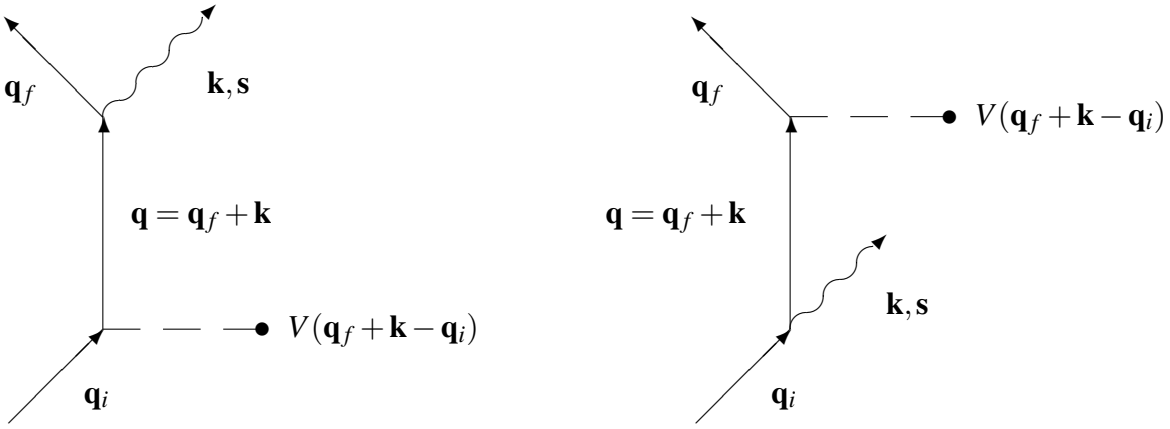



Figure 11.3: Second order processes for bremsstrahlung (cf. 11.29 , 11.31 ). On the left, with intermediate state $n_1$ and on the right with intermediate state $n_2$.

The contributing matrix elements (cf. 11.29 , 11.31 , 11.33a , 11.35 ) are

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle f|H'|n_1\rangle &= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\\
&\times\langle 0|a_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f}c_{\mathbf{q}_f}\left(c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'}a_{\mathbf{k}',s'}+c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\right)c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}|0\rangle\\
&= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\langle 0|a_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f}c_{\mathbf{q}_f}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}|0\rangle\\
&= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}_f}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}}|0\rangle\\
&\quad\times\langle 0|a_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f}a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k}',s'}|0\rangle\\
&= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\delta_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}_f}\delta_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{q}}\delta_{\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{k}_f}\delta_{s',s_f}\\
&= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}}}\mathbf{q}_f\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f}\,\delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}_f+\mathbf{k}_f} = \langle f|H'|n_1\rangle \qquad (11.36)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\langle n_2|H'|i\rangle = -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}$$
$$\times \langle 0|a_{\mathbf{k},s}c_{\mathbf{q}}\left(c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'}a_{\mathbf{k}',s'} + c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\right)c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle$$
$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\langle 0|a_{\mathbf{k},s}c_{\mathbf{q}}c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle$$

$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}}c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}'}c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle$$
$$\times \langle 0|a_{\mathbf{k},s}a^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}|0\rangle$$
$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k'\mathbf{q}'s'} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{k'}}}\mathbf{q}'\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}',s'}\delta_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}}\delta_{\mathbf{q}'+\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{q}_i}\delta_{\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{k}}\delta_{s',s}$$
$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_k}}\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\ \delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}_i-\mathbf{k}}$$
$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_k}}\mathbf{q}_i\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\ \delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}_i-\mathbf{k}} = \langle n_2|H'|i\rangle\ . \qquad (11.37)$$

For the last step we used that $\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} = 0$. We need the matrix elements of $H_V$ 11.31

$$\langle n_1|H_V|i\rangle = \langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}}H_V c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle$$
$$= \sum_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}''} V(\mathbf{q}'-\mathbf{q}'')\langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}}c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}'}c_{\mathbf{q}''}c^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{q}_i}|0\rangle$$
$$= \sum_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}''} V(\mathbf{q}'-\mathbf{q}'')\delta_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}}\delta_{\mathbf{q}'',\mathbf{q}_i}$$
$$= V(\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{q}_i)\ .$$

This matrix element has to be multiplied with ${H'}_{f,n_1}$ 11.36 and we get

$${H'}_{f,n_1}H_{Vn_1,i} = -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}}}\mathbf{q}_f\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}V(\mathbf{q}_f+\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{q}_i)\ \delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}_f+\mathbf{k}}\ .$$

The contributions to $M_{f,i}$ are therefore (cf. 11.35 )

$$M_{fi}^{(1)} = \sum_{\mathbf{q}} \frac{H'_{f,n_1} H_{V\,n_1,i}}{E_i - E_{n_1}(\mathbf{q}) + iO^+} \tag{11.38}$$

$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}}} \mathbf{q}_f \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \frac{V(\mathbf{q}_f + \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{q}_i)}{E_i - E_{n_1}(\mathbf{q}_f + \mathbf{k}) + iO^+}$$

$$E_{n_1}(\mathbf{q}) := \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}^2}{2m}$$

Due to energy conservation, we require

$$E_i = E_f = \frac{\hbar^2 {\mathbf{q}_f}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}$$

The energy denominator in 11.38 is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathscr{E}_1 &:= E_f - E_{n_1}(\mathbf{q}_f + \mathbf{k}_f) + iO^+ \\
&= \frac{\hbar^2({\mathbf{q}_f}^2 - (\mathbf{q}_f + \mathbf{k}_f)^2)}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f} + iO^+ \\
&= \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f} - \frac{\hbar^2(2\mathbf{q}_f \cdot \mathbf{k}_f + \mathbf{k}_f^2)}{2m} + iO^+ \\
&= \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f} - \hbar\mathbf{v}_f \cdot \mathbf{k}_f - \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{k}_f^2}{2m} + iO^+ \\
&= \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}\left(1 - \frac{\mathbf{k}_f \cdot \mathbf{v}_f}{|\mathbf{k}_f| c} - \frac{\hbar|\mathbf{k}_f|}{2mc}\right) + iO^+ \approx \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}
\end{aligned}$$

where the last approximation is valid in the nonrelativistic limit $\mathbf{v}_f \ll c$. Moreover, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle f|H_V|n_2\rangle &= \langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}_f} a_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} H_V c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}} a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s}|0\rangle \\
&= \sum_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}''} V(\mathbf{q}' - \mathbf{q}'')\langle 0|c_{\mathbf{q}_f} a_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}'} c_{\mathbf{q}''} c^\dagger_{\mathbf{q}} a^\dagger_{\mathbf{k},s}|0\rangle \\
&= \sum_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}''} V(\mathbf{q}' - \mathbf{q}'')\delta_{\mathbf{q}',\mathbf{q}_f}\delta_{\mathbf{q}'',\mathbf{q}}\delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_f}\delta_{s,s_f} \\
&= V(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}_f)\delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_f}\delta_{s,s_f}\ .
\end{aligned}$$

This matrix element has to be multiplied with $H'_{n_2,i}$ 11.37 and we get

$$\begin{aligned}
&H_{V\,f,n_2} H'_{n_2,i} \\
&= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}}} \mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} V(\mathbf{k}_f + \mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i)\ \delta_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{k}_f}\delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_f}\delta_{s,s_f}\ .
\end{aligned}$$

The contribution to $M_{fi}$ is

$$M_{fi}^{(2)} = \sum_{\mathbf{q},\mathbf{k},s} \frac{H_{Vf,n_2} H'_{n_2,i}}{E_i - E_{n_2}(\mathbf{q},\mathbf{k}) + iO^+}$$
$$= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\Omega}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}}} \mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} \frac{V(\mathbf{k}_f + \mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i)}{E_i - E_{n_2}(\mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{k}_f, \mathbf{k}_f) + iO^+} \quad (11.39)$$

The energy denominator is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathscr{E}_2 &:= E_i - E_{n_2}(\mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{k}_f, \mathbf{k}_f) + iO^+ \\
&= \frac{\hbar^2\left(\mathbf{q}_i{}^2 - (\mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{k}_f)^2\right)}{2m} - \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f} \\
&= -\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f} + \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{k}_f}{m} - \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{k}_f^2}{2m} \\
&= -\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}\left(1 - \frac{\mathbf{k}_f \cdot \mathbf{v}_i}{|\mathbf{k}_f| c} + \frac{\hbar|\mathbf{k}_f|}{2mc}\right) + iO^+ \approx -\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}
\end{aligned}$$

The matrix element we were looking for is (cf. 11.38 , 11.39 )

$$\begin{aligned}
M_{fi} &= M_{fi}^{(1)} + M_{fi}^{(2)} \\
&= -\frac{e\hbar}{mc}\left(\frac{2\pi c^2}{\hbar\Omega\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{-4\pi Z e^2}{\Omega(\mathbf{k}_f + \mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i)^2} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} \cdot \left(\mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i\right) \\
&= -\left(\frac{2\pi e^2}{\hbar\Omega\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{4\pi Z e^2}{\Omega(\mathbf{k}_f + \mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i)^2} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} \cdot \underbrace{\left(\mathbf{v}_f - \mathbf{v}_i\right)}_{=:\Delta\mathbf{v}}
\end{aligned}$$

The photon momentum is much smaller than the one of the electron ($k = \omega_k/c$), so that we can omit $\mathbf{k}_f$ in the central term and replace there $\mathbf{q}_f - \mathbf{q}_i \to m\Delta\mathbf{v}$. Finally, we get

$$M_{fi} = \left(\frac{4\pi Z e^2 \hbar^2}{\Omega m^2 (\Delta\mathbf{v})^2}\right)\left(\frac{2\pi e^2}{\hbar\Omega\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f}^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k}_f,s_f} \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v} \quad (11.40)$$

## 11.10 Cross-section

The total **cross-section** $\sigma_{\text{total}}$ defines an effective scattering surface: Particles going through that surface are scattered by the bremsstrahlung process:

$$\sigma_{\text{total}} = \frac{\text{number of scattered particles/time}}{\text{flux (or current density) of incident particles}} \equiv \frac{I_{scatt}}{J_{incid}}$$

If $N_p$ is the total number of incident particles in volume $\Omega$, then

$$J_{incid} = \frac{N_p}{\Omega}\, v_i \qquad v_i = \text{particle velocity}$$

The probability per unit time that one particle is scattered, is given by the transition rate summed over all final states, $\sum_f W_{i\to f}$. The total current of scattered particles is thus given by

$$I_{scatt} = N_p \sum_f W_{i\to f}$$

In total, we thus have

$$\sigma_{\text{total}} = \frac{I_{scatt}}{J_{incid}} = \frac{N_p \sum_f W_{i\to f}}{\frac{N_p}{\Omega}\, v_i} \tag{11.41}$$

using 11.41 , 11.40 and 3.27 we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_{\text{total}} &= \frac{\Omega}{v_i} \sum_{\mathbf{k}_f s_f \mathbf{q}_f} \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \left|M_{fi}\right|^2 \delta\big(\frac{\hbar^2 {\mathbf{q}_f}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}_f} - E_i\big) \\
&= \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \sum_{\mathbf{k}s\mathbf{q}} \frac{\Omega}{v_i} \left(\frac{16\pi^2 Z^2 e^4 \hbar^4}{\Omega^2 m^4 (\Delta\mathbf{v})^4}\right) \left(\frac{2\pi e^2}{\hbar\Omega\omega_{\mathbf{k}}^3}\right) \\
&\qquad \times \left|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\Delta\mathbf{v}\right|^2 \delta\big(\frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - E_i\big) \\
&= \frac{4(2\pi)^4 \Omega Z^2 e^6 \hbar^4}{\hbar^2 v_i \Omega^3 m^4} \sum_{\mathbf{k}s\mathbf{q}} \frac{\left|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\Delta\mathbf{v}\right|^2}{\left|\Delta\mathbf{v}\right|^4 \omega_{\mathbf{k}}^3} \delta\big(\frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - E_i\big) \\
&= \frac{4(2\pi)^4 Z^2 e^6 \hbar^2}{v_i \Omega^2 m^4} \sum_{\mathbf{k}s\mathbf{q}} \frac{\left|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\Delta\mathbf{v}\right|^2}{\left|\Delta\mathbf{v}\right|^4 \omega_{\mathbf{k}}^3} \delta\big(\frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - E_i\big)
\end{aligned}$$

Transforming the sum into an integral, we get (cf. A.50 )

$$\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{\mathbf{q}} \longrightarrow \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\int d^3\mathbf{q} \;= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\int q^2\, dq\, d\Omega_q \;,$$

where $d\Omega_q$ is the differential spherical angle.
For the cross-section the sum over wavevectors of the photon as well as of the electron is transformed into an integral and we get an expression independent of the volume.

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_{\text{total}} &= \frac{4Z^2 e^6 \hbar^2}{v_i m^4 (2\pi)^2} \sum_s \int q^2 dq\, d\Omega_q \int k^2 dk d\Omega_k \frac{\left|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\Delta\mathbf{v}\right|^2}{\left|\Delta v\right|^4 \omega_{\mathbf{k}}^3} \\
&\quad \times \delta\big(\frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - E_i\big) \;.
\end{aligned}$$

We use the relation $k = \omega_{\mathbf{k}}/c$ and get

$$\sigma_{\text{total}} = \frac{4Z^2e^6\hbar^2}{c^3 v_i m^4 (2\pi)^2} \sum_s \int q^2 dq d\Omega_q d\Omega_k \frac{d\omega}{\omega} \frac{|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v}|^2}{|\Delta v|^4} \delta\big(\frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega - E_i\big) \,. \tag{11.42}$$

Note that the polarisation vector $\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}$ is only dependent on the direction of $\mathbf{k}$, but not on its absolute value.

We consider now low energy photons, that means that the energy of the photons is much smaller than the energy of the electrons. Due to the $\delta$ function ($q_f^2 = q_i^2$), we have elastic scattering. This results in

$$\begin{aligned} & \big|\mathbf{v}_f\big| = |\mathbf{v}_i| \\ \Rightarrow \quad & |\Delta\mathbf{v}|^2 = \big(v_i^2 - 2v_i v_f \cos(\theta) + v_f^2\big) \\ & \qquad = v_i^2 2\big(1 - \cos(\theta)\big) \\ & \qquad = 4v_i^2 \sin^2(\frac{\theta}{2}) \,, \end{aligned}$$

where $\theta$ is the scattering angle. 11.42 gives

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{\text{total}} &= \frac{4Z^2e^6\hbar^2}{16c^3 v_i m^4 (2\pi)^2} \sum_s \int q^2 dq d\Omega_q d\Omega_k \frac{d\omega}{\omega} \frac{|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v}|^2}{v_i^4 \sin^4\frac{\theta}{2}} \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \delta\big(q^2 - q_i^2\big) \\ &= \frac{Z^2e^6\hbar^2}{16c^3 v_i m^4 \pi^2} \sum_s \int q^2 dq d\Omega_q d\Omega_k \frac{d\omega}{\omega} \frac{|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v}|^2}{v_i^4 \sin^4\frac{\theta}{2}} \frac{m\,\delta\big(q - q_i\big)}{\hbar^2 q_i} \\ &= \frac{Z^2e^6\hbar^2}{16c^3 m^4 \pi^2} \underbrace{\frac{m q_i^2}{v_i \hbar^2 q_i}}_{\frac{m^2}{\hbar^3}} \sum_s \int d\Omega_q d\Omega_k \frac{d\omega}{\omega} \frac{|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v}|^2}{v_i^4 \sin^4\frac{\theta}{2}} \\ &= \frac{Z^2e^6}{16c^3 m^2 \pi^2 \hbar} \sum_s \int d\Omega_q d\Omega_k \frac{d\omega}{\omega} \frac{|\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s} \cdot \Delta\mathbf{v}|^2}{v_i^4 \sin^4\frac{\theta}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

We can directly read the differential cross-section out of this expression.

DIFFERENTIAL CROSS-SECTION OF THE BREMSSTRAHLUNG

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d^3\sigma}{d\Omega_k d\Omega_{q_f} d\omega_k} &= \frac{Z^2e^6}{16c^3m^2\pi^2\hbar\omega}\frac{\sum_s |\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},s}\cdot\Delta\mathbf{v}|^2}{v_i^4\sin^4(\frac{\theta}{2})} \\ &= \frac{Z^2e^4}{m^2v_i^4\sin^4(\frac{\theta}{2})}\frac{e^2|\Delta\mathbf{v}_\perp|^2}{16\pi^2c^3\hbar\omega} \end{aligned} \tag{11.43}$$

Here, $\Delta\mathbf{v}_\perp$ is the part of $\Delta\mathbf{v}$ which is perpendicular to $\mathbf{k}$.

The first factor in 11.43 is the formula for Rutherford scattering and the second one gives the probability density for a photon with energy $\hbar\omega$ to be found in the spatial angle unit $d\Omega_k$.
We conclude with some comments

- $Z^2$ dependence $\Rightarrow$ To generate X-Rays, we need elements with high atomic numbers.
  At the same time, the melting point has to be high, because a large amount of energy is left behind in the substrate in the form of heat. Therefore, tungsten is often used as X-Ray source.

- We have a continuous spectrum. However, there is a maximum photon energy.

$$\begin{aligned} E_{ph} &\leq E_i \\ \hbar\omega^{\max} &= E_i = O(\text{eV}) \\ \hbar ck^{\max} &= E_i = O(\text{eV}) \\ \frac{2\pi\hbar c}{\lambda^{\min}} &= (\text{eV}) \\ \lambda^{\min} &= \frac{2\pi\hbar c}{O(\text{eV})} \\ &= \frac{hc}{\text{eV}} \sim 10^{-6}m \end{aligned}$$

  (Duane-Hunt law)

# Chapter 12

# Scattering theory

This chapter essentially follows the treatment by the book by J.J. Sakurai (see Sec. 14), Chap 7.
Scattering describes collision between particles and/or waves. This can be, for example, used experimentally to provide information on the properties of particles (mass, interactions, charge, etc.), radiation, and matter. Scattering takes place if the involved particles interact with each other. However, in such an event one is not interested in what happens in detail during the interaction but rather in the final state at large times, when the particles don't interact any more. Specifically, one would like to determine the relation between the initial conditions, before particles or waves start to interact, and the final conditions in which they do not interact anymore. Since in quantum mechanics there are no physical trajectories one is interested in probabilities. The experimentally measured quantity is typically the (differential) cross section (see below).
Scattering processes can be roughly classified as

1. Elastic: The total kinetic energy is conserved.

2. Inelastic: Part of the kinetic energy is transferred to or from internal degrees of freedom of the particles involved (for example: internal excited states are created by using some of the kinetic energy).

3. Non particle conserving: Particles are created or annihilated in the process.

Here, we will mainly consider Elastic processes between two particles.

### 12.0.1 Laboratory vs. Center-of-Mass frames

Often one considers the case of a particle hitting a fixed target (scattering center). This is justified when the target is bound, e.g., to a solid or when its mass is much

larger than the one of the scattered particle. If this is not the case, one has to consider the motion of the target as well. If total momentum is conserved this is easily done by going over into the center-of-mass frame. As in classical physics, this is described by the coordinate

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{m_1\mathbf{r_1} + m_2\mathbf{r_2}}{m_1 + m_2} \tag{12.1}$$

which moves freely. In other words, the $\mathbf{R}$-dependence of the wave function is the one of a free particle

$$\psi(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{r} \equiv \mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2) = e^{i\mathbf{P}\cdot\mathbf{R}}\varphi(\mathbf{r})$$

The relative motion, described by the coordinate $\mathbf{r}$, is controlled by the Hamiltonian

$$H_{rel} = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2\mu} + V(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) \,,$$

where, as in classical physics, $\mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1+m_2}$ is the reduced mass, $\mathbf{p}$ is the momentum associated to $\mathbf{r}$, and $V$ is the potential. So the problem becomes equivalent to the one of a target fixed at the origin, however with the replacement of the mass with the reduced mass.
However, experimentally one is interested in the cross section (distribution of scattering angles) in the laboratory frame. This is different from the one in the center-of-mass frame. Thus, after solving the problem in the "simpler" center-of-mass frame one has to carry out the transformation into the laboratory frame. The procedure is identical to the one used in classical mechanics.
In the following, we will consider only the first part of the problem, namely the treatment of the scattering event in the center-of-mass frame. We will also now use $m$ for the reduced mass, and restrict to the nonrelativistic case.

## 12.1 Formal theory of scattering

### Lippmann-Schwinger equation

The system is described by the Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H} = \hat{H}_0 + \hat{V} \qquad \hat{H}_0 = \frac{\hat{p}^2}{2m} \tag{12.2}$$

i.e. an unperturbed Hamiltonian describing free motion and a perturbation potential. Accordingly, one has unperturbed states $|\varphi_0\rangle$ (typically, momentum eigenstates $\sim e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$) satisfying

$$\hat{H}_0\,|\varphi_0\rangle = E\,|\varphi_0\rangle$$

$|\varphi_0\rangle$ will be the state in the distant past $t \to -\infty$ providing the initial conditions before $\hat{V}$ acts. Since the process is elastic, we look for an eigenstate of the total Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ with the same energy:

$$\hat{H}\,|\psi\rangle = E\,|\psi\rangle \tag{12.3}$$

Formally, we can consider $\hat{V}$ as being "switched on" adiabatically in the past. This can be done by using

$$\hat{V}(t) = e^{\varepsilon t}\hat{V} \qquad \varepsilon \to 0^+ \qquad (t \leq 0)$$

Formally, the solution of 12.3 satisfies the **Lippmann-Schwinger equation** [1]

$$|\psi\rangle = (E - \hat{H}_0 \pm i\varepsilon)^{-1}\hat{V}\,|\psi\rangle + |\varphi_0\rangle \tag{12.4}$$

The infinitesimal $\varepsilon \to 0^+$ is necessary in order to deal with the singularity at $E = \hat{H}_0$. We will discuss the signs $\pm$ later.

**Proof:**

$$(E - \hat{H}_0)\,|\psi\rangle = \hat{V}\,|\psi\rangle + \underbrace{(E - \hat{H}_0)\,|\varphi_0\rangle}_{=0} \Rightarrow (E - \hat{H}_0 - \hat{V})\,|\psi\rangle = 0$$

Which is 12.3 .
The Lippmann-Schwinger equation 12.4 is still basis independent. It is useful to work in the position basis $|\mathbf{x}\rangle$. Here, 12.4 becomes:

$$\langle \mathbf{x}|\psi\rangle = \langle \mathbf{x}|\varphi_0\rangle + \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\int d^3x'\; G_\pm(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\left\langle \mathbf{x}'\middle|\,\hat{V}\,|\psi\right\rangle \tag{12.5}$$

with the **Green's function**

$$G_\pm(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') \equiv \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left\langle \mathbf{x}\middle|\cdot(E - \hat{H}_0 \pm i\varepsilon)^{-1}\cdot\middle|\mathbf{x}'\right\rangle \tag{12.6}$$

For $\hat{H}_0 = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m}$, the wave function associated to $|\varphi_0\rangle$ is the one of a free particle with momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}$ [2]

$$\langle \mathbf{x}|\varphi_0\rangle = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\,e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}}$$

[1] This is the solution with the correct boundary conditions, namely that $|\psi\rangle \to |\varphi_0\rangle$ for $\hat{V} \to 0$.
[2] We use $\hbar = 1$, so that momentum and wavevector have the same units.

To evaluate 12.6 one inserts the identity $\int d^3\mathbf{p}' \, |\mathbf{p}'\rangle \langle \mathbf{p}'|$ twice at the two "·", yielding:

$$G_\pm(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') = \frac{1}{2m} \int d^3p' \, d^3p'' \, \langle \mathbf{x}|\mathbf{p}'\rangle \langle \mathbf{p}'| \, (E - \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m} \pm i\varepsilon)^{-1} \, |\mathbf{p}''\rangle \langle \mathbf{p}''|\mathbf{x}'\rangle \ . \quad (12.7)$$

The operator in the expectation value is diagonal in that basis:

$$\langle \mathbf{p}'| \, (E - \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m} \pm i\varepsilon)^{-1} \, |\mathbf{p}''\rangle = \delta^3(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{p}'')(E - \frac{\mathbf{p}'^2}{2m} \pm i\varepsilon)^{-1} \ .$$

Using $\langle x|p\rangle = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} e^{i\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{x}}$, 12.7 becomes

$$G_\pm(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') = \int \frac{d^3\mathbf{p}'}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{e^{i\,\mathbf{p}'\cdot(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')}}{\underbrace{2mE}_{\equiv \mathbf{k}^2} - \mathbf{p}'^2 \pm i\varepsilon} \quad (12.8)$$

In order to evaluate $G_\pm$, notice that it satisfies the equation

$$(\mathbf{k}^2 + \nabla^2) G_\pm(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}') = \int \frac{d^3\mathbf{p}'}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{\mathbf{k}^2 - \mathbf{p}'^2}{\mathbf{k}^2 - \mathbf{p}'^2 \pm i\varepsilon} e^{i\,\mathbf{p}'\cdot(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')} = \delta^3(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}') \quad (12.9)$$

From electrodynamics we recognize 12.9 as the equation for the Green's function of the inhomogeneous wave equation. From electrodynamics we also know its solution (we give a proof here: Sec. A.37 ):

$$G_\pm(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}') = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{e^{\pm ik|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}}{|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|} \ , \quad (12.10)$$

where the signs in the exponent depend on the sign in front of $i\varepsilon$. $G_\pm$ clearly depends only on the modulus of the distance between the two points $|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|$. Thus, 12.10 describes outgoing $(+)$ or incoming $(-)$ spherical waves. In a scattering process we are obviously interested in outgoing waves only. The seemingly formal choice of the infinitesimal $+i\varepsilon$ thus acquires a physical meaning: it selects the solution with the correct causal boundary conditions, in which the scattered wave propagates away from the target after the interaction.
Putting everything together, 12.5 becomes

$$\langle \mathbf{x}|\psi\rangle = \psi(\mathbf{x}) = \varphi_0(\mathbf{x}) - \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \int d^3x' \, \frac{e^{\pm ik|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}}{4\pi|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|} V(\mathbf{x}')\psi(\mathbf{x}') \ , \quad (12.11)$$

where we have used the fact that for a local potential

$$\langle \mathbf{x}'| \, \hat{V} \, |\psi\rangle = V(\mathbf{x}')\psi(\mathbf{x}') \ .$$

Notice that 12.11 is an integral equation for $\psi(\mathbf{x})$, which is still prohibitive to solve.

### 12.1.1 One dimension:

In some cases we may be interested in a one-dimensional (1D) system instead. This is relevant, e.g., for quantum transport, quantum dots, molecular junctions, etc. In 1D 12.5 becomes

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \varphi_0(\mathbf{x}) + \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\int dx'\, G_{1D}(x-x')\, V(\mathbf{x}')\psi(\mathbf{x}')\,. \tag{12.12}$$

In one dimension, $G_{1D}$ satisfies the 1-D version of 12.9 :

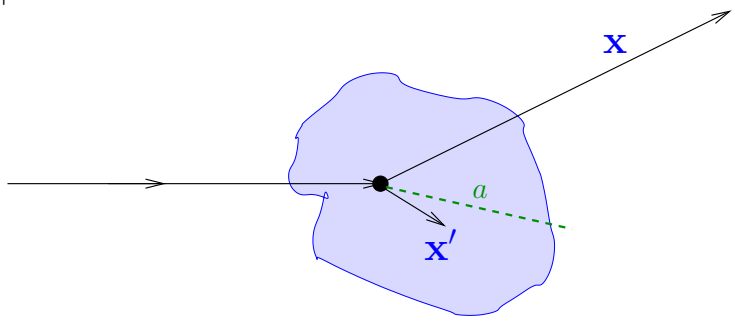
$$(k^2 + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2})G_{1D}(x-x') = \delta(x-x') \qquad k = \sqrt{2mE} > 0$$

with solution (proof: here: Sec. A.38 )

$$G_{1D}(x-x') = -\frac{i}{2k}e^{ik|x-x'|} \tag{12.13}$$

### 12.1.2 Scattering amplitude in 3D:

We are interested in the wave function far away from the scattering center, i.e. $r \equiv |\mathbf{x}| \gg a$, where $a$ is the range of the interaction. (see Fig.) Clearly, this implies that $r \gg |\mathbf{x}'|$ as well.




In this case, we can approximate

$$|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'| \approx r - \frac{\mathbf{x}}{r}\cdot\mathbf{x}' + O(x'^2/r) \qquad (\text{ for } r \equiv |\mathbf{x}| \gg a)\,. \tag{12.14}$$

Introducing the directed $\mathbf{k}_{out}$ vector, i.e. the vector with length $k$ in the scattering direction:

$$\mathbf{k}_{out} \equiv k\,\frac{\mathbf{x}}{r}$$

we get from 12.11 with 12.14 (valid for $r \gg x'$)

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) \approx \underbrace{\varphi_0(\mathbf{x})}_{\text{Plane wave}} - \underbrace{\frac{e^{ikr}}{r}}_{\text{Spherical wave}} \underbrace{\frac{(2\pi)^{3/2}m}{2\pi\hbar^2}\int d^3x'\,\frac{e^{-i\mathbf{k}_{out}\cdot\mathbf{x}'}}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}V(\mathbf{x}')\psi(\mathbf{x}')}_{\text{Amplitude}} \tag{12.15}$$

With

$$\varphi_0(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}}}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \tag{12.16}$$

12.15 becomes

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\left(e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} + \frac{e^{i\,k\,r}}{r} f(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out})\right) \tag{12.17}$$

with the **scattering amplitude**

$$\mathbf{f(k,k_{out})} = -\frac{(2\pi)^2 m}{\hbar^2}\int d^3x'\,\frac{e^{-i\mathbf{k}_{out}\cdot\mathbf{x}'}}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\,V(\mathbf{x}')\;\psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}') = -\frac{(2\pi)^2 m}{\hbar^2}\,\langle\mathbf{k}_{out}|\,\hat{V}\,|\psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle\;, \tag{12.18}$$

where we have indicated explicitly that $\psi$ depends on $\mathbf{k}$, i.e. on the properties of the incoming wave.

### Differential cross section

The scattering amplitude $f(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out})$ is directly related to the **differential cross section** $d\sigma/d\Omega$. For an infinitesimal solid angle $d\Omega$ around a given direction this is given by

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}d\Omega = \frac{I_{scatt}(d\Omega)}{J_{incid}}\;, \tag{12.19}$$

where $I_{scatt}(d\Omega)$ is the number of particles per unit time (i.e. the current) scattered into $d\Omega$.
$J_{incid}$ is the current density (i.e. the current per area (or flux)) of incident particles. On the other hand, $I_{scatt}(d\Omega)$ is the scattered current density times the area:

$$I_{scatt}(d\Omega) = J_{scatt}\;r^2\;d\Omega\;.$$

Furthermore, for a homogeneous flux of particles one has for both incident and scattered particles

$$J = \text{particle density} \times \text{velocity} = N_p|\psi|^2\frac{\hbar k}{m}\;.$$

From 12.17 we have

$$|\psi_{incid}|^2 = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \qquad |\psi_{scatt}|^2 = \frac{|f(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out})|^2}{(2\pi)^3 r^2}$$

which gives for 12.19

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{J_{scatt}\;r^2}{J_{incid}} = |f(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out})|^2 \tag{12.20}$$

Notice that $d\sigma/d\Omega$ has the dimension of an area: it can be visualized as the effective area that the target offers to the incoming beam for deflecting particles into the given solid angle. Integrating over all angles gives the total cross section $\sigma_{tot}$.

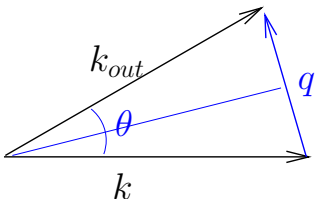
### 12.1.3 First order Born approximation

Of course, $f(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out})$ requires the knowledge of the exact $\psi$, so this does not solve the problem yet. However, for a weak potential $\hat{V}$, one can replace in 12.18 $\psi(\mathbf{x}) \to \varphi_0(\mathbf{x})$. This is the **First order Born approximation.** This yields

$$f^{(1)}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out}) = -\frac{m}{2\pi\hbar^2}\underbrace{\int d^3x'\, e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_{out})\cdot\mathbf{x}'}\, V(\mathbf{x}')}_{\tilde{V}(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_{out})} \qquad \tilde{V} = \text{Fourier transform.} \tag{12.21}$$

For a spherically symmetric potential $V(r)$, the Fourier transform $\tilde{V}(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_{out})$ only depends on (see figure)

$$q \equiv |\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_{out}| = 2k\sin\frac{\theta}{2} \tag{12.22}$$




The integral over $\mathbf{x}'$ in 12.21 can be readily carried out in spherical coordinates, by taking the vector $\mathbf{q} \equiv (\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_{out})$ in the $z$ direction. Then one has [3]

$$(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_{out})\cdot\mathbf{x}' = r'\, q\cos\theta' \qquad \int d^3x' \to \int d\varphi'\, d\cos\theta'\, r'^2 dr'$$

So 12.21 becomes ($c = \cos\theta'$)

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(1)}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_{out}) &= f^{(1)}(q) = -\frac{2m}{2\pi\hbar^2}\, 2\pi \int r'^2\, dr'\, V(r') \int_{-1}^{1} e^{ir'qc} dc \\ &= -\frac{m}{iq\hbar^2}\int_0^\infty r'\, V(r')\, 2i\sin(qr')dr' \qquad (12.23) \\ &= -\frac{2m}{\hbar^2 q}\int_0^\infty r' V(r')\sin(qr')dr' \qquad (12.24) \end{aligned}$$

[3] Don't confuse $\theta'$, which is the angle between $\mathbf{q}$ and $\mathbf{x}'$, with $\theta$ (see Fig.).

**Limiting cases**

1. For small energies $a\,k, a\,q \ll 1$
   $f^{(1)} = -\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\int_0^\infty V(r')\,r'^2\,dr'$ is isotropic, i.e. $\theta$-independent

2. For large energies
   $f^{(1)} \to 0$ except for small angles $\theta \sim 1/(k\,a)$

**Example: Yukawa potential**

$$V(r) = V_0 \frac{e^{-\mu r}}{\mu r} \tag{12.25}$$

12.23 gives

$$f^{(1)}(q) = -\frac{2mV_0}{\mu\hbar^2}\frac{1}{q^2+\mu^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = |f^{(1)}(2k\sin\frac{\theta}{2})|^2 = \left(\frac{2mV_0}{\mu\hbar^2}\right)^2\left(\mu^2+4k^2\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}\right)^{-2}$$

The Coulomb potential is obtained by taking

$$\mu \to 0 \qquad \text{with fixed } \frac{V_0}{\mu} = Ze^2$$

This gives Rutherford's formula for Coulomb scattering

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{m^2Z^2e^4}{4p^4\sin^4\frac{\theta}{2}} \qquad p = \hbar k$$

which is the same as in the classical case, and indeed there is no $\hbar$ dependence.

### 12.1.4 Higher order terms

To go beyond the first order in the Born approximation one introduces the so-called $\hat{T}$-matrix which has the property

$$\hat{V}\,|\psi\rangle = \hat{T}\,|\varphi_0\rangle \tag{12.26}$$

Using 12.4 one gets

$$\hat{T}\,|\varphi_0\rangle = \hat{V}\,|\varphi_0\rangle + \hat{V}(E-\hat{H}_0+i\varepsilon)^{-1}\hat{T}\,|\varphi_0\rangle$$

Since this holds for arbitrary initial states $|\varphi_0\rangle$, we have

$$\hat{T} = \hat{V} + \hat{V}(E-\hat{H}_0+i\varepsilon)^{-1}\hat{T} \tag{12.27}$$

This allows one to write a formal expansion for $\hat{T}$ in powers of $\hat{V}$. Indeed if $T^{(n)}$ is the scattering matrix evaluated to order $O(V^n)$, then from 12.27 we can get the next order term:

$$\hat{T}^{(n+1)} = \hat{V} + \hat{V}(E - \hat{H}_0 + i\varepsilon)^{-1}\hat{T}^{(n)}$$

Since clearly $\hat{T}^{(1)} = \hat{V}$, we get

$$\hat{T} = \hat{V} + \hat{V}\hat{G}_0\hat{V} + \hat{V}\hat{G}_0\hat{V}\hat{G}_0\hat{V} + \cdots \qquad \hat{G}_0 \equiv (E - \hat{H}_0 + i\varepsilon)^{-1} \tag{12.28}$$

This Born series has a suggestive reading: each factor $\hat{V}$ describes one scattering event off the potential, and each $\hat{G}_0$ the free propagation between two such events. The first Born approximation thus corresponds to a single scattering event, which is why it requires a weak potential. Once we have $\hat{T}$, the scattering amplitude is given by (we use $|\varphi_0\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle$; cf. 12.18 with 12.26 ):

$$f(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_{out}) = \gamma \langle \mathbf{k}_{out} | \hat{T} | \mathbf{k} \rangle \qquad \gamma = -\frac{(2\pi)^2 m}{\hbar^2} \tag{12.29}$$

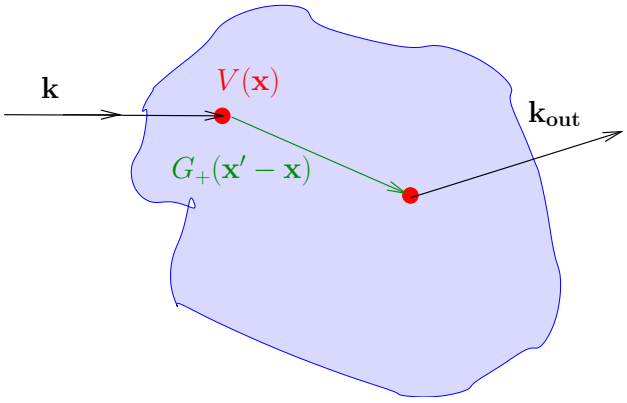
Using 12.28 , one can write a corresponding expansion for $f = f^{(1)} + f^{(2)} + f^{(3)} + \cdots$, where the first order term is obviously the first Born approximation 12.21

$$f^{(1)} = \gamma \langle \mathbf{k}_{out} | \hat{V} | \mathbf{k} \rangle \ .$$

The second-order term is then

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(2)} &= \gamma \langle \mathbf{k}_{out} | \hat{V}\hat{G}_0\hat{V} | \mathbf{k} \rangle \\ &= \gamma \int \langle \mathbf{k}_{out} | \hat{V} | \mathbf{x}' \rangle \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} G_+(\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}) \langle \mathbf{x} | \hat{V} | \mathbf{k} \rangle \, d^3x \, d^3x' \\ &\frac{\gamma}{(2\pi)^3} e^{-i\mathbf{k}_{out}\cdot\mathbf{x}'} V(\mathbf{x}') \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} G_+(\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}) V(\mathbf{x}) e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} d^3x \, d^3x' \end{aligned} \tag{12.30}$$

Here $G_+$ is the Green's function defined in 12.8 and 12.10 . 12.30 can be easily interpreted by going through the equation from right to left. One starts with a particle with momentum $\mathbf{k}$ propagating until the scattering point $\mathbf{x}$, from this point it propagates according to $G_+$ until the next point $\mathbf{x}'$, and then it exits with momentum $\mathbf{k}_{out}$ (see figure). Higher-order terms (see also 12.28 ) can be similarly considered as multi-scattering processes in the interaction region with a propagator term $G_+$ (outgoing wave) between one point and the next.




## 12.2 Inelastic scattering

Up to now the target was structureless: the particle could only be deflected, without changing its kinetic energy. We now allow for internal degrees of freedom of the particle and/or of the target, e.g. atomic orbitals, spin, etc. Part of the kinetic energy can then be used to excite these internal states: the scattering process becomes inelastic. The natural basis is now

$$|\mathbf{x}\, n\rangle \ ,$$

where $n$ labels the internal states $|n\rangle$, with energies $\varepsilon_n$. The unperturbed Hamiltonian consists of the kinetic term plus the internal (target) Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H}_0 = \underbrace{\frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m}}_{\equiv \hat{H}_K} + \underbrace{\sum_n \varepsilon_n |n\rangle \langle n|}_{\equiv \hat{H}_I} \ . \tag{12.31}$$

We take the target to be initially in its ground state $n = 0$, so that the initial state of 12.4 is the direct generalisation of $\varphi_0$:

$$\langle \mathbf{x}\, n|\varphi_0\rangle = \frac{e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{x}}}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\, \delta_{n,0} \ . \tag{12.32}$$

The potential is still local in space, but it is now a "matrix" in the internal quantum numbers, since it can produce transitions between internal states:

$$\langle \mathbf{x}\, n|\hat{V}\,|\mathbf{x}'\, n'\rangle = \delta^3(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')\, V_{nn'}(\mathbf{x}') \ . \tag{12.33}$$

### 12.2.1 Coupled Lippmann-Schwinger equations

The wave function now has one component per internal state ("channel"):

$$\psi_n(\mathbf{x}) \equiv \langle \mathbf{x}\, n | \psi \rangle \ .$$

Multiplying the Lippmann-Schwinger equation 12.4 by $\langle \mathbf{x}\, n|$ (instead of $\langle \mathbf{x}|$, cf. 12.5 ) gives a set of coupled equations for the $\psi_n$:

$$\psi_n(\mathbf{x}) = \delta_{n0} \frac{e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{x}}}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} + \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \sum_p \int d^3x' \, G_+^n(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}') \, V_{np}(\mathbf{x}') \, \psi_p(\mathbf{x}') \ , \qquad (12.34)$$

with the channel Green's function (cf. 12.6 )

$$G_+^n(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}') = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \langle \mathbf{x}\, n | \, (E - \hat{H}_K - \hat{H}_I + i\varepsilon)^{-1} \, | \mathbf{x}'\, n \rangle \ . \qquad (12.35)$$

$G_+^n$ is diagonal in $n$ because $\hat{H}_I$ is diagonal in the basis $|n\rangle$. Using $\hat{H}_I |n\rangle = \varepsilon_n |n\rangle$, 12.35 reduces to the free Green's function 12.8 with the replacement $\mathbf{k}^2 \to K_n^2$:

$$G_+^n(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}') = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \langle \mathbf{x} | \left( E - \varepsilon_n - \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m} + i\varepsilon \right)^{-1} | \mathbf{x}' \rangle \ ,$$

where

$$K_n \equiv \sqrt{K^2 - \Lambda_n} \qquad \Lambda_n \equiv \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}(\varepsilon_n - \varepsilon_0) \qquad E = \frac{\hbar^2 K^2}{2m} + \varepsilon_0 \ . \qquad (12.36)$$

The evaluation of $G_+^n$ then proceeds exactly as for 12.10 :

$$G_+^n(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}') = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{e^{iK_n|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}}{|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|} \ . \qquad (12.37)$$

#### Open and closed channels

From 12.36 , $K_n$ is real for

$$K^2 > \Lambda_n \ , \quad \text{i.e.} \quad E > \varepsilon_n \ :$$

there is enough energy to excite the state $|n\rangle$, and the channel is said to be open: the corresponding $\psi_n$ describes an outgoing spherical wave with the reduced wave vector $K_n$. For $E < \varepsilon_n$ the channel is closed: $K_n$ is imaginary, 12.37 decays exponentially, and the state $|n\rangle$ cannot be excited in the final state (unless the particle forms a bound state with the target).

### 12.2.2 Scattering amplitudes and cross section

For $r \equiv |\mathbf{x}| \gg a$ the same expansion 12.14 used in the elastic case, carried out for each open channel (cf. 12.15 - 12.18 ), turns 12.34 into

$$\psi_n(\mathbf{x}) \approx \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \left( \delta_{n0}\, e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{x}} + \frac{e^{iK_n r}}{r}\, f_n(\mathbf{K}'_n, \mathbf{K}) \right) , \tag{12.38}$$

where

$$\mathbf{K}'_n \equiv K_n \, \frac{\mathbf{x}}{r}$$

is the outgoing wave vector in the scattering direction, with the channel-dependent length $K_n$, and the scattering amplitude into channel $n$ is

$$f_n(\mathbf{K}'_n, \mathbf{K}) = -\frac{(2\pi)^2 m}{\hbar^2} \left\langle \mathbf{K}'_n\, n \right| \hat{V} \left| \psi \right\rangle = -\frac{(2\pi)^2 m}{\hbar^2} \sum_p \int d^3x' \, \frac{e^{-i\mathbf{K}'_n\cdot\mathbf{x}'}}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\, V_{np}(\mathbf{x}')\, \psi_p(\mathbf{x}') \, . \tag{12.39}$$

One can define a cross section for particles scattered into the solid angle $d\Omega$ and into the internal state $|n\rangle$. The derivation is the same as for 12.19 , with one important difference: the scattered particle in channel $n$ has velocity $v_n = \hbar K_n/m$, which differs from the incident velocity $v = \hbar K/m$. The ratio of the currents thus gives an extra factor $v_n/v$:

$$\frac{d\sigma_n}{d\Omega} = |f_n(\mathbf{K}'_n, \mathbf{K})|^2 \, \frac{v_n}{v} = |f_n(\mathbf{K}'_n, \mathbf{K})|^2 \, \frac{K_n}{K} \, . \tag{12.40}$$

For elastic scattering ($n = 0$, $K_0 = K$) this reduces to the previous result.

### 12.2.3 Born approximation

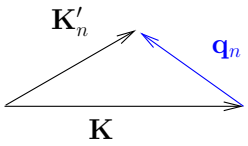
As in Sec. 12.1.3, for a weak potential we can replace on the right-hand side of 12.39 the full wave function with the initial state 12.32 , i.e. $\psi_p(\mathbf{x}) \to \delta_{p0}\, e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{x}}/(2\pi)^{3/2}$. This yields (cf. 12.21 )

$$f_n^{(1)}(\mathbf{K}'_n, \mathbf{K}) = -\frac{m}{2\pi\hbar^2}\, \tilde{V}_{n0}(\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{K}'_n) \, , \tag{12.41}$$

with $\tilde{V}_{n0}$ the Fourier transform of the matrix element $V_{n0}(\mathbf{x})$: in this order only the direct transition $0 \to n$ contributes. Correspondingly, for a spherically symmetric $V_{n0}(r)$ one obtains, as in 12.23 ,

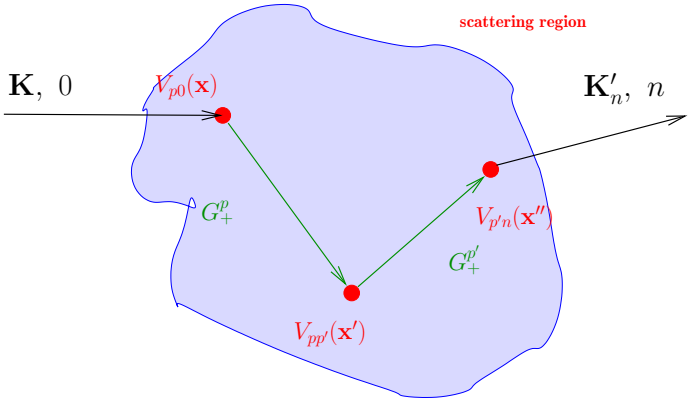
$$f_n^{(1)}(\mathbf{K}'_n, \mathbf{K}) = -\frac{2m}{\hbar^2 q_n} \int_0^\infty r\, V_{n0}(r)\, \sin(q_n r)\, dr \qquad q_n \equiv |\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{K}'_n| \, . \tag{12.42}$$

Note that, at variance with the elastic case, $|\mathbf{K}'_n| = K_n \neq K$, so that here (see figure) $q_n^2 = K^2 + K_n^2 - 2KK_n\cos\theta$.




### Higher-order Born terms

In higher-order Born terms (cf. 12.30 and the discussion there) the particle can scatter via intermediate channels: e.g. in third order it enters in channel 0, is scattered at $\mathbf{x}$ into an intermediate state $|p\rangle$, propagates with $G_+^p$ to $\mathbf{x}'$, is scattered into $|p'\rangle$, and finally leaves at $\mathbf{x}''$ in the open channel $|n\rangle$ (see figure). The intermediate channels may also be closed ones: they are only virtually excited during the process.




## 12.3 Partial waves: a sketch

The treatment presented so far has two shortcomings:

1. The Born approximation often fails at low energies;

2. the exact equations, e.g. 12.11 , are three-dimensional integral equations for $\psi(\mathbf{x})$ in terms of $\psi(\mathbf{x}')$, which are hard to solve.

For a central potential $V(r)$, however, angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ is conserved. One can then exploit this symmetry and work with angular momentum eigenstates: the problem separates into one-dimensional (radial) problems, one for each $l$. Here

we only sketch the idea; for a complete treatment (phase shifts) see, e.g., Sakurai, Chap. 7. As in Chap. 2, we look for eigenfunctions of $\hat{H}\,|\psi\rangle = E\,|\psi\rangle$ in the form

$$\psi(r,\theta,\varphi) = Y_{lm}(\theta,\varphi)\,\frac{u(r)}{r}\,, \tag{12.43}$$

for which

$$-\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\psi = \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2}\,\psi - Y_{lm}(\theta,\varphi)\,\frac{1}{r}\,\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}u(r)\,,$$

so that the Schrödinger equation reduces to the radial equation (cf. 2.8 )

$$\left(-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}V(r) - K^2\right)u(r) = 0 \qquad K^2 \equiv \frac{2mE}{\hbar^2}\,. \tag{12.44}$$

For large $r$ one can neglect both the centrifugal term and the potential:

$$u'' + K^2 u = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad u \to e^{\pm iKr}\,,$$

i.e.

$$\psi \to Y_{lm}(\theta,\varphi)\,\frac{e^{\pm iKr}}{r}\;:$$

outgoing $(+)$ and incoming $(-)$ spherical waves. The effect of the potential is contained in the relative phase between them (the phase shift), in terms of which the scattering amplitude and the cross section can be expressed.

# Chapter 13

# A short introduction to Feynman path integrals

We start from the transition amplitude $\langle \mathbf{x}', t' | \mathbf{x}, t \rangle$ to find a particle in the state $\mathbf{x}'$ at time $t'$, when this was prepared at time $t$ in $\mathbf{x}$. Using the time evolution operator for a not explicitly time-dependent Hamiltonian, we obtain

$$\langle \mathbf{x}', t' | \mathbf{x}, t \rangle = \left\langle \mathbf{x}' \right| e^{-iH\frac{t-t'}{\hbar}} \left| \mathbf{x} \right\rangle \qquad . \tag{13.1}$$

If we know the propagator $\langle \mathbf{x}', t' | \mathbf{x}, t \rangle$ we can determine the time evolution of an arbitrary state vector

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\mathbf{x}', t') &= \left\langle \mathbf{x}' \right| e^{-iH\frac{t-t'}{\hbar}} \left| \psi(t) \right\rangle \\ &= \int \left\langle \mathbf{x}' \right| e^{-iH\frac{t-t'}{\hbar}} \left| \mathbf{x} \right\rangle \ \psi(\mathbf{x}, t)\, d^3x \\ &= \int \langle \mathbf{x}', t' | \mathbf{x}, t \rangle \ \psi(\mathbf{x}, t)\, d^3x \qquad . \end{aligned}$$

We start from the single-particle Hamiltonian

$$H = H_0 + H_1 = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} + V(\mathbf{x}) \tag{13.2}$$

Since the two terms do not commute, we have

$$e^{-i\frac{\Delta t}{\hbar}H} = e^{-i\frac{\Delta t}{\hbar}H_0} e^{-i\frac{\Delta t}{\hbar}H_1} + O((\Delta t)^2) \qquad ,$$

with $\Delta t = (t' - t)$. In order to carry out the factorisation we have to make sure that the coefficient of $H$ (here $\Delta t$) becomes small. This is obtained by $\Delta t \to \delta \equiv \Delta / N$

$$\langle \mathbf{x}', t' | \mathbf{x}, t \rangle = \left\langle \mathbf{x}' \right| \underbrace{e^{-iH\frac{\Delta t}{N\hbar}} e^{-iH\frac{\Delta t}{N\hbar}} \ldots e^{-iH\frac{\Delta t}{N\hbar}}}_{\text{N factors}} \left| \mathbf{x} \right\rangle \qquad .$$

In front of each exponential function we insert the unity operator $\mathbb{1} = \int |\mathbf{x}_i\rangle\langle\mathbf{x}_i|\, d^3x_i$ with appropriate index "$i$" and obtain

$$\langle \mathbf{x}',t'|\mathbf{x},t\rangle = \int \ldots \int d^3x_1 \ldots d^3x_{N-1} \prod_{i=1}^{N} \langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-iH\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle \qquad ,$$

with the definitions $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}'$ and $\mathbf{x}_N = \mathbf{x}$ and $\delta = \frac{\Delta t}{N}$ By exploting 13.2 one obtains

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{x}',t'|\mathbf{x},t\rangle &= \int \ldots \int d^3x_1 \ldots d^3x_{N-1} \prod_{i=1}^{N} \left( \langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle\, e^{-iV(\mathbf{x}_i)\frac{\delta}{\hbar}} \right) + O(\delta^2) \\ &= \int \prod_i d^3x_i \left( \prod_{i=1}^{N} \langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle \right) e^{-i\sum_i V(\mathbf{x}_i)\frac{\delta}{\hbar}} + O(\delta^2)\,. \qquad (13.3)\end{aligned}$$

We now transform the matrix elements $\langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle$ by inserting the unit operator in terms of momentum eigenstates

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle &= \int d^3q\, \langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{q}\rangle\langle\mathbf{q}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle \\ &= \int d^3q\, e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{q}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}\, \langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|\mathbf{q}\rangle\langle\mathbf{q}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle \qquad .\end{aligned}$$

With

$$\langle \mathbf{x}|\mathbf{q}\rangle = (2\pi\hbar)^{-3/2} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{x}}$$

it follows

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{x}_{i-1}|e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}|\mathbf{x}_i\rangle &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \int d^3q\, e^{-i\frac{\mathbf{q}^2}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}}\, e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{q}\cdot(\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1})} \\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \int d^3q\, e^{-i\frac{1}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}(\mathbf{q}^2+\frac{2m}{\delta}\mathbf{q}\cdot(\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1}))} \\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \int d^3q\, e^{-i\frac{1}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}(\mathbf{q}+\frac{m}{\delta}(\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1}))^2} e^{i\frac{1}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}(\frac{m}{\delta}(\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1}))^2} \\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \underbrace{\left( \int d^3q'\, e^{-i\frac{1}{2m}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}\mathbf{q}'^2} \right)}_{(\frac{\pi 2m\hbar}{i\delta})^{3/2}} e^{i\frac{m}{2}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}\left(\frac{\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1}}{\delta}\right)^2} \\ &= \left( \frac{m}{i\delta 2\pi\hbar} \right)^{-3/2} e^{i\frac{m}{2}\frac{\delta}{\hbar}\left(\frac{\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1}}{\delta}\right)^2} \qquad .\end{aligned}$$

In this way 13.3 simplifies to

$$\begin{aligned}&\langle \mathbf{x}',t'|\mathbf{x},t\rangle \qquad (13.4)\\ &= \int \ldots \int \prod_i \left( (\tfrac{m}{i\delta 2\pi\hbar})^{-3/2}\, d^3x_i \right) e^{i\sum_i \left(\frac{m}{2}(\frac{\mathbf{x}_i-\mathbf{x}_{i-1}}{\delta})^2 - V(\mathbf{x}_i)\right)\frac{\delta}{\hbar}} + O(\delta^2)\,.\end{aligned}$$

In the limit $N \to \infty$ the argument of the exponential function becomes

$$\sum_i \left(\frac{m}{2}\left(\frac{\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_{i-1}}{\delta}\right)^2 - V(\mathbf{x}_i)\right)\delta \underset{N\to\infty}{\longrightarrow} \int_t^{t'} \left\{\frac{m}{2}\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t)^2 - V(\mathbf{x}(t))\right\} dt$$
$$= \int_t^{t'} L[x(t)]\, dt \; = S[x(t)] \qquad .$$

In this way, we get the alternative approach to quantum mechanics in terms of path integrals suggested by Feynman

FEYNMAN PATH INTEGRAL

$$\langle \mathbf{x}', t' | \mathbf{x}, t \rangle = \int_{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathbf{x}'} \mathscr{D}[x(t)]\, e^{iS[x(t)]/\hbar} \tag{13.5}$$
$$\int_{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathbf{x}'} \mathscr{D}[x(t)] = \lim_{N\to\infty} \int d^3x_1 \ldots \int d^3x_{N-1} \left(\frac{m}{i\delta 2\pi\hbar}\right)^{-3N/2} \qquad .$$

The transition amplitude from $\mathbf{x}$ at time $t$ to $\mathbf{x}'$ at time $t'$ is the sum (integral) over all paths. One averages the phase factor whose argument is given by the action associated with the particular path. **The crucial difference with respect to classical physics is the fact that not only the path with minimal actions contributes.** The action is the time integral of the Lagrange function.
Notice the large similarity with the basic principles of QM which are derived in connection with the double-slit experiment.
Geht man von der allgemeinen Gültigkeit des Pfadintegral-Formalismus 13.5 aus, ist es einfach, den Einfluß eines Vektorpotentials (Magnetfeld) auf die Wahrscheinlichkeitsamplitude eines bestimmten Pfades anzugeben. Man erhält lediglich aufgrund von (siehe Mechanik)

$$L = \frac{1}{2}m\mathbf{v}^2 - q\Phi(\mathbf{x}) + \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{v} \tag{13.6}$$

einen zusätzlichen Phasenfaktor, die sogenannte

PEIERLS-PHASE

$$\varphi_{\text{Peierls}} = e^{i\frac{q}{c\hbar}\int_t^{t'} \mathbf{A}\cdot\frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt}\, dt} = e^{i\frac{q}{c\hbar}\int_{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathbf{x}'} \mathbf{A}\cdot d\mathbf{x}} \tag{13.7}$$

## 13.1 Aharonov-Bohm-Effekt

Ein Experiment, in dem die Peierls-Phase beobachtet werden kann, ist der Aharonov-Bohm-Effekt. Hierbei werden Teilchen durch einen Doppelspalt geschickt, hinter dem sich in einem räumlich beschränkten Gebiet, wie in Abbildung 13.1 dargestellt, eine magnetische Spule befindet. Innerhalb der Spule liegt ein konstantes B-Feld der Stärke $B_0$ vor und außerhalb ist das B-Feld Null. Wir betrachten die beiden in der Abbildung skizzierten Pfade, die zum Pfadintegral beitragen werden. Auf diesen Pfaden liegt kein B-Feld vor. Das Vektorpotential hingegen ist im Bereich außerhalb der Spule im Abstand $r$ vom Spulenzentrum gegeben durch

$$\mathbf{A} = \frac{B_0 R^2}{2r}\mathbf{e}_\varphi \qquad .$$

Wir werden allerdings für die folgenden Überlegungen den tatsächlichen Wert

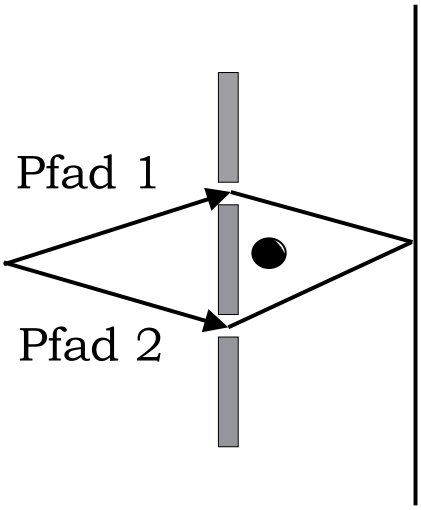



Figure 13.1: Meßanordnung zum Aharonov-Bohm-Effekt. Durch den Kreis verläuft der magnetische Fluß senkrecht zur Bildebene. Außerhalb des Kreises verschwindet das Magnetfeld.

von $\mathbf{A}$ nicht benötigen. Es sei $\Psi^0_\alpha$ für $\alpha = 1,2$ die Wahrscheinlichkeitsamplitude für den Pfad $\alpha$ bei Abwesenheit der Spule. Der zusätzlich B-Feld-abhängige Phasenfaktor Faktor ist gemäß 13.7

$$e^{-i\left(\frac{e}{\hbar c}\right)\int_{\text{Pfad}\alpha}\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}}$$

Die Summe der Amplituden der beiden Pfade ergibt

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi_1+\Psi_2 &= \Psi_1^0 e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})\int_{\text{Pfad}_1}\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}} + \Psi_2^0 e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})\int_{\text{Pfad}_2}\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}} \\ &= e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})\int_{\text{Pfad}_2}\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}}\left(\Psi_1^0 e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})(\int_{\text{Pfad}_1}-\int_{\text{Pfad}_2})\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}}+\Psi_2^0\right) \\ &= e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})\int_{\text{Pfad}_2}\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}}\left(\Psi_1^0 e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})\oint_C\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}}+\Psi_2^0\right) \quad .\end{aligned}$$

Der Vorfaktor fällt bei der Berechnung von Erwartungswerten heraus. Nicht so das Linienintegral auf einem geschlossenen Weg um das eingeschlossene B-Feld. Die Elektrodynamik (Satz von Stokes) liefert

$$\oint_C \mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x} = \int \mathbf{B}d\mathbf{S} \quad .$$

Das hintere Integral ist ein Oberflächenintegral, das den magnetischen Fluß $\Phi$ durch die von C umschlossene Fläche angibt. Offensichtlich können wir nun die Kurve $C$ deformieren, solange wir nicht den Bereich $B=0$ verlassen. Mit der Konstanten für das elementare Flußquantum

$$\Phi_0 := 2\pi\frac{c\hbar}{e}$$

erhalten wir schließlich

$$\Psi_1+\Psi_2 = e^{-i(\frac{e}{\hbar c})\int_{\text{Pfad}_2}\mathbf{A}d\mathbf{x}}\left(\Psi_1^0 e^{-i2\pi\frac{\Phi}{\Phi_0}}+\Psi_2^0\right) \quad .$$

Wenn also $\Phi/\Phi_0 = n$ eine ganze Zahl ist, addieren sich $\Psi_1^0$ und $\Psi_2^0$ konstruktiv und bei $\Phi/\Phi_0 = n+1/2$ destruktiv. Daß heißt, daß bei Variation des B-Feldes eine oszillierendes Signal am Schirm beobachtet wird. Wir haben somit ein Ergebnis abgeleitet, in das in Zwischenschritten das nicht eindeutig festgelegte (eichabhängige) Vektorpotential eingeht. Das Endergebnis hingegen hängt nur von B ab und ist eichinvariant. Das obige Resultat hat weitere interessante Konsequenzen. Wenn geladene Teilchen auf geschlossenen Bahnen umlaufen, z.B. in geeignet geformten Spulen, so muß der eingeschlossene magnetische Fluß in Einheiten von $\Phi_0$ quantisiert sein, damit die Wellenfunktion eindeutig ist. Diese Quantisierung wurde erstmals 1961 mit supraleitenden Spulen in einem homogenen Magnetfeld nachgewiesen. Da in den supraleitenden Spulen Cooper-Paare die elementaren Objekte bilden und diese die Ladung $2e$ haben, wurde als Flußquant der Wert $\Phi_0/2$ gefunden.

## 13.2 Quanten-Interferenz aufgrund von Gravitation

Wir werden hier untersuchen, wie man den Pfadintegral-Formalismus nutzen kann, um ein überraschendes Interferenz-Experiment zu beschreiben, daß sensitiv genug

ist, Interferenz aufgrund des Einflußes der Erdgravitation auf Neutronen zu beobachten. Man beachte, daß der Unterschied zwischen der elektromagnetischen und der Gravitationskraft zwischen Elektronen und Neutronen $10^{40}$ beträgt. Man verwendet einen annähernd monochromatischen Neutronenstrahl, der ähnlich wie im obigen Doppelspalt-Experiment in zwei Pfade zerlegt wird, die anschließend wieder zusammenlaufen. Einer der Teilstrahlen verläuft auf einem Weg, der eine höhere potentielle Energie im Schwerefeld der Erde hat. Die Apparatur ist auf einer ebenen Platte angebracht, die um eine Achse um einen beliebigen Winkel $\varphi$ verkippt werden kann, so daß der Beitrag der potentiellen Energie zur Wirkung durch

$$\Delta S = T \cdot m_g g l_1 \sin(\varphi)$$

beschrieben werden kann. $l_1$ ist hierbei die Breite der Platte und $T$ die Zeit, die das Neutron benötigt, die Länge $l_2$ der Anordnung zu durchlaufen. Wir können $T$ über $T = m_t\ l_2/p$ durch den Impuls ausdrücken. Der Impuls wiederrum hängt mit der de Broglie Wellenlänge über $p = h/\lambda$ zusammen. Der Unterschied der Wirkung auf den beiden Pfaden ist damit

$$\Delta S = \frac{m_g m_t g l_1 l_2 \lambda \sin(\varphi)}{2\pi\hbar} \quad .$$

Für Neutronen mit $\lambda = 1.4\mathring{A}$ wurde die Interferenz als Funktion von $\varphi$ experimentell ermittelt. Man findet eine Periode von $O(5^\circ)$. Da $\hbar$ im Nenner vorkommt geht die Periodenlänge im klassischen Grenzfall $\hbar \to 0$ gegen Null und die Interferenz-Oszillationen sind nicht mehr beobachtbar. Ein weiterer interessanter Punkt ist die Tatsache, daß hier beide Typen von Massen, träge $m_t$ und schwere $m_g$ eingehen. Dieses Experiment ermöglicht einen Test der Gleichheit dieser Massen auf mikroskopischem Gebiet. Man findet die Gleichheit auch hier bestätigt.

# Chapter 14

# Bibliography

## 14.1 Introductory Books (with exercises)

In blue, topics treated in class


- R. Shankar, *Principles of Quantum Mechanics*, Plenum Press 1994.
  Addition of angular momentum, scattering
- J.S. Townsend, *A Modern Approach to Quantum Mechanics*, McGraw-Hill, 1992
  scattering, identical particles, quantized electromagnetic field, spontaneous emission
- Leslie E. Ballentine, *Quantum Mechanics: A Modern Development*, World Scientific 1998.
  Particle in electromagnetic fields, parity, second quantisation of electromagnetic field, identical particles, scattering
- J.-L. Basdevant, J. Dalibard *Quantum Mechanics*, Springer Berlin 2002
  Addition of angular momenta, Wicher-Eckart theorem (in an exercise), Identical Particles, Scattering
- C.Cohen-Tannoudji, B.Diu, F. Laloe, *Quantum Mechanics I,II*, Wiley, 1977

  In volume II: scattering, addition of angular momentum, identical particles
- J.J.Sakurai, *Modern Quantum Mechanics*, Addison-Wesley, 1985
  Addition of angular momentum, identical particles, scattering
- F.Schwabl, *Advanced Quantum Mechanics* Springer Verlag, 2005
  Second quantisation

- E.Merzbacher, *Quantum Mechanics*, Wiley, 1970
  Scattering, Identical particles


## 14.2 Additional books


- E. Fick, *Einführung in die Quantenmechanik*, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft Frankfurt am Main 1968.
- R.J.Jelitto, *Theoretische Physik 4,5: Quantenmechanik I,II*, Aula Verlag, 1987
- W.Greiner, *Quantenmechanik, Teil* 1*, Einführung*, Verlag Harry Deutsch, 1989
- L.D.Landau, E.M.Lifschitz, *Lehrbuch der Theoretischen Physik III: Quantenmechanik*, Akademie-Verlag, 1979
- A.S.Dawydow, *Quantenmechanik*, VEB Deutscher Verlag der Wissenschaften, 1978
- R.P.Feynman, R.B.Leighton, M.Sands, *Feynman Vorlesungen über Physik III: Quantenmechanik*, R.Oldenbourg Verlag, 1988
- L.I.Schiff, *Quantum Mechanics*, McGraw-Hill, 1968
- A.Messiah, *Quantum Mechanics I,II*, de Gruyter, 1979.
- H.Mitter, *Quantentheorie*, B.I.Hochschultaschenbuch, 1994
- G.Ludwig, *Einführung in die Grundlagen der Theoretischen Physik 3: Quantentheorie*, Vieweg, 1976


## 14.3 Advanced Chapters


- Hermann Haken, *Quantenfeldtheorie des Festkörpers*, Teubner Verlag, Stuttgart, 1973
- Edward G. Harris, *Quantenfeldteorie (Eine elementare Einführung)*, John Wiley, 1972
- A.Galindo, P.Pascual, *Quantum Mechanics I*, Springer Verlag, 1990
- A.Galindo, P.Pascual, *Quantum Mechanics II*, Springer Verlag, 1991

- E.Prugovečki, *Quantum Mechanics in Hilbert Space*, Academic Press, 1981
- W.Thirring, *Lehrbuch der Mathematischen Physik 3: Quantenmechanik von Atomen und Molekülen*, Springer Verlag, 1979


## 14.4 Mathematical Methods


- S.Grošmann, *Funktionalanalysis I,II*, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, 1970
- M.Reed, B.Simon, *Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics. 1. Functional analysis*, Academic Press, 1990
- M.Reed, B.Simon, *Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics. 2. Fourier analysis, self-adjointness*, Academic Press, 1989
- M.Reed, B.Simon, *Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics. 3. Scattering theory*, Academic Press, 1992
- M.Reed, B.Simon, *Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics. 4. Analysis of operators*, Academic Press, 1990
- J.Weidmann, *Lineare Operatoren in Hilberträumen*, Teubner, 1976
- R.Meise, D.Vogt *Einführung in die Funktionalanalysis*, Vieweg, 1992


## 14.5 On the interpretation of Quantum Mechanics


- J.A.Wheeler, W.J.Zurek (ed.) *Quantum Theory and Measurement*, Princeton, 1983
- A.Rae, *Quantum physics: illusion or reality*, Cambridge, 1986
- J.Baggott, *The Meaning of Quantum Theory*, Oxford, 1992

# Appendix A

# Details

## A.1 Proof of eq. 1.7

back to pag. 11 Let us call the left and right side of 1.7 $l(\varphi)$ and $r(\varphi)$, respectively. Differentiating both sides w.r.t. $\varphi$ yields

$$l'(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{-i\varphi A_{\mathbf{z}}} \quad r'(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin\varphi & -\cos\varphi & 0 \\ \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{A.1}$$

Multiplying the left expression from the right by $l(\varphi)^{-1}r(\varphi)$ yields the right term, i.e.

$$l'(\varphi)l(\varphi)^{-1}r(\varphi) = r'(\varphi) \Rightarrow \log(l(\varphi))' = \log(r(\varphi))' \,.$$

This equation, with the initial conditions

$$l(0) = r(0)$$

gives

$$l(\varphi) = r(\varphi)$$

## A.2 Evaluation of 1.9

back to pag. 11 The calculation is simplified by the fact that nonvanishing terms only come from mixed products $A_{\mathbf{x}}A_{\mathbf{y}}$. We thus get

$$\begin{aligned} &(1+iA_{\mathbf{y}}\varphi)(1+iA_{\mathbf{x}}\varphi)(1-iA_{\mathbf{y}}\varphi)(1-iA_{\mathbf{x}}\varphi)+\cdots = \\ &= 1+\varphi^2(-A_{\mathbf{y}}A_{\mathbf{x}}+A_{\mathbf{y}}A_{\mathbf{x}}+A_{\mathbf{x}}A_{\mathbf{y}}-A_{\mathbf{y}}A_{\mathbf{x}})+\cdots = 1+\varphi^2[A_{\mathbf{x}},A_{\mathbf{y}}]+\cdots \end{aligned}$$

## A.3 Discussion about the phase $\omega_z$ in 1.14

back to pag. 12 In the expansion of the r.h.s. of 1.14 we also expand the phase $\omega_{\mathbf{z}}$, since this is also "small" like $\varphi$ (it vanishes when $\varphi \to 0$). We obtain instead of 1.16

$$1 - \frac{\omega_{\mathbf{z}}^2}{2} + i\left(\frac{\varphi^2}{\hbar} J_{\mathbf{z}} + \omega_{\mathbf{z}} \mathbb{1}\right) . \tag{A.2}$$

If this has to be equal to 1.15 up to $O(\varphi^2)$, it follows that $\omega_{\mathbf{z}} = O(\varphi^2)$. Therefore we have

$$[J_{\mathbf{x}}, J_{\mathbf{y}}] = i\hbar(J_{\mathbf{z}} + d_{\mathbf{z}} \mathbb{1}) \tag{A.3}$$

with $d_{\mathbf{z}} = \frac{\hbar}{\varphi^2}\omega_{\mathbf{z}} = const.$. This constant can be absorbed in the definition: $\widetilde{J}_\alpha = J_\alpha + d_\alpha$ so that 1.17 holds for the $\widetilde{J}_\alpha$ operators.
This means that the rotation operators $J_\alpha$ are not uniquely defined: there is an arbitrary constant, which by convention is set to zero. The choice of the constant does not affect physical results.

## A.4 Transformation of the components of a vector

back to pag. 13
The projection of a vector $\mathbf{A}$ on the direction defined by the unit vector $\mathbf{n}$ is given by $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{n}} := \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{A}$. A rotation transforms $\mathbf{n}$ into $\mathbf{n}' = R\,\mathbf{n}$. Accordingly the projection of the operator is transformed after the same rotation into $\mathbf{A}'_{\mathbf{n}} = \mathbf{n}' \cdot \mathbf{A}$. This gives

$$\mathbf{A}'_{\mathbf{n}} = (R_{\beta\alpha} n_\alpha) A_\beta . \tag{A.4}$$

In order to determine the $\alpha$-component $\mathbf{A}'_\alpha$ we set $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{e}_\alpha$, i.e.

$$\mathbf{A}'_\alpha = R_{\beta\alpha} A_\beta = \left(R^T A\right)_\alpha \tag{A.5}$$

This shows that the components of a vector transform according to $R^T = R^{-1}$.

## A.5 Commutation rules of the orbital angular momentum

back to pag. 21

We start by proving 1.20 with $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{r}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
[L_\alpha, r_\beta] &= \varepsilon_{\alpha\gamma\rho}[r_\gamma p_\rho, r_\beta] \\
&= \varepsilon_{\alpha\gamma\rho} r_\gamma \underbrace{[p_\rho, r_\beta]}_{-i\hbar\delta_{\rho\beta}} \\
&= -i\hbar\varepsilon_{\alpha\gamma\beta} r_\gamma \\
&= i\hbar\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} r_\gamma \qquad .
\end{aligned} \tag{A.6}$$

The proof for $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{p}$ is analogous.
We now evaluate the commutator $[L_x, L_y]$.

$$[L_x, L_y] = [L_x, r_z p_x - r_x p_z] = i\hbar(-r_y p_x + r_x p_y) = i\hbar L_z \tag{A.7}$$

together with its cyclic permutations, this proves that $L$ satisfies 1.17 .

## A.6 Further Commutation rules of J

back to pag. 15

$$\begin{aligned}
[J^2, J_\beta] &= [J_\alpha J_\alpha, J_\beta] \\
&= J_\alpha[J_\alpha, J_\beta] + [J_\alpha, J_\beta]J_\alpha \\
&= i\hbar\big(\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\alpha J_\gamma + \varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\gamma J_\alpha\big) \qquad .
\end{aligned}$$

After renaming $\alpha \leftrightarrow \gamma$ in the last term it follows

$$\begin{aligned}
[J^2, J_\beta] &= i\hbar\big(\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\alpha J_\gamma + \varepsilon_{\gamma\beta\alpha} J_\alpha J_\gamma\big) \\
&= i\hbar\big(\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\alpha J_\gamma - \varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\alpha J_\gamma\big) = 0 \qquad .
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[J_+, J_-] &= [J_x + iJ_y, J_x - iJ_y] \\
&= \underbrace{[J_x, J_x]}_{=0} + \underbrace{[J_y, J_y]}_{=0} + i[J_y, J_x] - i[J_x, J_y] \\
&= -2i[J_x, J_y] = -2i \cdot i\hbar J_z = 2\hbar J_z
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[J_z, J_\pm] &= [J_z, J_x] \pm i[J_z, J_y] \\
&= i\hbar\varepsilon_{zxy} J_y \pm i(i\hbar)\varepsilon_{zyx} J_x \\
&= i\hbar J_y \pm \hbar J_x = \pm\hbar(J_x \pm iJ_y)
\end{aligned}$$

$$[J^2, J_\pm] = 0$$

This follows immediately from 1.21 .

## A.7 Uncertainty relation for $j = 0$

back to pag. 19
The uncertainty relation implies in general

$$|(\Delta J_x)^2| \cdot |(\Delta J_y)^2| \geq \frac{\hbar}{2} \cdot j \qquad .$$

For $j = 0$ one has

$$|\langle [J_x, J_y] \rangle| = \hbar |\langle J_z \rangle| = \hbar^2 \cdot |m| = 0 \tag{A.8}$$

(A.9)

$$\Rightarrow \qquad (\Delta J_x)^2 \cdot (\Delta J_y)^2 \text{can become zero.} \tag{A.10}$$

## A.8 $\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{J}$

back to pag. 20

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{J})_\alpha &= \varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\beta J_\gamma \\
&= \frac{1}{2}(\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} J_\beta J_\gamma + \varepsilon_{\alpha\gamma\beta} J_\gamma J_\beta) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}[J_\beta, J_\gamma] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} i\hbar \varepsilon_{\beta\gamma\delta} J_\delta \\
&= \frac{i\hbar}{2} 2 \cdot \delta_{\alpha\delta} J_\delta \\
&= i\hbar J_\alpha
\end{aligned}$$

## A.9 Explicit derivation of angular momentum operators and their eigenfunctions

back to pag. 22

Using 1.50 the components of the angular momentum operator can be expressed as

$$\left.\begin{array}{rcl} L_x &=& \frac{\hbar}{i}(y\frac{\partial}{\partial z}-z\frac{\partial}{\partial y}) \\ L_y &=& \frac{\hbar}{i}(z\frac{\partial}{\partial x}-x\frac{\partial}{\partial z}) \\ L_z &=& \frac{\hbar}{i}(x\frac{\partial}{\partial y}-y\frac{\partial}{\partial x}) \end{array}\right\} \;\Rightarrow\; L_\pm = \frac{\hbar}{i}\left((y\mp ix)\frac{\partial}{\partial z}-z(\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mp i\frac{\partial}{\partial x})\right)$$

With the spherical coordinates

$$\begin{aligned} x &= r\cdot\sin\theta\cos\varphi \\ y &= r\cdot\sin\theta\sin\varphi \\ z &= r\cdot\cos\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} &= \frac{\partial x}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial y}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}+\frac{\partial z}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ &= \underbrace{r\cos\theta\cos\varphi}_{\cot\theta\cdot x}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+\underbrace{r\cos\theta\sin\varphi}_{\cot\theta\cdot y}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}-r\sin\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi} &= \frac{\partial x}{\partial\varphi}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial y}{\partial\varphi}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}+\frac{\partial z}{\partial\varphi}\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ &= -\underbrace{r\sin\theta\sin\varphi}_{y}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+\underbrace{r\sin\theta\cos\varphi}_{x}\frac{\partial}{\partial y} \\ &= x\frac{\partial}{\partial y}-y\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$L_z = \frac{\hbar}{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi} \tag{A.11}$$

We now show that

$$L_\pm = \hbar e^{\pm i\varphi}(\pm\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}+i\cot\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}) \tag{A.12}$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} L_\pm = \quad & \hbar e^{\pm i\varphi}(\pm r\cos\theta\cos\varphi\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\pm r\cos\theta\sin\varphi\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mp r\sin\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ & +i\cdot r\cdot\underbrace{\cot\theta\cdot\sin\theta}_{\cos\theta}\cos\varphi\frac{\partial}{\partial y}-i\cdot r\cdot\underbrace{\cot\theta\cdot\sin\theta}_{\cos\theta}\sin\varphi\frac{\partial}{\partial x}) \end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= \quad & \hbar e^{\pm i\varphi}\left[\mp r\cdot\sin\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial z}+(ir\cdot\cos\theta\cos\varphi\pm r\cdot\cos\theta\sin\varphi)\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right.\\
& \left.-(ir\cdot\cos\theta\sin\varphi\mp r\cos\theta\cos\varphi)\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= \quad & \hbar e^{\pm i\varphi}\left[\mp r\cdot\sin\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial z}+ir\cdot\cos\theta\underbrace{(\cos\varphi\mp i\sin\varphi)}_{e^{\mp i\varphi}}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right.\\
& \left.\pm r\cdot\cos\theta\underbrace{(\cos\varphi\mp i\sin\varphi)}_{e^{\mp i\varphi}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= \quad & \hbar\left[\mp e^{\mp i\varphi}r\cdot\sin\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial z}+iz\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\pm z\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right]\\
= \quad & \hbar\left[(\mp\underbrace{r\cdot\sin\theta\cos\varphi}_{x}-i\underbrace{r\sin\theta\sin\varphi}_{y})\frac{\partial}{\partial z}+iz(\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mp i\frac{\partial}{\partial x})\right]\\
= \quad & \hbar(-i)\left[(y\mp ix)\frac{\partial}{\partial z}-z(\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mp i\frac{\partial}{\partial x})\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

q.e.d

First we determine the $\varphi$-part of the eigenfunctions $Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi)$. From Eqs. 1.40b and 1.51 it follows

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) &= im\,Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi)\\
\Rightarrow Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{im\varphi}\Theta_l^m(\theta) \qquad (A.13)
\end{aligned}
$$

$\Theta_l^m$ is still an arbitrary function which depends on $\theta$ only. Instead of 1.48 we now use 1.31 , i.e. $L_+|l,m=l\rangle=0$ and obtain the equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}Y_l^{m=l}(\theta,\varphi) \quad + \quad & i\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}\underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}Y_l^{m=l}(\theta,\varphi)}_{ilY_l^l(\theta,\varphi)}=\\
& \overset{(A.13)}{=} \frac{e^{im\varphi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\Theta_l^{m=l}(\theta)-l\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}\Theta_l^{m=l}(\theta)\right)\overset{!}{=}0
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\Theta_l^l(\theta) = l\cdot\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}\Theta_l^l(\theta)$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad \Theta_l^l(\theta) = C_l\cdot\sin^l\theta$$

Proof: $\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\sin^l\theta = l\cdot\cos\theta\sin^{l-1}\theta = l\cdot\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}\Theta_l^l(\theta)$

The normalisation gives

$$\begin{aligned}\int d\Omega\left|Y_l^{m=l}(\theta,\varphi)\right|^2 &= |C_l|^2\int_0^\pi \sin^{2l}\theta\sin\theta\,d\theta\\ &= |C_l|^2\cdot\int_0^\pi\sin^{2l+1}\theta\,d\theta\\ &= |C_l|^2\sqrt{\pi}\frac{\Gamma(l+1)}{\Gamma(l+1+\frac{1}{2})}\\ &= |C_l|^2\frac{(l!2^l)^2\cdot 2}{(2l+1)!}\stackrel{!}{=}1\end{aligned}$$

Convention

$$C_l = \frac{(-1)^l}{2^l l!}\sqrt{\frac{(2l+1)!}{2}}$$

From this it follows

$$Y_l^{m=l}(\theta,\varphi) = \frac{(-1)^l}{2^l l!}\sqrt{\frac{(2l+1)!}{4\pi}}e^{il\varphi}\sin^l\theta$$

The eigenfunction associated to smaller values of the magnetic quantum number $m$ are obtained by repeated application of equation 1.43

$$\begin{aligned}|l,m-1\rangle &= [l(l+1)-m(m-1)]^{-\frac{1}{2}}\ \frac{L_-}{\hbar}|l,m\rangle\\ &= [(l+m)(l-m+1)]^{-\frac{1}{2}}\ \frac{L_-}{\hbar}|l,m\rangle\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow$$

$$\underline{m=l:}$$

$$|l,l-1\rangle = [(2l)\cdot 1]^{-\frac{1}{2}} \frac{L_-}{\hbar}|l,l\rangle$$

$$\underline{m=l-1:}$$

$$|l,l-2\rangle = (2l)^{-\frac{1}{2}}[(2l-1)\cdot 2]^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{L_-}{\hbar}\right)^2|l,l\rangle$$

$$\vdots$$

$$[l,l-n\rangle = [(2l)(2l-1)\ldots(2l-n+1)n!]^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{L_-}{\hbar}\right)^n|l,l\rangle$$

$$= \left[\frac{(2l-n)!}{(2l)!n!}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{L_-}{\hbar}\right)^n|l,l\rangle$$

or with $(n=l-m)$

$$|l,m\rangle = \left[\frac{(l+m)!}{(2l)!(l-m)!}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{L_-}{\hbar}\right)^{l-m}|l,l\rangle$$

$$Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) = \left[\frac{(l+m)!}{(2l)!(l-m)!}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(-e^{-i\varphi}(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}-i\cot\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi})\right)^{l-m}Y_l^l(\theta,\varphi)$$

$Y_l^l(\theta,\varphi)$ is of the form $C_l e^{i\varphi l}\cdot\sin^l\theta =: C_l e^{i\varphi l}f(\theta)$.
A single application of $\frac{L_-}{\hbar}$ to $Y_l^l$ yields

$$-C_l e^{-i\varphi}e^{i\varphi l}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}-i\cdot\cot\theta\cdot(+il)\right)f(\theta)$$

$$= -C_l e^{i(l-1)\varphi}\underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}+\cot\theta\cdot l\right)f(\theta)}_{\xi}$$

Conjecture:

$$\xi = \frac{1}{\sin^l\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}(\sin^l\theta\cdot f(\theta))$$

Proof

$$\begin{aligned}\xi &= \frac{1}{\sin^l\theta}\left[(\frac{d}{d\theta}\sin^l\theta)\,f(\theta)+\sin^l(\theta)\frac{d}{d\theta}f(\theta)\right]\\ &= \frac{1}{\sin^l\theta}\left[l\cdot\cot\theta\sin^l\theta\,f(\theta)\;+\;\sin^l\theta\frac{d}{d\theta}f(\theta)\right]\\ &= \left[\frac{d}{d\theta}+l\cdot\cot\theta\right]f(\theta)\end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Thus, $\xi$ can also be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned}\xi &= -\frac{1}{\sin^{l-1}\theta}\cdot\frac{d}{d(\cos\theta)}(\sin^l\theta\cdot f(\theta))\\ \Rightarrow\qquad (\frac{L_-}{\hbar})Y_l^l(\theta,\varphi) &= C_l e^{i(l-1)\varphi}\frac{1}{\sin^{l-1}\theta}\cdot\frac{d}{d(\cos\theta)}(\sin^l\theta\cdot f(\theta))\end{aligned}$$

We have started from the general form

$$Y_l^l(\theta,\varphi)=C_l e^{il\varphi}f(\theta)$$

The application of $\frac{L_-}{\hbar}$ is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}e^{il\varphi} &\rightarrow e^{i(l-1)\varphi}\\ \text{and:}\qquad f(\theta) &\rightarrow \tilde{f}=\frac{1}{\sin^{l-1}\theta}\frac{d}{d\cos\theta}(\sin^l\theta\cdot f(\theta))\end{aligned}$$

A second application leads to

$$\begin{aligned}(\frac{L_-}{\hbar})^2Y_l^l &= C_l e^{i(l-2)\varphi}\frac{1}{\sin^{l-2}\theta}\frac{d}{d\cos\theta}(\sin^{l-1}\tilde{f})\\ &= C_l e^{i(l-2)\varphi}\frac{1}{\sin^{l-2}\theta}\frac{d^2}{d(\cos\theta)^2}\sin^l\theta\cdot f(\theta)\end{aligned}$$

We recognize the regularity

$$(\frac{L_-}{\hbar})^nY_l^l = C_l e^{i(l-n)\varphi}\frac{1}{\sin^{l-n}\theta}\frac{d^n}{d(\cos\theta)^n}\sin^l\theta\cdot f(\theta)\qquad .$$

We now insert the special form $f(\theta) = \sin^l \theta$ and obtain

SPHERICAL HARMONICS

$$Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi) = \frac{(-1)^l}{2^l l!}\sqrt{\frac{(2l+1)(l+m)!}{2(l-m)!}}\frac{e^{im\varphi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\cdot\frac{1}{\sin^m\theta}\cdot\frac{d^{l-m}}{d(\cos\theta)^{l-m}}\ \sin^{2l}\theta \quad \text{(A.14)}$$

$Y_l^m$ are termed SPHERICAL HARMONICS.

## A.10 Relation between $\mathbf{L}^2$ and $\mathbf{p}^2$

back to pag. 30

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}^2 &= \Big(\mathbf{r}\times\mathbf{p}\Big)_\alpha \cdot \Big(\mathbf{r}\times\mathbf{p}\Big)_\alpha \\
&= \varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}\,\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta'\gamma'}\,r_\beta p_\gamma\, r_{\beta'} p_{\gamma'} \\
&= (\delta_{\beta\beta'}\,\delta_{\gamma\gamma'} - \delta_{\beta\gamma'}\,\delta_{\gamma\beta'}) r_\beta p_\gamma\, r_{\beta'} p_{\gamma'} \\
&= r_\beta \underbrace{p_\gamma\, r_\beta}_{r_\beta p_\gamma - i\hbar\delta_{\beta\gamma}}\ p_\gamma - r_\beta p_\gamma \underbrace{r_\gamma p_\beta}_{p_\beta r_\gamma + i\hbar\delta_{\beta\gamma}} \\
&= \mathbf{r}^2\mathbf{p}^2 - i\hbar\,\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{p} - \hat{r}_\beta\hat{p}_\gamma\hat{p}_\beta\hat{r}_\gamma - i\hbar\,\mathbf{rp} \\
&= \mathbf{r}^2\mathbf{p}^2 - 2i\hbar\,\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{p} - r_\beta p_\beta \cdot \underbrace{p_\gamma r_\gamma}_{r_\gamma p_\gamma - 3i\hbar} \qquad \text{(A.15)} \\
\mathbf{L}^2 &= \mathbf{r}^2\mathbf{p}^2 + i\hbar\,\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{p} - (\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{p})^2
\end{aligned}$$

## A.11 Proof that $\sigma \leq 0$ solutions in 2.17 must be discarded

back to pag. 37

The second solution of 2.17 , $\sigma = -l$, must be discarded because it is too singular around $r = 0$, as we show below.

The wave function is

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\chi(r)}{r} Y(\theta,\varphi) \tag{A.16}$$

Its norm is

$$\begin{aligned}\int |\psi(\mathbf{r})|^2 d^3\mathbf{r} &= \underbrace{\int |Y(\theta,\varphi)|^2 d\Omega}_{=1} \cdot \int_0^\infty \frac{\chi(r)^2}{r^2} r^2 dr \\ &= \int_0^\infty \chi(r)^2 dr \quad .\end{aligned}$$

Its contribution around $r = 0$ gives (for $c_0 \neq 0$ )

$$\int |c_0|^2 r^{2\sigma}\, dr$$

which diverges for $\sigma \leq -1$.
For $\sigma = l = 0$ the norm does not diverge, however the kinetic energy does.

$$E_{\text{kin}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} |\nabla\psi(\mathbf{r})|^2 d^3\mathbf{r} \quad . \tag{A.17}$$

The angular part of the wave function $Y_0^0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}}$ is a constant. We consider again the behavior for $r \to 0$

$$\nabla\psi(\mathbf{r}) \sim \nabla(\frac{c_0}{r}) \sim -\frac{\mathbf{e}_r}{r^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow ||\nabla\psi(\mathbf{r})||^2 \sim \frac{|c_0|^2}{r^4}$$

Therefore the integral A.17 diverges.

## A.12 Details of the evaluation of the radial wave function for hydrogen

back to pag. 43
From the ratio of the expansion coefficients, 2.19 and 2.27 thus become

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{c_{\mu+1}}{c_\mu} &= \frac{2\gamma(\mu+l+1) - 2\frac{Z}{a_0}}{(\mu+l+2)(\mu+l+1) - l(l+1)} \\ &= 2\gamma \frac{\mu+1+l-n}{(\mu+l+2)(\mu+l+1) - l(l+1)}\end{aligned} \quad . \tag{A.18}$$

It is convenient to introduce dimensionless expansion coefficients

$$d_\mu := (2\gamma)^{-\mu}\, c_\mu$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d_{\mu+1}}{d_\mu} &= \frac{\mu+l+1-n}{(\mu+l+2)(\mu+l+1)-l(l+1)} \\
&= \frac{\mu+l+1-n}{l^2+l(3+2\mu)+(1+\mu)(2+\mu)-l^2-l} \\
&= \frac{\mu+l+1-n}{2l(1+\mu)+(1+\mu)(2+\mu)} \\
&= \frac{l-n+\mu+1}{(2l+2+\mu)(1+\mu)} \qquad .
\end{aligned}$$

With the abbreviations $\nu = n-l-1$ and $\alpha = 2l+2$, the coefficients read

$$\begin{aligned}
d_1 &= \frac{-\nu}{\alpha\cdot 1}\, d_0 \\
d_2 &= \frac{-\nu+1}{(\alpha+1)\cdot 2}\, d_1 = \frac{-\nu(-\nu+1)}{\alpha(\alpha+1)\cdot 1\cdot 2}\, d_0 \\
d_3 &= \frac{-\nu+2}{(\alpha+2)\cdot 3}\, d_2 = \frac{-\nu(-\nu+1)(-\nu+2)}{\alpha(\alpha+1)(\alpha+2)\cdot 1\cdot 2\cdot 3}\, d_0 \\
&\vdots \\
d_\mu &= \frac{-\nu(-\nu+1)\ldots(-\nu+\mu-1)}{\alpha(\alpha+1)\ldots(\alpha+\mu-1)}\, \frac{1}{\mu!}\, d_0 \qquad . \qquad \text{(A.19)}
\end{aligned}$$

Inserting these coefficients into the series

$$R_{nl}(r) = \sum_{\mu=0}^{n-l-1} c_\mu\, r^\mu = \sum_{\mu=0}^{n-l-1} d_\mu\, (2\gamma r)^\mu$$

leads, with $d_0 = 1$, to the confluent hypergeometric function

$$R_{nl}(r) = {}_1\mathrm{F}_1(-\nu,\alpha;2\gamma r) := \sum_{\mu=0}^{\nu} \frac{-\nu(-\nu+1)\ldots(-\nu+\mu-1)}{\alpha(\alpha+1)\ldots(\alpha+\mu-1)}\, \frac{(2\gamma r)^\mu}{\mu!} \qquad .$$

These are orthogonal polynomials of degree $\nu$ with the properties

$$\begin{aligned}
{}_1\mathrm{F}_1(-\nu,\alpha;0) &= 1 \qquad \text{(A.20)} \\
{}_1\mathrm{F}_1(0,\alpha;r) &= 1 \qquad . \qquad \text{(A.21)}
\end{aligned}$$

The confluent hypergeometric function is related to the orthogonal Laguerre polynomial[1] $L_\nu^{\alpha-1}$ of degree $\nu$:

$$L_\nu^{\alpha-1}(r) = \binom{\nu+\alpha-1}{\nu} \, {}_1\mathrm{F}_1(-\nu,\alpha;2\gamma r) \qquad .$$

This leads us to the final result 2.28 .

## A.13 Potential of an electron in the ground state of a $H$-like atom

back to pag. 74
The potential $V(R)$ produced in a point $\mathbf{R}$ by an electron with wave function $\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \left(\frac{Z^3}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{-Z\,r}$ (see 5.3 ) centered in the origin of the coordinates is given by

$$-V(R) = \int d^3r \, |\psi(\mathbf{r})|^2 \, \frac{1}{|\mathbf{R}-\mathbf{r}|} \, .$$

The radial component of the electric field in $\mathbf{R}$ is given by Gauss' law:

$$E(R) = \frac{Q_R}{R^2}$$

with the total charge contained between 0 and $R$:

$$-Q_R = 4\pi \int_0^R r^2 |\psi(\mathbf{r})|^2 = 1-(1+2RZ(1+RZ))e^{-2RZ}$$

The potential $V(R)$ is given by

$$-V(R) = \int_\infty^R E(R')d\,R' = \frac{1}{R}\left(1-(1+ZR)e^{-2ZR}\right) \tag{A.22}$$

## A.14 Heisenberg representation a bit more precise

back to pag. 61 Reminder: given an operator $O^H(t)$ in the Heisenberg representation, its time derivative is given by

$$\frac{d}{dt}O^H(t) = i[H^H(t), O^H(t)] + \frac{d}{dt}O^S(t) \tag{A.23}$$

[1] In the literature there are two different definitions of the Laguerre polynomials. Between the definition $L_n^\alpha$ used here and the other definition $\tilde{L}$ there is the relation $L_n^\alpha = \frac{(-1)^\alpha}{(n+\alpha)!}\tilde{L}_{n+\alpha}^\alpha$.

where $O^S(t)$ is the operator in the Schrödinger picture. We will consider mainly operators which are time independent in the Schrödinger picture, i.e. the second term vanishes.
We now use the fact that for any operator (taking the initial time $t_0 = 0$ for simplicity)

$$O^H(t) = U(t)^\dagger O^S U(t)$$

Inserting in A.23 we obtain (for simplicity of notation we omit to indicate the time dependence $(t)$ everywhere)

$$\frac{d}{dt}O^H = i\,U^\dagger[H^S, O^S]U = i[H^S, O^S]^H \tag{A.24}$$

This means that the time derivative of an operator in the Heisenberg picture is obtained by computing the usual commutator for the operators in the Schrödinger picture and interpreting the resulting operator as being in the Heisenberg picture.
That is why in the literature one can simply omit the index $^H$, still understanding the operators as being in the Heisenberg picture.

## A.15 More about Löwdin orthonormalisation

back to pag. 72
As shown below, the Löwdin-Orthogonalization corresponds to the orthonormalization of an arbitrary non-orthonormal basis. We exploited this fact in 5.5 .
We could have just as well orthonormalized the basis beforehand, in which case $S = \mathbb{1}$.
Let us start from a non-orthonormal, yet linearly independent basis

$$\langle \psi_i | \psi_j \rangle = S_{ij}$$

$S_{ij}$ is invertible and hermitian: $S^*_{ji} = S_{ij}$.
An orthonormal basis is given by the vectors $|\varphi_\alpha\rangle$ obtained as (Einstein sum convention)

$$|\varphi_\alpha\rangle = |\psi_j\rangle\, S^{-\frac{1}{2}}_{j\alpha} \tag{A.25}$$

Proof:

$$\langle \varphi_\beta | \varphi_\alpha \rangle = S^{-\frac{1}{2}*}_{i\beta} \langle \psi_i | \psi_j \rangle S^{-\frac{1}{2}}_{j\alpha} = S^{-\frac{1}{2}}_{\beta i} S_{ij} S^{-\frac{1}{2}}_{j\alpha} = (S^{-\frac{1}{2}} S S^{-\frac{1}{2}})_{\alpha\beta} = \delta_{\alpha\beta}$$

That $S^{-\frac{1}{2}} S S^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \mathbb{1}$ can be shown by introducing the unitary matrix $U$ that diagonalizes $S$:

$$U^\dagger S U = S_{diag}$$

Then

$$S^{-\frac{1}{2}}SS^{-\frac{1}{2}} = UU^{\dagger}S^{-\frac{1}{2}}UU^{\dagger}SUU^{\dagger}S^{-\frac{1}{2}}UU^{\dagger} = US_{diag}^{-\frac{1}{2}}S_{diag}S_{diag}^{-\frac{1}{2}}U^{\dagger} =$$

$$= U\mathbb{1}U^{\dagger} = \mathbb{1} \ .$$

$S_{diag}^{-\frac{1}{2}}S_{diag}S_{diag}^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ is a diagonal matrix with diagonal elements of the form $s_n^{-\frac{1}{2}}s_n\,s_n^{-\frac{1}{2}} = 1$, and thus equal to $\mathbb{1}$.

# A.16 Some details for the total $S$

back to pag. 90

### Generators of rotations

Let us consider a product state of two single spin states

$$|\Phi_1\rangle_1 \otimes |\Phi_2\rangle_2 \ .$$

Let us carry out a rotation by an angle $\alpha$ around, say, the $z$-axis, then

$$\left|\Phi_1'\right\rangle = e^{-i\alpha\frac{S_1^z}{\hbar}}\,|\Phi_1\rangle$$

$$\left|\Phi_2'\right\rangle = e^{-i\alpha\frac{S_2^z}{\hbar}}\,|\Phi_2\rangle$$

are the rotated spin states, and

$$\left|\Phi_1'\right\rangle_1 \otimes \left|\Phi_2'\right\rangle_2$$

the rotated product state. Now, it is easy to show that the latter equals

$$e^{-i\alpha\frac{S^z}{\hbar}}\,|\Phi_1\rangle_1 \otimes |\Phi_2\rangle_2 \ .$$

I.e., $\frac{S^z}{\hbar}$ is the generator of rotations in the product space.

### Commutators

Although the above result should be sufficient, we now explicitly prove the commutation relations of the total spin operator **S**:

$$\begin{aligned}
[S^{\alpha}, S^{\beta}] &= [(S_1^{\alpha} + S_2^{\alpha}), (S_1^{\beta} + S_2^{\beta})] \\
&= [S_1^{\alpha}, S_1^{\beta}] + [S_2^{\alpha}, S_2^{\beta}] \\
&= i\hbar\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}\left(S_1^{\gamma} + S_2^{\gamma}\right) \\
[S^{\alpha}, S^{\beta}] &= i\hbar\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}\,S^{\gamma} \qquad . \qquad \text{(A.26)}
\end{aligned}$$

## A.17 Proof of Wigner Eckart's theorem for vectors

back to pag. 99

The idea consists in showing the proportionality

$$\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{\mathbf{V}}_{\mathbf{M}}\,|\mathbf{b},\mathbf{j_2},\mathbf{m_2}\rangle \propto \langle j,m|\mathbf{j_1}=\mathbf{1},\mathbf{m_1}=\mathbf{M}\rangle\,|\mathbf{j_2},\mathbf{m_2}\rangle \tag{A.27}$$

To do this, we go back to the definition of the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients 6.16 , which describe the coefficients of the expansion of the $|j,m\rangle$ in the product basis (here the complex conjugate):

$$C(j_1,m_1;j_2,m_2|j,m)^* = \langle j,m|\,|j_1,m_1\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle \tag{A.28}$$

We rephrase in another language the procedure we carried out in Sec. 6.7.4: We insert the operator $\hat{J}^+ = \hat{J}_1^+ + \hat{J}_2^+$ in A.28 and apply it once to the right and once to the left (in this case it acts as a $\hat{J}^-$) and set the results equal

$$\begin{aligned}&\alpha^+(j_1,m_1)\langle j,m|\,|j_1,m_1+1\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle\\&+\alpha^+(j_2,m_2)\langle j,m|\,|j_1,m_1\rangle\,|j_2,m_2+1\rangle\\&=\alpha^-(j,m)\langle j,m-1|\,|j_1,m_1\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{A.29}$$

where

$$\alpha^\pm(j,m) = \sqrt{j(j+1)-m(m\pm1)} \tag{A.30}$$

this gives a recursion equation for the coefficients containing $\langle j,m-1|$ in terms of the ones containing $\langle j,m|$. In this way, starting from the one with the largest $m$, i.e. $\langle j,j|$, we get all the others down to $\langle j,-j|$. Finally, since in A.29 with $m=-j$ the r.h.s. vanishes, the l.h.s. gives a further proportionality relation between the two terms. This means that for fixed $j,j_1,j_2$ once one of the coefficients A.28 is fixed, all the others are proportional and uniquely determined by A.29 .
The commutation rules for vector operators 1.20 lead for 6.29 to commutation rules similar to 1.24 , i.e

$$[\hat{J}^+,\hat{V}_{-1}] = \sqrt{2}\hbar\,\hat{V}_0 \qquad [\hat{J}^+,\hat{V}_{+1}] = 0 \qquad [\hat{J}^+,\hat{V}_0] = \sqrt{2}\hbar\,\hat{V}_{+1}$$

which can be summarized to

$$[\hat{J}^+,\hat{V}_M] = \alpha^+(1,M)\,\hbar\,\hat{V}_{M+1} \tag{A.31}$$

where the $\alpha^+(1,M)$ are the A.30 with $j=1$ and a $^+$. For simplicity, we now use $\hbar=1$.
We now put both sides of A.31 between two states (l.h.s. of A.27 ):

$$\langle a,j,m|\,[\hat{J}^+,\hat{V}_M]\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle = \alpha^+(1,M)\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_{M+1}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$$

expanding the commutator yields

$$\alpha^-(j,m)\,\langle a,j,m-1|\,\hat{V}_M\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle - \alpha^+(j_2,m_2)\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_M\,|b,j_2,m_2+1\rangle$$
$$= \alpha^+(1,M)\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_{M+1}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$$

i.e.

$$\begin{aligned}&\alpha^+(1,M)\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_{M+1}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle\\ &+\alpha^+(j_2,m_2)\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_M\,|b,j_2,m_2+1\rangle\\ &=\alpha^-(j,m)\,\langle a,j,m-1|\,\hat{V}_M\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{A.32}$$

This has the same form as A.29 with $j_1=1, m_1=M$. Remember, there we said that A.29 is sufficient to get all coefficients for a given fixed set $j, j_1, j_2$ starting from just one of them. Since the recursion relation A.32 is formally the same, it means that within a given set of $(a,j;b,j_2)$ the matrix elements of all three components of $\hat{\mathbf{V}}$ between all pairs of $m,m_2$ are proportional to the $\langle j,m|\,|j_1=1,m_1=M\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle = C(j_1=1,m_1=M;j_2,m_2|j,m)^*$. This gives 6.30, where $\langle a,j||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||b,j_2\rangle$ is the proportionality constant and can be determined by evaluating just one of the matrix elements on the left, i.e. for one set of $m,M,m_2$. Then one automatically has all of them. Eq. 6.30, compared with 6.16 suggests that $\hat{V}_M$ behaves similarly to a state with angular momentum quantum numbers $j_1=1, m_1=M$. This also implies that the only nonzero matrix elements are such that $|j-j_2|\le 1$ and $m=m_2+M$.

## A.18 Proof of Wigner Eckart's theorem for scalars

back to pag. 100

A scalar operator $\hat{S}$ is by definition invariant under rotations, therefore

$$[\hat{S},\mathbf{J}]=0\,.$$

and consequently

$$[\hat{S},\mathbf{J}^2]=0\,.$$

Therefore $\hat{J}_z,\mathbf{J}^2$, and $\hat{S}$ have a common eigenbasis, or in other words, the quantum numbers $j$,$m$ are not changed by $\hat{S}$. Let us see an example with $\mathbf{J}^2$:

$$0=\langle a,j,m|\,[\mathbf{J}^2,\hat{S}]\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle = \langle a,j,m|\,\mathbf{J}^2\,\hat{S}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle - \langle a,j,m|\,\hat{S}\,\mathbf{J}^2\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle =$$

$$=(j(j+1)-j_2(j_2+1))\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{S}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$$

Which means that $j = j_2$ or else $\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{S}\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle$ has to vanish. Here we have used the eigenvalue conditions, e.g. from the left $\langle a,j,m|\ \mathbf{J}^2 = j(j+1)\ \langle a,j,m|$. Similarly one shows that $m = m_2$ for the matrix element to be nonzero.
We only need to show that this matrix element does not depend on $m$. For this we exploit the commutation with the ladder operators

$$[\hat{S},\hat{J}_\pm] = 0\,.$$

So taking $m_2 = m-1$

$$\langle a,j,m|\,\mathbf{J}_+\,\hat{S}\,|b,j,m-1\rangle = \langle a,j,m|\,\hat{S}\,\mathbf{J}_+\,|b,j,m-1\rangle$$

Taking into account the fact that $\mathbf{J}_+$ acts as a $\mathbf{J}_-$ to the left, we have

$$\alpha^-(j,m)\,\langle a,j,m-1|\,\hat{S}\,|b,j,m-1\rangle = \alpha^+(j,m-1)\,\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{S}\,|b,j,m\rangle$$

where the $\alpha$ are the usual square root factors, see A.30 . Since $\alpha^-(j,m) = \alpha^+(j,m-1)$, this means that

$$\langle a,j,m-1|\,\hat{S}\,|b,j,m-1\rangle = \langle a,j,m|\,\hat{S}\,|b,j,m\rangle$$

Iterating this over the $m$, this means that the matrix element of the scalar is independent of $m$, i.e. 6.31 .

## A.19 Some considerations about complex conjugation in Wigner-Eckart coefficients

back to pag. 99
Notice that while

$$\langle a,j,m|\,\hat{V}_M\,|b,j_2,m_2\rangle = \langle b,j_2,m_2|\,\hat{V}_M^\dagger\,|a,j,m\rangle^*$$

and using the fact that $\hat{V}_M^\dagger = (-1)^M\hat{V}_{-M}$,

$$= (-1)^M\,\langle b,j_2,m_2|\,\hat{V}_{-M}\,|a,j,m\rangle\ ,$$

there is no such simple relation between $\langle a,j||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||b,j_2\rangle$ and $\langle b,j_2||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||a,j\rangle$.
The reason is that (using again 6.30 ), and, say, $M = 0$ for simplicity

$$\langle b,j_2,m_2|\,\hat{V}_0\,|a,j,m\rangle = \langle j_2,m_2||j_1=1,m_1=0\rangle\,|j,m\rangle\,\langle b,j_2||\hat{\mathbf{V}}||a,j\rangle\ .$$

But, on the other hand, the two Clebsch-Gordan coefficients $\langle j,m||j_1=1,m_1=0\rangle\,|j_2,m_2\rangle$ and $\langle j_2,m_2||j_1=1,m_1=0\rangle\,|j,m\rangle$ are not necessarily related to each other by any kind of complex conjugation.
For example, take $j_2 = 0, m_2 = 0$ and $j = 1, m = 0$, then the first term is the coefficient of the expansion of $|j,m\rangle$ in $|1,0\rangle\,|0,0\rangle$, which is obviously 1. The second coefficient is (see table) $-1/\sqrt{3}$.

# A.20 Proof of the projection theorem

back to pag. 104

Consider that with the representation 6.29 the scalar product of two vectors reads

$$\hat{\mathbf{A}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{B}} = \sum_M (-1)^M \hat{A}_M \hat{B}_{-M} \tag{A.33}$$

We evaluate

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{\mathbf{V}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle = \sum_M (-1)^M \langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{V}_M \hat{J}_{-M} \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle \\ &= \sum_M (-1)^M \sum_{m'} \langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{V}_M \, | n, j, m' \rangle \langle n, j, m' | \, \hat{J}_{-M} \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

since $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ does not change $n, j$. From 6.40 this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &= \gamma(n, j) \sum_M (-1)^M \sum_{m'} \langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{J}_M \, | n, j, m' \rangle \langle n, j, m' | \, \hat{J}_{-M} \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle \\ &= \gamma(n, j) \, \langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$\gamma(n, j) = \frac{\langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{\mathbf{V}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle}{\langle n, j, m_1 | \, \hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 \, | n, j, m_2 \rangle} \tag{A.34}$$

which gives 6.41 .

# A.21 A representation of the delta distribution

back to pag. 54

The function is normalized to one:

$$\int \Delta_t(\omega) \, d\omega = 1.$$

The behavior of $\Delta_t(\omega)$ as a function of $\omega$ at fixed $t$ is displayed in Fig. A.1 . One recognizes that $\Delta_t(\omega)$ is concentrated at $\omega = 0$, with a width proportional to $\frac{1}{t}$ and a height proportional to $t$. In the limit $t \to \infty$, this function thus behaves like the delta function:

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \int f(\omega) \, \Delta_t(\omega) \, d\omega = f(0) \qquad ,$$

provided the test function $f(\omega)$ has the property $\lim_{\omega \to \infty} \frac{f(\omega)}{\omega} = 0$. For this class of functions, 3.26 holds:

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \Delta_t(\omega) = \delta(\omega) \qquad .$$

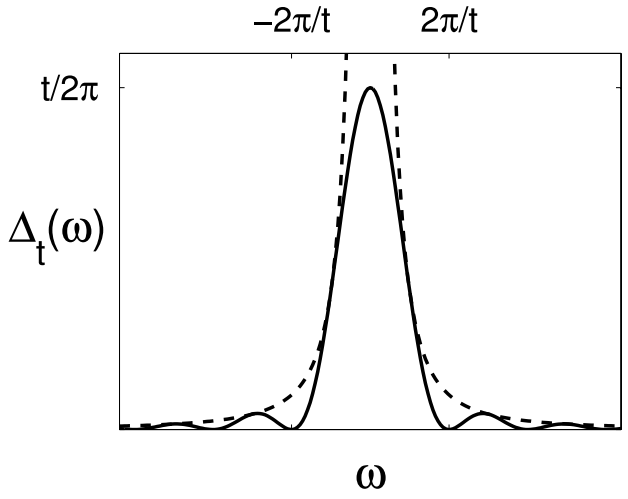



Figure A.1: *Plot of the function $\Delta_t(\omega)$ (solid) and of the envelope $\frac{2}{\omega_{fi}^2 t\pi}$ (dashed).*

## A.22 Expectation values of interaction term

back to pag. 116
To evaluate $\langle \Psi^{orb} | H_1^{orb} | \Psi^{orb} \rangle$, we insert the identity

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{I} = \quad & \hat{I}_1 \otimes \hat{I}_2 = \left( \int d\mathbf{r}_1 \, |\mathbf{r}_1\rangle \langle \mathbf{r}_1| \right) \otimes \left( \int d\mathbf{r}_2 \, |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle \langle \mathbf{r}_2| \right) \\ & = \int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 \; |\mathbf{r}_1\rangle |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle \langle \mathbf{r}_1| \langle \mathbf{r}_2| \end{aligned} \tag{A.35}$$

left and right of the interaction term: $\hat{H}_1^{orb} \Rightarrow \hat{I}\hat{H}_1^{orb}\hat{I}$, and use the fact that

$$\langle \mathbf{r}_1| \langle \mathbf{r}_2| \frac{1}{|\hat{\mathbf{r}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{r}}_2|} \left|\mathbf{r}_1'\right\rangle \left|\mathbf{r}_2'\right\rangle = \delta(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_1')\delta(\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_2') \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|} \, . \tag{A.36}$$

In this way,

$$\hat{H}_1^{orb} = \frac{1}{|\hat{\mathbf{r}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{r}}_2|} = \int d\mathbf{r}_1 \, d\mathbf{r}_2 \; |\mathbf{r}_1\rangle |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle \; \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|} \; \langle \mathbf{r}_1| \langle \mathbf{r}_2| \tag{A.37}$$

Now, taking the expression for

$$\left|\Psi^{orb}\right\rangle = |n=1, l=0, m_l=0\rangle_1 \otimes |n=1, l=0, m_l=0\rangle_2 \equiv |\varphi_0\rangle_1 \otimes |\varphi_0\rangle_2$$

we get

$$\left\langle \Psi^{orb} \middle| \hat{H}_1^{orb} \middle| \Psi^{orb} \right\rangle = \int d\mathbf{r}_1\, d\mathbf{r}_2\, \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1-\mathbf{r}_2|}\, {}_1\langle\varphi_0|\mathbf{r}_1\rangle\langle\mathbf{r}_1|\varphi_0\rangle_1 \cdot \cdot\, {}_2\langle\varphi_0|\mathbf{r}_2\rangle\langle\mathbf{r}_2|\varphi_0\rangle_2 = = \int d\mathbf{r}_1\, d\mathbf{r}_2\, \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1-\mathbf{r}_2|} |\langle\mathbf{r}_1|\varphi_0\rangle|^2 |\langle\mathbf{r}_2|\varphi_0\rangle|^2 = = \int d\mathbf{r}_1\, d\mathbf{r}_2\, \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1-\mathbf{r}_2|} |\varphi_0(\mathbf{r}_1)|^2 |\varphi_0(\mathbf{r}_2)|^2 \qquad \text{(A.38)}$$

# A.23 Integral evaluation of 7.12

back to pag. 117 We want to carry out the evaluation of the two-center integral 7.12 explicitly. Since the densities are rotationally symmetric, it is convenient to use spherical coordinates

$$\Delta E^{(1)} = \frac{Z}{32\pi^2}\int_0^\infty dx_1\, x_1^2\, e^{-x_1}\int_0^\infty dx_2\, x_2^2\, e^{-x_2}\int d\Omega_1 \int d\Omega_2\, \frac{1}{|\vec{x}_1-\vec{x}_2|} \quad .$$

To evaluate the inner angular integral, we take the $z$-axis in the direction of $\vec{x}_1$. One then obtains a complete differential

$$\begin{aligned}\int d\Omega_2\, \frac{1}{|\vec{x}_1-\vec{x}_2|} &= 2\pi\int_0^\pi d\cos(\theta)\frac{1}{\sqrt{x_1^2+x_2^2-2x_1x_2\cos(\theta)}} \\ &= 2\pi\int_{-1}^{1} d\xi\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{x_1^2+x_2^2-2x_1x_2\xi}} \\ &= -\frac{2\pi}{x_1x_2}\sqrt{x_1^2+x_2^2-2x_1x_2\xi}\Big|_{\xi=-1}^{\xi=+1} \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{x_1x_2}\left(x_1+x_2-|x_1-x_2|\right)\end{aligned}$$

Since there is no angular dependence left, the second angular integral gives $\int d\Omega_2 = 4\pi$. Finally, evaluating the remaining radial parts, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E^{(1)} &= \frac{Z8\pi^2}{32\pi^2}\int_0^\infty dx_1\, x_1\, e^{-x_1}\int_0^\infty dx_2\, x_2\, e^{-x_2}\left(x_1+x_2-|x_1-x_2|\right) \\ &= \frac{Z}{4}\int_0^\infty dx_1\, x_1\, e^{-x_1}\left(2\int_0^{x_1} dx_2\, x_2^2\, e^{-x_2} + 2x_1\int_{x_1}^\infty dx_2\, x_2\, e^{-x_2}\right) \\ &= \frac{Z}{2}\int_0^\infty dx_1\, x_1\, e^{-x_1}\Bigg(\underbrace{\int_0^{x_1} dx_2\, x_2^2\, e^{-x_2}}_{2-e^{-x_1}(2+2x_1+x_1^2)} + x_1\underbrace{\int_{x_1}^\infty dx_2\, x_2\, e^{-x_2}}_{e^{-x_1}(1+x_1)}\Bigg)\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{Z}{2}\int_0^\infty dx_1\, x_1\, e^{-x_1}\left(2 - e^{-x_1}(2+2x_1+x_1^2-x_1-x_1^2)\right)\\
&= Z\left(\int_0^\infty dt\, t\, e^{-t} - \int_0^\infty dt\, t\, e^{-2t} - \frac{1}{2}\int_0^\infty dt\, t^2\, e^{-2t}\right)\\
&= Z\left(\int_0^\infty dt\, t\, e^{-t} - \frac{1}{4}\int_0^\infty dx\, x\, e^{-x} - \frac{1}{16}\int_0^\infty dx\, x^2\, e^{-x}\right)\\
&= Z\left(\Gamma(2) - \frac{1}{4}\Gamma(2) - \frac{1}{16}\Gamma(3)\right) = Z\left(1 - \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{8}\right) = \frac{5}{8}\,Z \quad .
\end{aligned}
$$

This gives 7.13 .

## A.24 Example of evaluation of matrix elements in product states

back to pag. 120 As an example, we determine the last matrix element in 7.16 .

$$\left(\langle 2lm|_1 \otimes \langle 100|_2\right)\frac{1}{|\hat{\mathbf{r}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{r}}_2|}\left(|100\rangle_1 \otimes |2lm\rangle_2\right)$$

To do this, we insert the identity

$$I = \int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2\ |\mathbf{r}_1\rangle_1 |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle_2 \langle \mathbf{r}_1|_1 \langle \mathbf{r}_2|_2$$

$$\int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 \left(\langle 2lm|_1 \otimes \langle 100|_2\right)\frac{1}{|\hat{\mathbf{r}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{r}}_2|}|\mathbf{r}_1\rangle_1 |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle_2 \langle \mathbf{r}_1|_1 \langle \mathbf{r}_2|_2\left(|100\rangle_1 \otimes |2lm\rangle_2\right)$$

Since $|\mathbf{r}_1\rangle_1 |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle_2$ is an eigenstate of $\frac{1}{|\hat{\mathbf{r}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{r}}_2|}$ this becomes

$$\int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 \left(\langle 2lm|_1 \otimes \langle 100|_2\right)|\mathbf{r}_1\rangle_1 |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle_2 \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|}\langle \mathbf{r}_1|_1 \langle \mathbf{r}_2|_2\left(|100\rangle_1 \otimes |2lm\rangle_2\right)$$

$$= \int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 \langle 2lm|_1 |\mathbf{r}_1\rangle_1 \langle 100|_2 |\mathbf{r}_2\rangle_2 \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|}\langle \mathbf{r}_1|_1 |100\rangle_1 \langle \mathbf{r}_2|_2 |2lm\rangle_2$$

$$= \int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 \varphi^*_{2lm}(\mathbf{r}_1)\varphi^*_{100}(\mathbf{r}_2)\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|}\varphi_{100}(\mathbf{r}_1)\varphi_{2lm}(\mathbf{r}_2)$$

which corresponds to the exchange term in 7.17

# A.25 Some proofs for Chap. 8

back to pag. 124

**Equivalence of 8.5 and 8.4**

Using a discrete version of the derivative $u'_i = \frac{u_i - u_{i-1}}{\Delta x}$ together with 8.6 , we have for the r.h.s. of 8.5 [2]

$$\frac{1}{\Delta x}\frac{\partial \mathscr{L}}{\partial u_i} = \frac{\partial \ell_i}{\partial u_i} + \frac{1}{\Delta x}\frac{\partial \ell_i}{\partial u'_i} - \frac{1}{\Delta x}\frac{\partial \ell_{i+1}}{\partial u'_{i+1}} \underset{\Delta x \to 0}{\Rightarrow} \frac{\partial \ell}{\partial u} - \frac{d}{dx}\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial u'} \tag{A.39}$$

where $\ell_i \equiv \ell(u_i, u'_i, \dot{u}_i, x_i, t)$. This gives 8.4 . An alternative derivation is by partial integration.

**Canonical commutation rules for the $\hat{p}_m$, $\hat{q}_m$**

$$\begin{aligned}
[\hat{q}_m, \hat{p}_{m'}] &= \int_0^L dx \int_0^L dx'\, U_m(x)\, U_{m'}(x')\, [\hat{u}(x), \hat{\pi}(x')] \\
&= i\hbar \int_0^L dx \int_0^L dx'\, U_m(x)\, U_{m'}(x')\, \delta(x - x') \\
&= i\hbar \int_0^L dx\, U_m(x)\, U_{m'}(x) \\
&= i\hbar \delta_{m,m'} \, .
\end{aligned} \tag{A.40}$$

**Hamiltonian 8.11 in terms of $\hat{p}_m$, $\hat{q}_m$.**

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{H} &= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n,m} \int_0^L \left[ \frac{1}{\rho} U_n(x) U_m(x) \hat{p}_n \hat{p}_m + c^2\, \rho\, U'_n(x) U'_m(x)\, \hat{q}_n \hat{q}_m \right] dx \\
&= \frac{1}{2\rho}\sum_{n,m} \underbrace{\int_0^L U_n(x) U_m(x)\, dx}_{\delta_{n,m}} \hat{p}_n \hat{p}_m + \frac{c^2\,\rho}{2} \sum_{n,m} \underbrace{\int_0^L U'_n(x) U'_m(x)\, dx}_{k_n^2 \delta_{n,m}}\, \hat{q}_n \hat{q}_m \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_n \left( \frac{1}{\rho}\hat{p}_n^2 + \rho\, (c\, k_n)^2\, \hat{q}_n^2 \right) .
\end{aligned}$$

We have used the fact that

$$\int_0^L U'_n(x) U'_m(x)\, dx = k_n^2\, \delta_{n,m} \tag{A.41}$$

[2] Strictly speaking for all $i$ but the last one.

proof:

$$\int_0^L U_n'(x)U_m'(x)\,dx = \underbrace{U_n'(x)U_m(x)\Big|_0^L}_{=0} - \int_0^L \underbrace{U_n''(x)}_{=-k_n^2U_n(x)}\,U_m(x)\,dx$$
$$= k_n^2\int_0^L U_n(x)U_m(x)\,dx = k_n^2\delta_{n,m}\,.$$

## A.26 Proof of 9.3

back to pag. 130 First we transform the Lagrangian a little bit. We exploit the fact that

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}\left(\Psi^*\boldsymbol{\nabla}\Psi - (\boldsymbol{\nabla}\Psi^*)\Psi\right) = \left(\Psi^*\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\Psi - (\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\Psi^*)\Psi\right)\,.$$

After integration over the volume the first term gives a surface integral (Gauss' law), which vanishes in an infinite volume. Then 9.1 becomes

$$\mathscr{L} = \int\left[i\hbar\Psi^*\dot{\Psi} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\Psi^*)\Psi - V(\mathbf{x})\Psi^*\Psi\right]\,d^3x\,. \tag{A.42}$$

So that

$$\pi(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\dot{\Psi}} = i\hbar\Psi^*(\mathbf{x},t)$$
$$\frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta\Psi} = -V(\mathbf{x})\Psi^*(\mathbf{x},t) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\Psi^*$$

Lagrange II:

$$-i\hbar\dot{\Psi}^*(\mathbf{x},t) = V(\mathbf{x})\Psi^*(\mathbf{x},t) - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\Psi^*$$

## A.27 Gauge transformation for the wave function

back to pag. 62

For simplicity, we work in units in which $\hbar = c = 1$. Using 4.11 , we can rewrite 4.13 as

$$i\overline{\partial}_t\Psi' = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}} - q\mathbf{A}\right)^2\Psi' + q\varphi\;\Psi' \tag{A.43}$$

with

$$\overline{\mathbf{p}} \equiv \mathbf{p} - q\boldsymbol{\nabla}\chi \qquad i\overline{\partial}_t \equiv i\partial_t + q\partial_t\chi \tag{A.44}$$

Applying these to the transformed wave function 4.12 , we observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\mathbf{p}}\,\Psi' &= -i\nabla\Psi' - \Psi'\,q\nabla\chi = \Psi'\,q\nabla\chi + e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}(-i\nabla\Psi) - \Psi'\,q\nabla\chi \\ &= e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\mathbf{p}\,\Psi \end{aligned} \tag{A.45}$$

similarly

$$i\overline{\partial_t}\,\Psi' = -\Psi'\,q\,\partial_t\chi + e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\,i\partial_t\Psi + \Psi'\,q\,\partial_t\chi = e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\,i\partial_t\Psi \tag{A.46}$$

In other words,

$$\overline{\mathbf{p}}\,e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)} = e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\,\mathbf{p} \qquad \overline{\partial_t}\,e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)} = e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\,\partial_t \tag{A.47}$$

Therefore, when applying the differential operators $\overline{p}$ and $\overline{\partial}_t$, they "move" the $e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}$ to the left and "lose" the $\overline{\cdots}$. Therefore, A.43 becomes

$$e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\,i\partial_t\Psi = e^{iq\chi(\mathbf{r},t)}\left(\frac{1}{2m}(\mathbf{p}-q\mathbf{A})^2\Psi + q\varphi\Psi\right)$$

which is equivalent to 4.8 .

## A.28 Commutators and relation for the Schrödinger field quantisation

back to pag. 131

We consider a more general case, namely 9.15 , of which 9.9 is a special case. First of all one can invert the 9.15 in the usual way by scalar multiplication with the wave functions: e.g. $\int \chi_m^*(\mathbf{y})\,d\mathbf{y}\cdots$. The first term gives

$$\hat{c}_m = \int \chi_m^*(\mathbf{y})\,d\mathbf{y}\,\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{y}) \tag{A.48}$$

the other one is the hermitian conjugate

$$\hat{c}_n^\dagger = \int \chi_n(\mathbf{z})\,d\mathbf{z}\,\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{z})$$

so that the commutation rules become

$$[c_m, c_n^\dagger] = \int d\mathbf{y}\,d\mathbf{z}\,\chi_m^*(\mathbf{y})\chi_n(\mathbf{z})\delta(\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{z}) = \delta_{m,n}$$

The above proof has simply made use of the fact that the $\chi_m$ are a complete, orthogonal basis set, so this holds obviously for the $b_n$ and 9.9 as well.

We now consider the Hamiltonian 9.11a , using 9.15 . But this is easily generalizable for arbitrary single particle operators:

$$\hat{H}_{ZQ} = \int \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + V(x) \right] \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{x})\, d\mathbf{x} =$$
$$= \sum_n \hat{c}_n^\dagger \sum_m \hat{c}_m \underbrace{\int d^3x\, \chi_n^*(\mathbf{x}) \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + V(x) \right] \chi_m(\mathbf{x})}_{h_{n,m}}$$

For the case in which $\chi_n$ are replaced by the $\varphi_n$, the eigenfunctions of the Hamiltonian, then clearly $h_{n,m} = E_n \delta_{n,m}$.

## A.29 Normalisation of two-particle state

back to pag. 139 We first determine the normalisation of the vector. For $\nu = \mu$ we already know the normalisation, $Z_{\nu\nu} = \sqrt{2!}$. For $\nu \neq \mu$ we obtain

$$Z_{\nu\mu}^2 = \langle 0 | b_\mu b_\nu b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger | 0 \rangle \, .$$

We bring the annihilation operator $b_\nu$ all the way to the right, since then $b_\nu|0\rangle$ vanishes.

$$b_\nu b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle = b_\nu^\dagger b_\nu b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle + b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle$$
$$\overset{\mu\neq\nu}{=} b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger \underbrace{b_\nu|0\rangle}_{=0} + b_\mu^\dagger|0\rangle = b_\mu^\dagger|0\rangle \, .$$

Now we multiply from the left with the annihilation operator $b_\mu$ and bring it to the right as well

$$b_\mu b_\nu b_\nu^\dagger b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle = b_\mu b_\mu^\dagger |0\rangle \; = b_\mu^\dagger \underbrace{b_\mu|0\rangle}_{=0} + |0\rangle = |0\rangle$$

and the normalisation we were looking for is

$$Z_{\nu\mu}^2 = \langle 0|0\rangle = 1 \, .$$

## A.30 Commutation rules

back to pag. 138

$$[a\ b,c] = abc - cab$$
$$a[b,c] + [a,c]b = abc - acb + acb - cab = abc - cab$$
$$a\{b,c\} - \{a,c\}b = abc + acb - acb - cab = abc - cab$$

which proves 9.30 .
9.31 is proven by observing that all terms are just minus the ones occurring in 9.30 .

# A.31 Lagrangian for electromagnetic field

back to pag. 160
First, observe that

$$2(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\mathbf{A})^2 = \sum_{ij}\left(\partial_i A_j - \partial_j A_i\right)^2 = 2\sum_{ij}\left(\partial_i A_j\right)\left(\partial_i A_j - \partial_j A_i\right)$$

The first equality is because in the sum over $i,j$ only terms $i \neq j$ contribute. Consider the case $i=1, j=2$, this gives $(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\mathbf{A})_z^2$, the same for $i=2, j=1$, which gives a factor 2. Then, similarly $2,3$ gives the $x$ component, and $3,1$ the $y$ component. The second equality is obtained by expanding and interchanging indices
One can, thus, write

$$(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\mathbf{A})^2 = \sum_{ij}\partial_i\left(A_j\left(\partial_i A_j - \partial_j A_i\right)\right) - \sum_{ij} A_j\partial_i\left(\partial_i A_j - \partial_j A_i\right)$$

The first term on the r.h.s. is a divergence, which, integrated over a volume, can be transformed into a surface integral. Taking the surface at infinity, this term can be made to vanish. The second term can be simplified due to the fact that from 10.2 $\partial_i A_i = 0$. Thus the only contribution left is

$$-\sum_{ij} A_j\partial_i^2 A_j$$

giving for 10.4

$$\mathscr{L} = \mu\int d^3\mathbf{r}\frac{1}{2}\left(\dot{\mathbf{A}}^2 + \sum_i A_i\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 A_i\right) \tag{A.49}$$

We thus have the two terms of the Lagrange equation (cf. 10.5 )

$$\frac{d}{dt}\Pi_i = \mu\ddot{A}_i$$
$$\frac{\delta\mathscr{L}}{\delta A_i} = \mu\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 A_i\,.$$

Setting them equal indeed gives 10.3 .

## A.32 Integrals vs sums

back to pag. 161
We use the fact that

$$\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} = \delta(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')$$

which is due to the **completeness** of the basis $\frac{e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}}{\sqrt{\Omega}}$.
Alternatively a convenient proof is obtained in the infinite volume $\Omega \to \infty$ limit. Here, one can convert the sum over $\mathbf{k}$ into an integral. The discrete $\mathbf{k}$ are due to the finite "box" as $\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{L}(n_1, n_2, n_3)$ (cf. 10.12 ). Therefore in the $L \to \infty$ limit, each point $\mathbf{k}$ can be replaced by the small cube of volume $\Delta k^3 = \left(\frac{2\pi}{L}\right)^3$ around it. Thus,

$$\Delta k^3 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \cdots \to \int d^3k \cdots$$

which gives

$$\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{\mathbf{k}} \cdots = \frac{1}{\Omega \Delta k^3}\int d^3k \cdots = \frac{1}{\Omega}\left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 \int d^3k \cdots = \int \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} \cdots . \tag{A.50}$$

Therefore, one has

$$\frac{1}{\Omega}\sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} \to \int \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')} = \delta(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')$$

## A.33 Commutators and transversality condition

back to pag. 160 The commutation rules 10.8 and 10.14 are in contradiction with the transversality condition 10.2 .
To see this, just take the divergence

$$[\underbrace{\partial_n \cdot \hat{A}_n(\mathbf{r})}_{\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\mathbf{A}=0}, \hat{\Pi}_m(\mathbf{r}')] = i\hbar\, \delta_{n,m}\partial_n \delta(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')$$

The left-hand side vanishes identically, while the right hand side does not.
This holds equivalently for 10.14 , which is its Fourier transform. Multiply 10.14 with $k_n k'_m$ and sum over $n, m$:

$$[\underbrace{\sum_n k_n \hat{A}_{n\mathbf{k}}}_{\mathbf{k}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{A}}_{\mathbf{k}}=0}, \sum_m \hat{\Pi}_{m-\mathbf{k}'} k'_m] = i\hbar \sum_{nm} k_n k'_m \delta_{nm}\, \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} = i\hbar\, |\mathbf{k}|^2\, \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}$$

## A.34 Commutators of fields

back to pag. 163
The completeness of the triplet $\{\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},-1}, \mathbf{u}_{,k1}, \frac{\mathbf{k}}{k}\}$ gives

$$\sum_s u_{n\mathbf{k},s} u_{m\mathbf{k},s} + \frac{k_n k_m}{k^2} = \delta_{n,m}$$

Therefore, the commutator

$$\begin{aligned}[\hat{A}_{n\mathbf{k}}, \hat{\Pi}_{m-\mathbf{k}'}] &= \sum_{ss'} u_{n\mathbf{k},s} u_{m-\mathbf{k}',-s'} [\hat{q}_{\mathbf{k}s}, \hat{p}_{-\mathbf{k}'-s'}] \\ &= \sum_s u_{n\mathbf{k},s} u_{m\mathbf{k},s} = \delta_{n,m} - \frac{k_n k_m}{k^2} \,.\end{aligned}$$

## A.35 Fourier transform of Coulomb potential

back to pag. 178

$$\begin{aligned}V(\Delta\mathbf{q}) &= \frac{-Ze^2}{\Omega} \int \frac{e^{i\mathbf{x}\Delta\mathbf{q}}}{r} \, d^3\mathbf{x} \\ &= \frac{-Ze^2}{\Omega} \int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi \int_{-1}^{1} d\xi \int_0^{\infty} r^2 dr \frac{e^{ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|\xi}}{r} \\ &= \frac{-2\pi Ze^2}{\Omega} \int_0^{\infty} dr r \int_{-1}^{1} d\xi \, e^{ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|\xi} \\ &= \frac{-2\pi Ze^2}{\Omega} \int_0^{\infty} dr r \frac{e^{ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|} - e^{-ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|}}{ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}&= \frac{-2\pi Ze^2}{i\Omega|\Delta q|} \int_0^{\infty} dr \left( e^{ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|} - e^{-ir|\Delta\mathbf{q}|} \right) \\ &= \frac{-2\pi Ze^2}{i\Omega|\Delta q|} \left( \frac{-1}{i|\Delta\mathbf{q}|} - \frac{-1}{-i|\Delta\mathbf{q}|} \right) \\ &= \frac{-2\pi Ze^2}{i\Omega|\Delta q|^2}\end{aligned}$$

The contribution from the upper integration limit leads to an infinitely fast oscillating function, which vanishes already when integrating over an infinitesimal region of $\Delta\mathbf{q}$. Integrals over $\mathbf{q}$ will indeed appear later in the calculation, and thus the expression for $V(\mathbf{q})$ is proven.

# A.36 (No) energy conservation for the first-order process 11.34

back to pag. 179 To show that momentum and energy cannot be simultaneously conserved in the process 11.34 , let us work in the reference frame in which the initial electron is at rest $\mathbf{q}_i = 0$. Then, the initial energy $E_i = 0$ is also zero. By momentum conservation, then $\mathbf{q}_f = -\mathbf{k}$. Since $\mathbf{k}$ cannot be zero, the final energy $E_f > 0$, which is incompatible with energy conservation.

# A.37 Green's function for scattering

back to pag. 190
We prove that 12.10 is a solution of 12.9 . We take $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'$. We start with a

## A.37.1 Heuristic proof:

$$-\nabla^2 \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} = -(\nabla^2_{reg} + \nabla^2_{sing}) \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} =$$

We have divided the Laplace operator here in a regular and in a singular part, the latter due to the singularity at $r = 0$, and, accordingly, nonzero only close to $r = 0$. For the singularity part we have

$$\nabla^2_{sing} \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} = \nabla^2_{sing} \frac{1}{r} = -4\pi\delta^3(\mathbf{r})$$

where the last equality is a well-known result of electrostatics (cf. potential of a point charge), and the first is due to the fact that we are close to $r = 0$.
For the regular part, we can use the Laplace operator in polar coordinates

$$\nabla^2_{reg}\, f(r) = \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} (r f(r)) = \frac{1}{r}(-k^2) e^{ikr}$$

So that in total we have

$$-(\nabla^2_{reg} + \nabla^2_{sing}) \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} = k^2 \, \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} + 4\pi\delta^3(\mathbf{r})$$

i.e. 12.9 :

$$(\nabla^2 + k^2) \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} = -4\pi\delta^3(\mathbf{r})$$

A more rigorous proof can be obtained by evaluating the integral 12.8 with the residue theorem (contour integration in the complex $p'$ plane), whereby the $\pm i\varepsilon$ selects which of the two poles $p' = \pm k$ contributes.

# A.38 Green's function in 1D

back to pag. 191

$$\frac{d}{dx}e^{ik|x|} = ike^{ik|x|}\text{sign}x \tag{A.51}$$

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}e^{ik|x|} = ik\frac{d}{dx}(e^{ik|x|}\text{sign}x) = ik(ike^{ik|x|} + e^{ik|x|}2\delta(x)) = -k^2e^{ik|x|} + 2ik\delta(x)$$

$$-\frac{i}{2k}\left(k^2 + \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\right)e^{ik|x|} = \delta(x)$$